



Overseas Affiliates

U.S.A.

RICOH CORPORATION
5 Dedrick Place
West Caldwell, New Jersey
07060
Phone: +1-973-882-2000

Spain

RICOH ESPAÑA S.A.
Avda. Litoral Mar, 12-14,
08005 Barcelona
Phone: +34-(0)93-295-7600

The Netherlands

RICOH EUROPE B.V.
Groenelaan 3, 1186 AA,
Amstelveen
Phone: +31-(0)20-5474111

Italy

RICOH ITALIA SpA
Via della Metallurgia 12,
37139 Verona
Phone: +39-(0)45-8181500

United Kingdom

RICOH UK LTD.
Ricoh House,
1 Plane Tree Crescent,
Feltham,
Middlesex, TW13 7HG
Phone: +44-(0)181-261-4000

Hong Kong

RICOH HONG KONG LTD.
23/F., China Overseas
Building,
139, Hennessy Road,
Wan Chai, Hong Kong
Phone: +852-2862-2888

Germany

RICOH DEUTSCHLAND
GmbH
Mergenthalerallee 38-40,
65760 Eschborn
Phone: +49-(0)6196-9060

Singapore

RICOH ASIA PACIFIC
PTE LTD.
260 Orchard Road,
#15-01/02 The Heeren,
Singapore 238855
Phone: +65-830-5888

France

RICOH FRANCE S.A.
383, Avenue du Général
de Gaulle
BP 307-92143 Clamart
Cedex
Phone: +33-(0)1-40-94-38-38

SUPPLIES MODEL NAME

The correct model name of supplies for
your Bizworks is:
RICOH TONER CASSETTE TYPE 1120D BLACK

RICOH CO., LTD.

15-5, 1 chome, Minami-Aoyama, Minato-ku, Tokyo,
Phone: Tokyo 3479-3111

Printed in The Netherlands

EE G025-8600



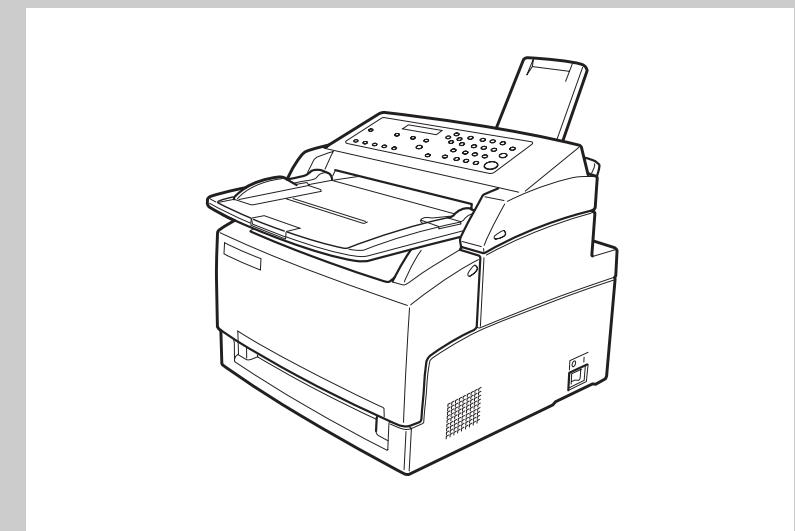
RICOH
Biz
works

Operation Manual



Operation Manual

Read this manual carefully before you use this product and keep
it handy for future reference. For safety, please follow the
instructions in this manual.



Introduction

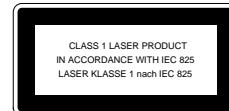
This manual contains detailed instructions on the operation and maintenance of this machine. To get maximum versatility from this machine, all operators should carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual. Please keep this manual in a handy place near the machine.

Please read the safety information on pages i - iii of this manual. It contains Important Information related to user safety and preventing equipment problems.

Operator Safety:

This machine is considered a class 1 laser device, safe for office/ EDP use. The machine contains a 5-milliwatt, 765 - 805 nanometer wavelength, GaAlAs laser diodes. Direct (or indirect reflected) eye contact with the laser beam might cause serious eye damage. Safety precautions and interlock mechanisms have been designed to prevent any possible laser beam exposure to the operator.

The following label is attached on the machine.
This label can be found when opening the bypass tray.



Laser Safety:

The optical housing unit can only be repaired in a factory or at a location with the requisite equipment. The laser subsystem is replaceable in the field by a qualified Customer Engineer. The laser chassis is not repairable in the field. Customer engineers are therefore directed to return all chassis and laser subsystems to the factory or service depot when replacement of the optical subsystem is required.

Notes:

- Model names for the machines do not appear in the following pages. Check the type of your machine before reading this manual.
- Bizworks 106**
- Some illustrations may be slightly different from your machine.
- Certain types may not be available in some countries. For details, contact your local dealer.

Two kinds of size notation are employed in this manual. With this machine refer to the metric version.

For good print quality, Ricoh recommends that you use genuine Ricoh toner.

Ricoh shall not be responsible for any damage or expense that may result from the use of parts other than genuine Ricoh parts in your Ricoh office product.

Power Source: 220 ~ 240 V, 50/60 Hz, 2.2 A

Please make sure to connect the power cord to a power source as above. For details about power connection, refer to page 8.

Trademarks

Microsoft®, Windows®, and MS-DOS® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights in those marks.



Declaration of Conformity

"The Product complies with the requirements of the EMC Directive 89/336/EEC and the Low Voltage Directive 73/23/EEC."

In accordance IEC 60417 this machine uses the following symbols for the main switch:

means POWER ON.
 means POWER OFF.

Safety Information

When using your machine, the following safety precautions should always be followed.

Types of warnings used in this manual



WARNING

Ignoring this warning could cause serious injury or even death.



CAUTION

Ignoring this caution could cause injury or damage to property.

Symbol examples



The \triangle symbol means a situation that requires you take care.



The \otimes symbol means you MUST NOT carry out this operation.
This example means “Do not take apart.”



The \bullet symbol means you MUST perform this operation.
This example means “You must remove the wall plug.”

Microsoft[®], Windows[®], and MS-DOS[®] are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Other product names used here in are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights in those marks.

⚠️ **WARNING:**

| | |
|---|---|
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Use of controls or adjustment or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Only connect the machine to the power source described on the inside of the front cover.Avoid multi-wiring.Do not damage, break or make any modifications to the power cord. Do not place heavy objects on it, pull it hard or bend it more than necessary. These actions could cause an electric shock or fire.Do not plug or unplug the power cord with your hands wet. Otherwise, an electric shock might occur. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Make sure the wall outlet is near the machine and freely accessible so that in event of an emergency it can be unplugged easily. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Do not remove any covers or screws other than those specified in this manual. Some parts of the machine are at a high voltage and could give you an electric shock. Also, reflected eye contact with the laser beam may cause serious eye damage. When the machine needs to be checked, adjusted, or repaired, contact your service representative.Do not take apart or attempt any modifications to this machine. There is a risk of fire, electric shock, explosion or loss of sight. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">If the machine looks damaged or breaks down, smoke is coming out, there is a strange smell or anything looks unusual, immediately turn off the power switch then unplug the power cord from the wall. Do not continue using the machine in this condition. Contact your service representative.If metal, liquid or foreign matter falls into the machine, turn off the power switch, and unplug the power cord. Contact your service representative. Do not keep using the machine with a fault or defect. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Do not put any metal objects or containers holding water (e.g. vases, flower-pots, glasses) on the machine. If the contents fall inside the machine, a fire or electric shock could occur. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Do not incinerate used toner or toner cassettes. Toner dust might ignite when exposed to an open flame. Dispose of the used toner cassettes according to local regulations for plastics. |

⚠ CAUTION:

| | |
|--|--|
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Keep the machine away from humidity and dust. A fire or an electric shock might occur.• Do not place the machine on an unstable or tilted surface. If it topples over, it could cause injury. |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• When you move the machine, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet to avoid fire or electric shock.• When the machine is not be used for a long time, unplug the power cord. |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• When you pull out the plug from the socket, grip the plug to avoid damaging the cord and causing fire or electric shock. |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If you use the machine in a confined space, make sure there is a continuous air turnover. |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Do not reuse stapled paper. Do not use aluminium foil, paper containing carbon or any other conductive paper. Otherwise, a fire might occur. |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• When removing misfed paper, or replacing the toner cassette and the cleaning pad, do not touch the fusing section because it could be very hot. |
| | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• This machine has been tested for safety using this supplier's parts and consumables. We recommend you only use these specified supplies. |

Energy Star program

Energy Star®



As an Energy Star partner, we have determined that this machine model meets the Energy Star Guidelines for energy efficiency.

The Energy Star Guidelines intend to establish an international energy- saving system for developing and introducing energy-efficient office equipment to deal with environmental issues, such as global warming.

When a product meets the Energy Star Guidelines for energy efficiency, the Partner shall place the Energy Star logo onto the machine model.

This product was designed to reduce the environmental impact associated with printing equipment by means of energy-saving features such as Low Power mode.

- **Low Power Mode**

This machine automatically lowers its power consumption 15 minutes after the last printing job has been completed. To exit Low Power mode, press any key on the operation panel.

The machine returns to the ready condition in about 22 seconds. To change the low Power delay, see page 105.

Specification

| | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------|---------|
| Low Power Mode (Economy Mode) | Power consumption | 15 W |
| | Default delay | 15 min. |
| | Recovery time | 22 sec. |

Recycled paper

Please contact your sales or service representative for recommended recycled paper types that may be used in this machine.

Contents

| | |
|---------------------------|-----|
| Safety Information | i |
| Energy Star program | iv |
| Part Names | x |
| Operation Panel | xii |

1. SETTING UP

| | |
|---|---|
| Package Contents | 1 |
| Location | 1 |
| Installing the Starter Toner Cassette | 2 |
| Installing Other Hardware | 4 |
| Removing the Protective Sheet | 4 |
| Installing the Upper Paper Tray | 4 |
| Preparing the Output Tray | 5 |
| Connecting to a Computer | 6 |
| Choosing Where Printed Output is Delivered | 7 |
| Connecting the Telephone Line and Optional Telephone Handset | 8 |
| Turning On the Machine | 9 |

2. GETTING ACQUAINTED

| | |
|---|----|
| Paper and Other Media | 10 |
| Loading Paper | 11 |
| Loading Plain Paper into the Upper Paper Tray | 11 |
| Loading Small Size Paper | 13 |
| Loading Other Media | 15 |
| Loading Envelopes | 15 |
| Loading Transparencies | 15 |
| Loading Label Paper | 15 |
| Second (Additional) Printer | 16 |
| Connecting to a Second Printer | 16 |
| Paper Feed Unit (Option) | 17 |
| Paper Feed Unit Part Names | 17 |
| Installing the Paper Feed Unit | 17 |
| Loading Paper into the Paper Feed Unit | 19 |
| Changing the Paper Size | 20 |
| Specifying the Paper Size | 20 |

| | |
|---|----|
| Installing the Paper Size Indicator | 21 |
| Selecting the Paper Source | 22 |
| Upgrading Memory | 23 |
| 3. PRINTING AND SCANNING | |
| Setting up | 25 |
| Installing the Software Drivers | 25 |
| Features You Can Access From the Printer Driver | 27 |
| Using the Second Printer (Additional Printer) | 28 |
| Printing to the Second Printer | 28 |
| 4. FAXING | |
| Switching between Fax Operation and Copy Operation Mode | 29 |
| Entering Characters on the Operation Panel | 30 |
| Entering Numbers | 30 |
| Entering Letters, Symbols and Spaces | 30 |
| Deleting Characters and Moving the Cursor | 31 |
| Setting up | 32 |
| Please Read This First | 32 |
| Connecting to the Telephone Line | 32 |
| Storing your Own Name/TTI | 33 |
| Setting the Dial Mode | 34 |
| Storing your Own Fax Number | 36 |
| Setting the Date and Time | 38 |
| Turning Summer Time (Daylight Saving Time) on/off | 39 |
| Sending Faxes | 40 |
| How to Send a Fax | 40 |
| Entering Pauses and Tones in Fax Numbers | 42 |
| Entering Pauses | 42 |
| Entering Tones | 42 |
| Redialling a Number | 43 |
| Automatic Redial | 43 |
| Cancelling Automatic Redial | 43 |
| Cancelling Transmission of a Fax | 44 |
| Receiving Faxes | 45 |
| Choosing a Reception Mode | 45 |
| FAX Model | 45 |

| | |
|--|----|
| TEL Model | 45 |
| Switcing between FAX Mode and TEL Mode | 46 |
| Receving calls in TEL Mode | 46 |
| Screening out Unwanted Faxes with Authorized Reception | 46 |
| Turning Authorized Reception on/off | 47 |
| Cancelling Reception of a Fax | 48 |
| Making Telephone Calls | 49 |
| Faxing During a Telephone Call | 49 |
| Sending a Fax During a Telephone call | 50 |
| Receiving a Fax During a Telephone call | 50 |
| Monitoring the Line while Dialling with On Hook | 51 |
| Remote Change | 51 |
| Storing Fax and Telephone Numbers | 53 |
| Quick Dials | 53 |
| Storing Quick Dials | 54 |
| Editing Quick Dials | 55 |
| Clearing Quick Dials | 57 |
| Name Dials | 58 |
| Storing Name Dials | 58 |
| Deleting Name Dials | 60 |
| Dialling with Name Dials | 61 |
| Reports and Lists | 62 |
| Printing the Journal | 62 |
| Printing the Dial List | 63 |
| Transmission Result Report | 63 |
| Error Report | 64 |
| Power Failure Report | 64 |
| Unauthorized Call Report | 64 |
| Advanced Features | 65 |
| Making Machine Sounds Louder or Quieter | 65 |
| Sending Faxes Over Unreliable Lines-Slow (4800bps) | 66 |
| RDS | 67 |
| Page Header | 67 |
| Changing On/Off Settings | 67 |

5. COPYING

| | |
|--|----|
| Making a Copy | 69 |
| Making Multiple Copies | 72 |
| Reduction and Enlargement | 73 |
| To Set the Reduction Factor | 73 |
| To Set the Enlargement Factor | 74 |
| Zoom (In 1% Increments) | 75 |
| To Use Zoom | 75 |
| Adjusting the Copy Image | 76 |
| To Select the Resolution/Photo Setting | 76 |
| To Adjust the Image Density | 77 |
| Sorting Output | 78 |
| Sorting Copying | 78 |

6. TROUBLESHOOTING

| | |
|--|----|
| General | 80 |
| Printing and Copying | 80 |
| Printing | 81 |
| Copying and Faxing | 82 |
| Scanning | 83 |
| Error Messages | 84 |
| When the Receive File Indicator is Lit | 87 |
| Clearing a Paper Misfeed | 88 |
| Clearing a Feed in the Main Unit | 88 |
| Clearing a Misfeed in the ADF | 90 |
| Clearing a Misfeed in the Optional Paper Feed Unit | 90 |
| When Paper Will Not Feed | 91 |

7. USER MAINTENANCE

| | |
|---|----|
| Daily Maintenance | 93 |
| Replacing the Toner Cassette and the Cleaning Pad | 94 |
| Storage | 97 |
| Paper | 97 |
| Toner Cassette | 97 |

8. TECHNICAL REFERENCE

| | |
|---|-----|
| Printing the Help List | 98 |
| Customising Default Settings with the User Parameters | 99 |
| Changing the User Parameters | 99 |
| User Parameter Switch Summary | 100 |
| Function List..... | 103 |
| Selecting the Language | 104 |
| Economy Mode | 105 |
| Changing the Economy Mode | 105 |
| 9. SPECIFICATIONS | 106 |
| Index | 109 |

Part Names

Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)

Holds up to 10 sheets of paper for automatic feeding. Place originals face down.

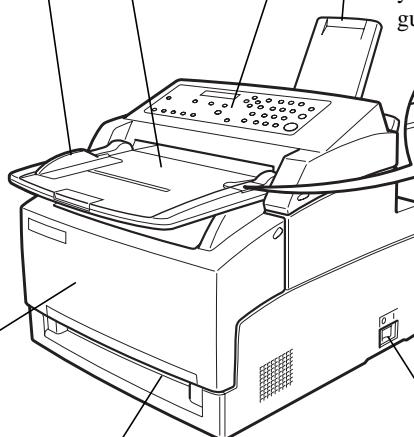
Document guides

Slide the left guide to fit the size of the paper you are feeding.

Front unit

Lower output slot

Copy and printing output comes out here when the ADF is pushed down, copies, prints and faxes are delivered here face-up.



Operation panel

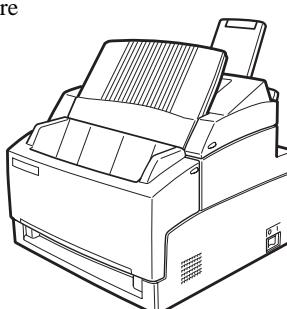
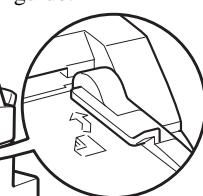
Key panel for controlling the machine.

Upper paper tray

Holds up to 100 sheets of plain paper.

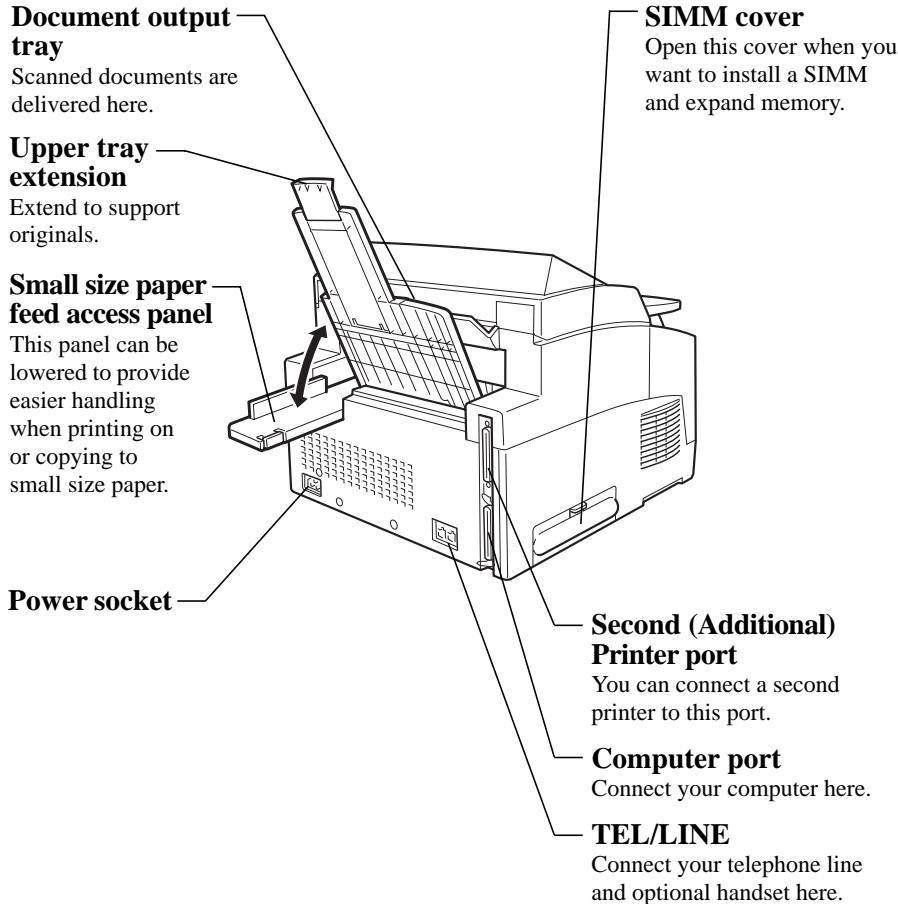
Original guide

Guides the original correctly into the machine. Make sure your original fits under this guide.

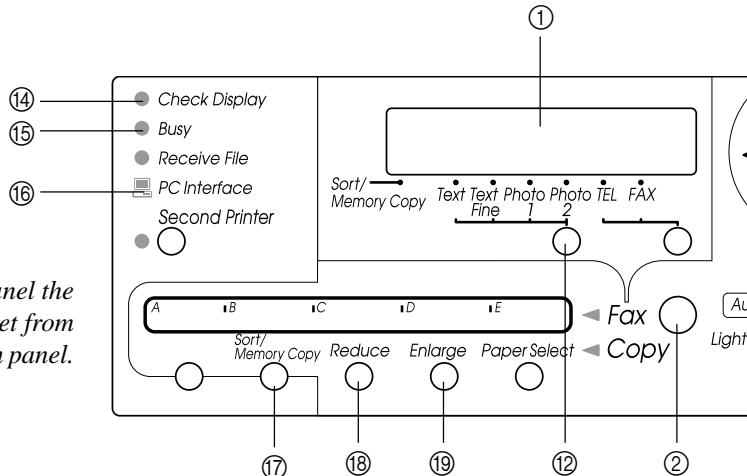


Output bin

When the ADF is pushed up, output is delivered here face-down.



Operation Panel



Note

Be sure to panel the protective sheet from the operation panel.

<General>

① Display

Messages and prompts appear here.

② Fax/Copy key

Press to switch between fax operation mode and copy operation mode. The indicators to the left of this key show which mode the machine is currently in.

③ Numeric keypad

Use these keys to enter the number of copies, dial a fax number or specify values.

④ Clear key

Press to delete the character to the left of the display cursor. When the cursor is located at the far left position, pressing this key deletes all of the input characters (when programming functions only).

⑤ Start key

Press to start copying or begin sending or receiving a fax.

⑥ Stop key

Press this key to interrupt the current operation and return the machine to the standby state. To reset printer mode, hold down this key for at least 3 seconds.

⑦ Economy Mode/Clear Modes key

Pressing this key clears any selected settings to their defaults and cancels the ongoing operation. Hold down this key for more than about 3 seconds to turn Economy mode on or off.

☞ *Economy Mode, see page 105.*

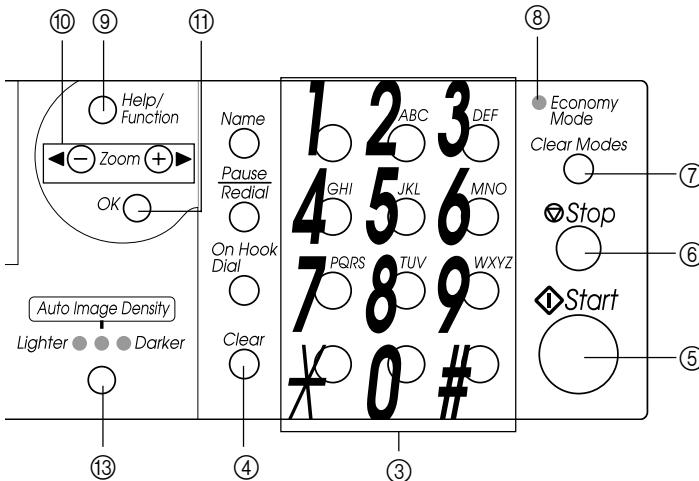
⑧ Economy Mode indicator

Lights when Economy mode is turned on.

⑨ Help/Function key

Use to print the Help List. Press once and enter a number for access to various function settings.

☞ *Printing the Help List, see page 98.*



⑩ Zoom keys

In copy mode, press these keys to fine-tune the preset reduction and enlargement ratios. Also use to select function settings and navigate the function menus.

⑪ OK key

Press to enter values or execute an operation when prompted by a message on the display.

⑫ Original Type Select key

Press to select a setting that best matches your copy original or fax document.

☞ *Image Type, see page 76.*

⑬ Density key

Press to make copies/faxes lighter or darker. Select Auto Image Density to let the machine choose a suitable setting.

⑭ Check Display indicator

Blinks to alert you to read a message on the display.

⑮ Busy indicator

Lights during a fax operation and when making telephone calls.

⑯ PC Interface indicator

Lights while the machine is receiving data from a connected computer.

<Copying>

⑰ Sort/Memory Copy key

Press to change order in which your copy sets are delivered.

☞ *Sorting Output, see page 78.*

⑱ Reduce key

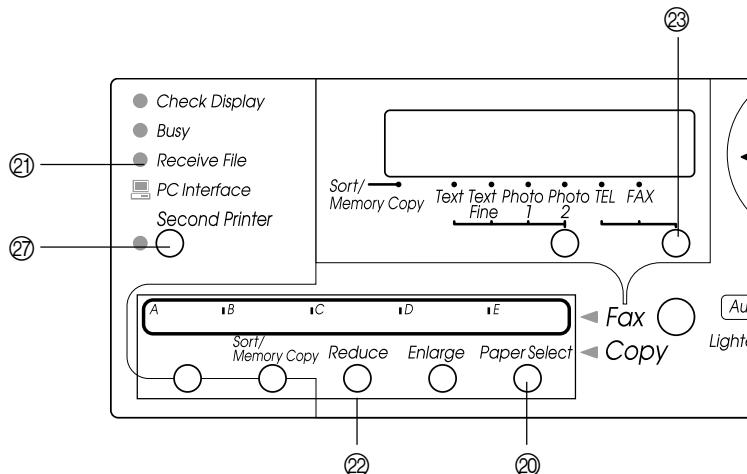
Press to reduce the size of an image when copying.

☞ *To Set the Reduction Factor, see page 73.*

⑲ Enlarge key

Press to enlarge the size of an image when copying.

☞ *To Set the Enlargement Factor, see page 74.*



㉑ Paper Select key

Press to select the copy paper size. When the optional paper feed unit is installed, press to switch between paper sources.

<Faxing>

㉒ Receive File indicator

Lights to let you know there is received fax data in memory that could not be printed for some reason.

☞ *Substitute Reception, page 45.*

㉓ Quick Dial keys

In fax operation mode, press one of these keys once to recall a fax or telephone number you have stored beforehand. In copy operation mode, these keys have different uses.

☞ *Quick Dials, see page 53.*

㉔ Reception Mode key

Press to choose whether the machine should answer all calls automatically.

☞ *Choosing the Reception Mode, see page 45.*

㉕ Name key

Press to recall a fax or telephone number stored in a Name Dial.

☞ *Name Dials, see page 58.*

㉖ Pause/Redial key

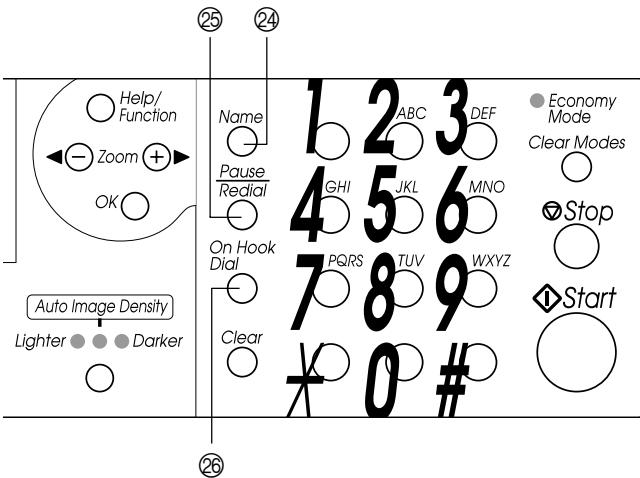
Press this key in fax standby mode to recall the last number dialled.

While entering a fax number, press this key to enter a pause (shown on the display as a hyphen).

㉗ On Hook Dial key

Press this key to establish a connection with the telephone line connected to the machine for dialing.

☞ *On Hook, see page 51.*



<Printing>

㉗ Second Printer key

Press this key to select between printing to this machine (indicator off), and printing to a second printer connected to the machine (indicator on).

This page is intentionally blank

1. SETTING UP

Package Contents

Make sure that all of the items shown in the Package Contents sheet that comes with the machine are included.

| ⚠ WARNING | |
|------------------|---|
| ! | Make sure the wall outlet is near the machine and freely accessible so that in event of an emergency it can be unplugged easily. |
| 🚫 | Do not put any metal objects or containers holding water (e.g. vases, flowerpots, glasses) on the machine. If the contents fall inside the machine, a fire or electric shock could occur. |
| ⚠ CAUTION | |
| 🚫 | Keep the machine away from humidity and dust. A fire or an electric shock might occur. |
| 🚫 | Do not place the machine on an unstable or tilted surface. If it topples over, it could cause injury. |
| ! | If you use the machine in a confined space, make sure there is a continuous air turnover. |

Location

Environment

| | Acceptable | Recommended |
|-------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| Temperature | 10 to 35°C (50 to 95°F) | 15 to 25°C (59 to 77°F) |
| Humidity | 15 to 80% | 30 to 70% |

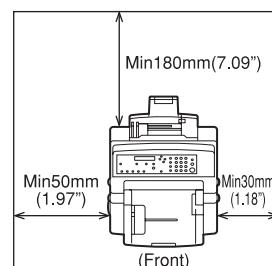
- The machine must be level within 3mm (0.11") both front to rear and left to right.

Locations to Avoid

- Areas exposed to direct sunlight or strong light (more than 2000 lux).
- Areas exposed to cool or heated air (from air conditioners, heaters etc.). Sudden temperature changes can cause condensation to form inside the machine.
- Areas where the machine might be subjected to frequent strong vibration.
- Areas higher than 2500m (8,221 feet) above sea level.

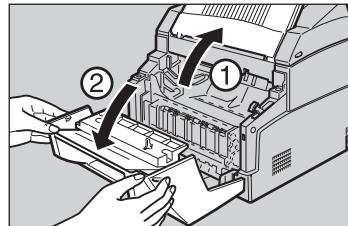
Machine Clearance

Place the machine near the wall outlet, providing minimum clearance as shown.



Installing the Starter Toner Cassette

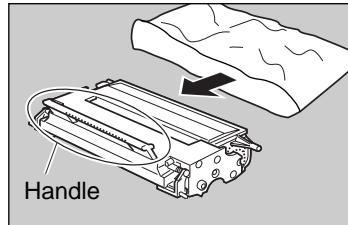
1 ① Raise the document trap.
② Lift up the tabs located on the sides of the machine and open the front unit.



2 Hold the starter toner cassette by its handle, and remove it from its vinyl bag.

⚠ CAUTION

Keep all plastic bags out of the reach of children.



⚠ Important!

Be sure to hold the starter toner cassette by its handle.

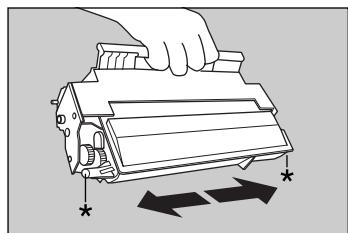
>Note

Keep the vinyl bag for later repackaging when necessary.

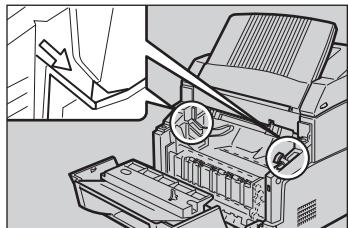
3 Holding the starter toner cassette by its handle, gently shake it side to side 5 or 6 times to evenly distribute the toner inside.

⚠ Important!

Be sure to hold the starter toner cassette by its handle.



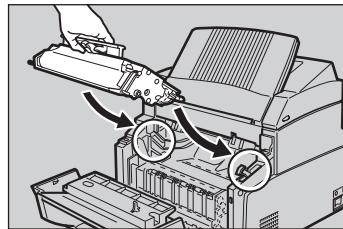
4 Look inside the machine and note the locations of the arrows that indicate the toner cassette guides on either side.



5 Make sure the plastic pins (marked with “*” in the illustration next to step **3**) on either side of the starter toner cassette slide along the guides inside the machine.



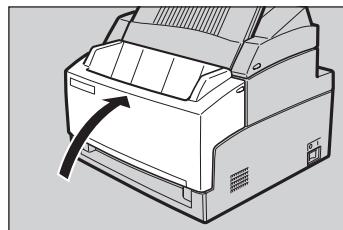
Note
Be sure to hold the starter toner cassette by its handle.



6 To close the front unit, press down firmly but gently on both sides of it until the front unit closes and clicks securely into place.



Background gray cast is sometimes evident just after installing a new toner cassette.



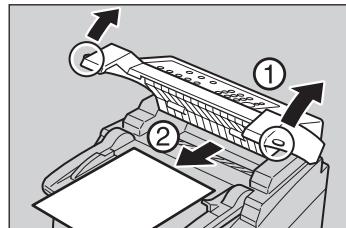
7 Lower the ADF as shown.



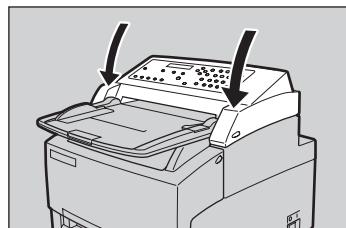
Installing Other Hardware

Removing the Protective Sheet

- 1 Open the ADF cover (①) and then remove the protective sheet (②).

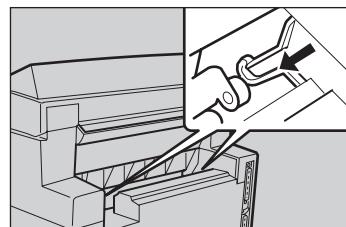


- 2 Close the ADF cover and make sure it locks securely into place.



Installing the Upper Paper Tray

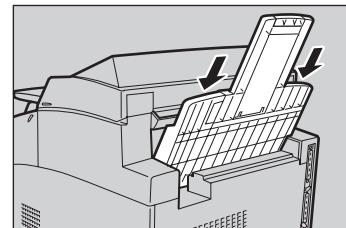
- 1 Look at the rear of the machine and note the locations of the slots for insertion of the upper paper tray on both sides.



- 2 To install the upper paper tray, press down on both sides of the tray, making sure that it is inserted as far as it will go.

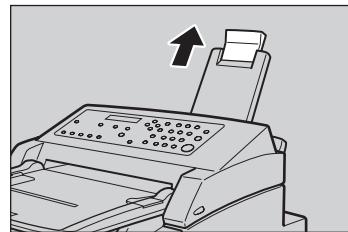
Note

Paper will not be fed correctly into the machine if the upper paper tray is not inserted all the way in.



Preparing the Output Tray

- 1 Pull out the output tray extension as shown.

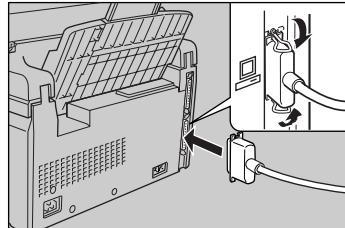


Connecting to a Computer

Important!

Make sure that the power of both the machine and your computer is turned off before making the connection.

- 1 **Plug one end of the provided parallel cable into the lower port on the side of the machine, and secure it in place as shown in the illustration.**



Note

- *The machine must be connected to a computer for printing.*
- *Use the cable that comes with the machine to connect to your computer.*

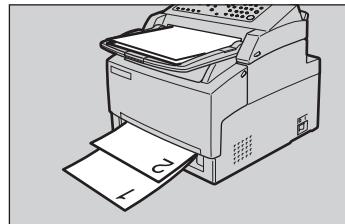
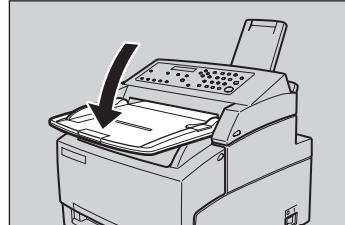
- 2 **Connect the other end of the parallel cable to your computer's parallel printer port.**

Choosing Where Printed Output is Delivered

Where printed output is delivered depends on the position of the ADF.

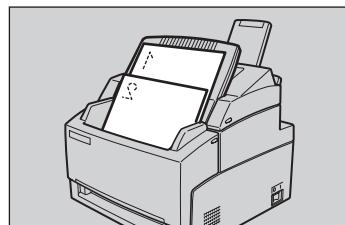
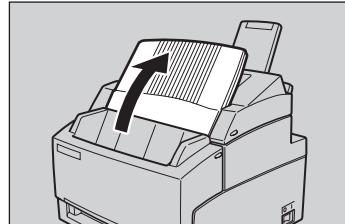
<Position A>

When the ADF is in the lower position, copies, prints and incoming faxes are delivered face-up at the lower output slot. Sheets stack in reverse order.



<Position B>

When the ADF is in the upper position, prints and receiving faxes are stacked face-down and in the correct order in the output bin.



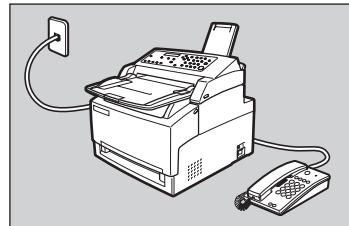
Important!

To avoid paper jams, do not move the ADF once printing begins.

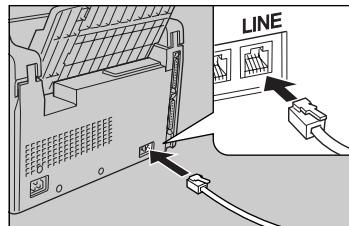
Connecting the Telephone Line and Optional Telephone Handset

There are two similar sockets located at the rear of the machine.

- LINE – the telephone line connection
- TEL – for an optional handset when sharing the line with a telephone



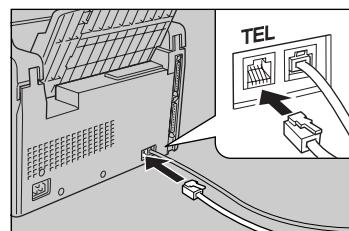
1 Plug the line cable into the LINE socket at the rear of the machine.



2 Connect the other end of the line cable to your telephone line wall socket.

If you have the optional telephone handset, now do the following:

3 Plug the telephone handset cable into the TEL socket at the rear of the machine.

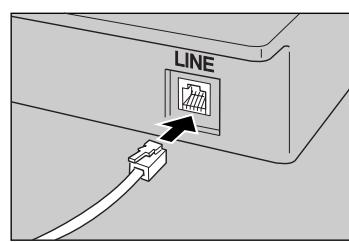


4 Connect the other end of the telephone handset cable to your telephone.

 **Note**

If you wish to also be able to receive incoming telephone calls, you must set the Reception mode to Telephone.

 *Choosing a Reception Mode, see page 45.*



Turning On the Machine

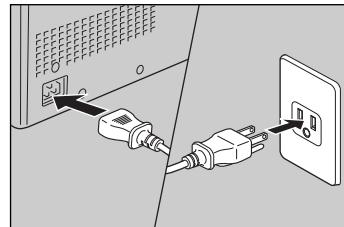
⚠ WARNING

- Only connect the machine to the power source described on the inside of the front cover.
- Avoid multi-wiring.
- Do not damage, break or make any modifications to the power cable. Do not place heavy objects on it, pull it hard or bend it more than necessary. These actions could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Do not plug or unplug the power cable with your hands wet. Otherwise, an electric shock might occur.

❗ Important!

Whenever you turn on the machine, make sure that no paper is loaded beforehand.

1 Attach the power cable to the machine and plug the other end into an outlet.

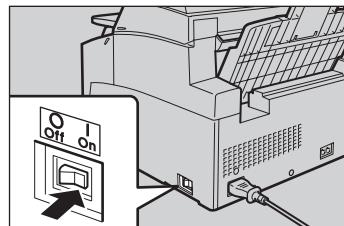


2 Turn on the machine.

>Note

You can select your preferred language used on the operation panel and on reports.

☞ Selecting the Language, see page 104.



2. GETTING ACQUAINTED



Important!

☞ The default display language is English. For how to change to your preferred language, see page 104.

Paper and Other Media

The machine supports printing on the following types of paper/media from the upper paper tray.

Refer to the following pages for details.

| | Paper/Media type (Paper size) | Display | Page |
|-------------|--|---|----------|
| Plain paper | A4 (210mm × 297mm) | A4 | p.11 |
| | A5 (148mm × 210mm) | A5 | p.11 |
| | F4 (8 ¹ / ₄ " × 13") | 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13 | p.11 |
| | Letter (8 ¹ / ₂ " × 11") | Letter (8 ¹ / ₂ × 11) | p.11 |
| | Legal (8 ¹ / ₂ " × 14") | Legal (8 ¹ / ₂ × 14) | p.11 |
| Envelopes | C5 Envelope (162mm × 229mm) | C5 Env | p.13, 15 |
| | C6 Envelope (114mm × 162mm) | C6 Env | p.13, 15 |
| | DL Envelope (110mm × 162mm) | DL Env | p.13, 15 |
| | Transparencies | | p.15 |
| | Label paper | | p.15 |



Note

Do not attempt to use the following types of paper: wrinkled or creased paper, curled or rolled paper, paper containing carbon, carbon-backed paper, coated paper, onion skin or other very thin paper.

⚠ CAUTION



Do not reuse stapled paper. Do not use aluminium foil, paper containing carbon or other conductive paper. Otherwise, a fire might occur.

Loading Paper

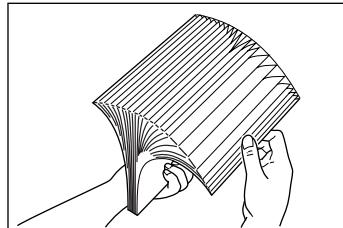
After you have set up the machine you need to load paper then specify the paper size using the procedure below.

Important!

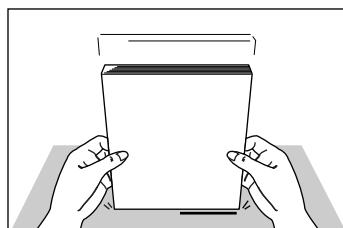
When loading paper into the upper paper tray, do not load more than 100 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m² or 20 lb). Overloading the upper paper tray can cause misfeeds.

Loading Plain Paper into the Upper Paper Tray

- 1 Fan the stack of paper to make sure that all pages are free and are not sticking together. The upper paper tray holds up to 100 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m² or 20 lb).



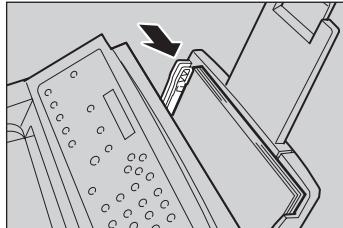
- 2 Straighten up all four sides of the stack by tapping them on a desk or tabletop.



- 3 Set paper into the upper paper tray. Make sure that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark on the tray guide.



- 4 Squeeze the tray guide and slide it against the edge of the stack.



5 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

6 Press  ►.

Function no.: --

7 Press  1.

61 Tray Pap.Size



If the paper feed unit (option) is installed, refer to page 19 for details on how to specify the paper size.

8 Press .

Tray guide OK? 

9 Press . Then press  ► or  until the correct paper size appears.

A4 ? ►

10 When the correct paper size is on the display, press . If the paper feed unit (option) (page 17) is installed, you can also select its paper size at this time.

Registered

6 Others 



Do not carry out any operations while "Registered" appears on the display.

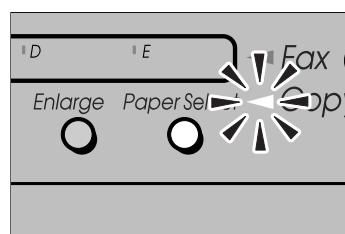
11 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> to return to the standby display.



Tip

If the paper feed unit (option) is not installed and the machine is in copy operation mode, you can press  in place of  in step

5. Next, skip step **6** and **7**, and jump directly to step **8**.

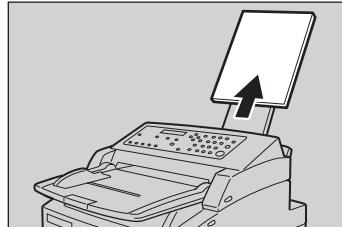


Loading Small Size Paper

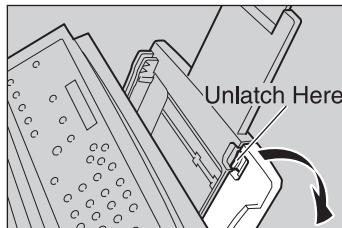


We recommend that you always feed small size paper vertically with the shorter edge feeding into the machine first.

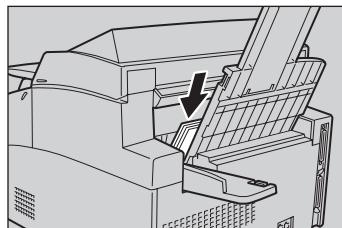
- 1 Remove all paper before loading small size paper in the upper paper tray.**



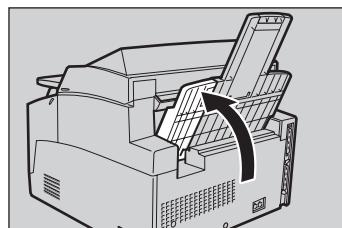
- 2 Open the small size paper feed access panel on the back of the machine by unlatching it as shown in the illustration. Opening the small panel makes it easy to handle small size paper.**



- 3 Set paper into the upper paper tray. Make sure that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark on the tray guide.**



- 4 After setting the paper into the tray, raise the small panel until it snaps securely into place.**



5 Press  Help/
Function*.

Prt Help List 

6 Press  .

Function no.: --

7 Press  .

61 Tray Pap.Size



If the paper feed unit (option) is installed, refer to page 19 for details on how to specify the paper size.

8 Press .

Tray guide OK? 

9 Press . Then press     until the correct paper size appears.

A5  

10 When the correct paper size is on the display, press .

Registered



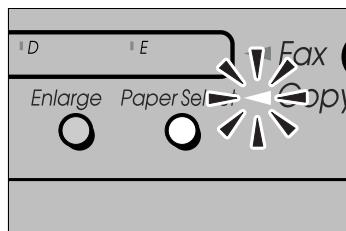
Do not carry out any operations while "Registered" appears on the display.

11 Press  Help/
Function to return to the standby display.



Tip

**If the paper feed unit (option) is not installed and the machine is in copy operation mode, you can press  in place of  Help/
Function in step **5**. Next, skip step **6** and **7**, and jump directly to step **8**.**



Important!

Be sure to specify the paper size again before copying, printing or receiving faxes onto A4 or Letter size paper. If you do not, you will not be able to receive faxes.

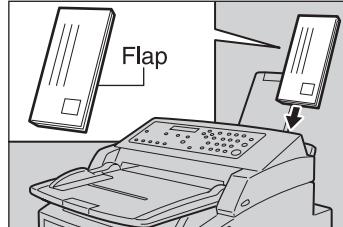
Loading Other Media

Use the following procedures to load envelopes, transparencies, and label paper.

Loading Envelopes

Load up to 5 envelopes at a time using the same procedure for loading small size paper on page 13.

- *Insert envelopes print side up with the stamp position as shown.*



- *Envelope flaps should be securely folded down, so the envelope is “closed”. This is especially important when printing on envelopes with adhesive on the flaps because heat generated during the printing process can cause the adhesive to melt and get on rollers.*

☞ Refer to the paper select operation on page 14.

Loading Transparencies

Load only one transparency at a time using the plain paper loading procedure on page 10 for large transparencies, and the small paper loading procedure on page 13 for small transparencies.

☞ Refer to the paper select operation on page 12 for large transparencies or page 14 for small ones.

Loading Label Paper

Load only 10 sheets of label paper at a time using the plain paper loading procedure on page 11.

☞ Refer to the paper select operation on page 12.

Second (Additional) Printer

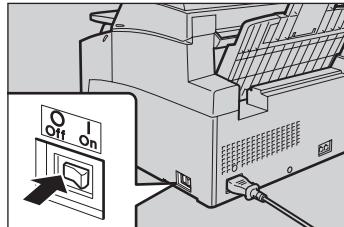
This machine features a port for connecting a second printer. When connected, press the *Second Printer* key to switch between the two printers.



Make sure that the power of your computer is turned off before making the connection.

Connecting to a Second Printer

- 1 Turn off both the machine and your second printer.



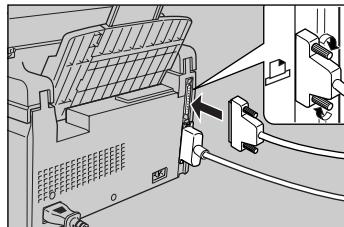
- 2 Connect one end of a parallel interface cable to your second printer.

- 3 Connect the other end of the cable to the second printer port, securing it in place with the screws.



Note

- Only use a standard IEEE 1284 compliant 36-pin parallel cable.
- ☞ Using the second printer, see page 28.



Paper Feed Unit (Option)

This section describes how to install the paper feed unit (option) and how to load paper in it. Addition of a paper feed unit provides you with a second paper source that holds up to 250 sheets of A4 or Letter size paper.

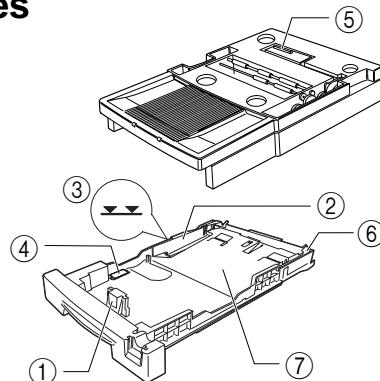


Important!

Make sure that machine power is turned off and that the power cord is unplugged from the power socket before installing the paper feed unit.

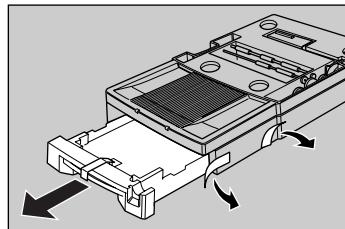
Paper Feed Unit Part Names

- ① Front guide
- ② Side guide
- ③ Limit mark
- ④ Paper size indicator
- ⑤ Connector
- ⑥ Corner guides
- ⑦ Metal plate



Installing the Paper Feed Unit

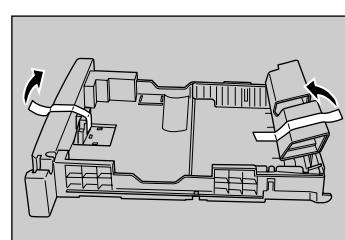
- 1 Remove all the packing tapes from the paper feed unit and pull the paper tray out of the unit.



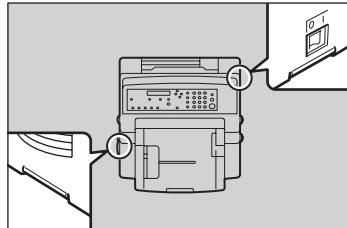
- 2 After removing all tapes and cardboard from inside of the paper tray, insert the tray back into the machine until it locks into place. Locate the paper feed unit where you plan to use the machine.



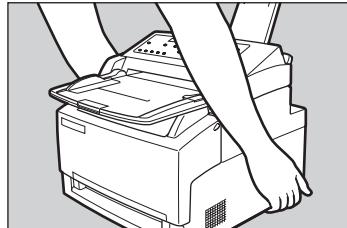
Be sure to place the paper feed unit on a level surface.



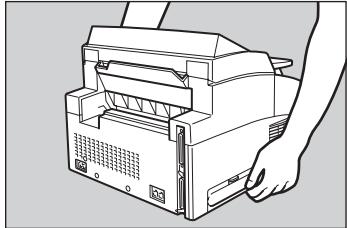
3 The machine has handholds at the locations shown in the illustration. Note that the illustration shows the machine as viewed from above.



- This illustration shows the handheld location on the right side of the machine.



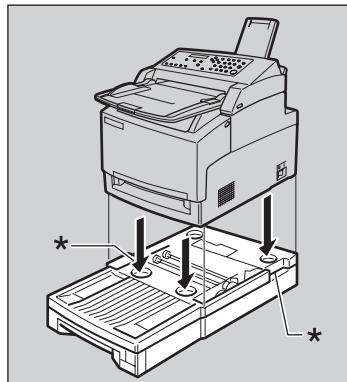
- This is the handheld location on the left side of the machine.



4 Carefully lower the machine onto the paper feed unit, making sure that the dowels on the paper feed unit fit into holes in the bottom of the machine properly.

! CAUTION

When lifting the machine, make sure your hands are at the locations indicated by “*” in the illustration. This protects against pinching your fingers between the machine and paper feed unit.



Note

After the above installation, attach the power cord to the machine and plug the other end into an outlet.

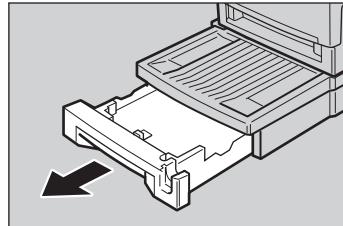
☞ Refer to page 8 for details.

☞ Loading Plain Paper in to the Upper Paper Tray, see page 11.

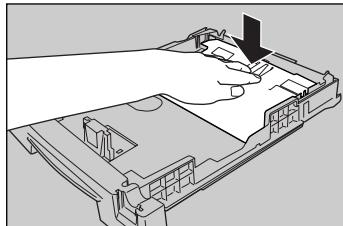
Loading Paper into the Paper Feed Unit

You can load either A4 or Letter size paper into the paper feed unit. Refer to page 20 for details on how to change the positions of the paper guides inside of the tray to match the type of paper you are using.

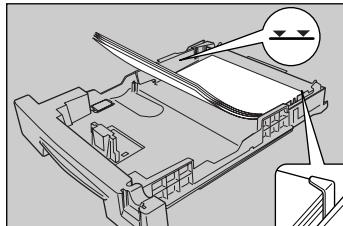
- 1 Pull out the paper tray and remove it from the paper feed unit.



- 2 Press down on the metal plate in the bottom of the paper tray until the plate locks into place with a "click".



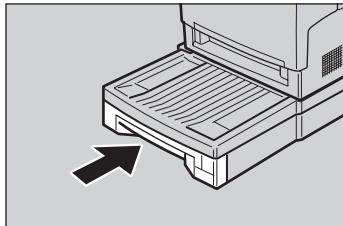
- 3 Up to 250 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m² or 20 lb) can be inserted into the paper tray as shown in the illustration. Make sure that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark on the side fence.



 **Note**

Make sure the leading corners of the paper fit under the corner guides.

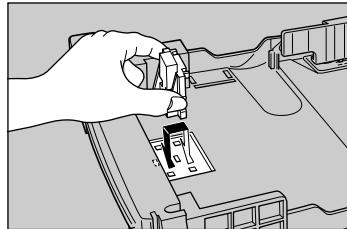
- 4 Slide the paper tray back into the paper feed unit until it locks into place.



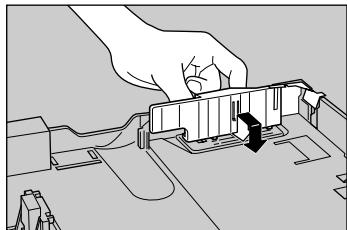
Changing the Paper Size

Use the following procedure to set the positions of the paper guides inside the paper tray for either A4 or Letter paper.

- 1 Squeezing in on both sides of the front guide, slide it to the correct position for the desired paper size.



- 2 Squeezing in on both sides of the side guide, slide it to the correct position for the desired paper size.



Important!

Whenever you change the paper size, be sure to also specify the paper size using the procedure below.

Specifying the Paper Size

After you install the paper feed unit (option), you can select between the upper paper tray and the paper feed unit as the paper source, and specify the size of paper in the paper feed unit.

- 1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

- 2 Press  ►.

Function no.: --

- 3 Press  1.

61 Tray Pap.Size

4 Press **OK**.

Lower Tray?

OK

Note

The actual message that appears on the machine's display depends on the paper source you last used. If "Upper Tray?" appears, press Zoom $\textcircled{+}\blacktriangleright$ or $\blacktriangleleft\textcircled{-}$ Zoom to display the "Lower Tray?" message before proceeding with step 4.

5 Press **OK**. Then press **Zoom $\textcircled{+}\blacktriangleright$** or $\blacktriangleleft\textcircled{-}$ **Zoom** until the correct paper size appears.

A4 ?

▶

6 When the correct size is on the display, press **OK**.

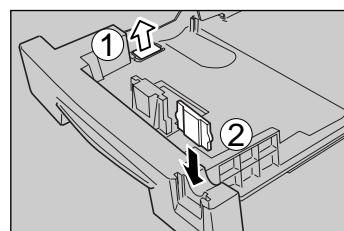
Registered

6 Others

OK

Note

Do not carry out any operations while "Registered" appears on the display.

7 Press **OK**<sup>Help/
Function</sup> to return to the standby display.**Installing the Paper Size Indicator****1** Remove the paper size indicator (①). Positioning the indicator so the side that shows the paper size you are using (A4 or Letter) is facing outwards, insert it into the front of the paper tray (②).

Selecting the Paper Source

1 Press  until the desired paper source appears.

The upper paper tray is selected when "U" is on the display, and the paper feed unit is selected when "L" is on the display.

| | |
|------|------|
| 100% | U 01 |
|------|------|

| | |
|------|------|
| 100% | L 01 |
|------|------|

Upgrading Memory

You can install a Single Inline Memory Module (SIMM) to upgrade the on-board memory of the machine.

The machine is shipped from the factory with a 4MB SIMM which can be replaced with an 8MB, 16MB or 32MB SIMM.

Use the following procedure to install an 8MB, 16MB or 32MB SIMM.

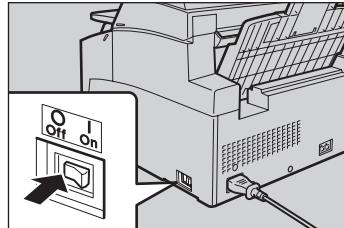
Note

*The following are the required specifications for a SIMM used with this machine:
72-pin, 60ns, Extend Date Out (EDO), parity/non-parity.*

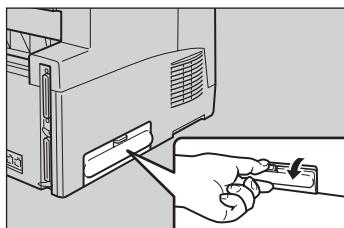
Important!

Make sure you touch some grounded metal object with your hand to discharge any electrostatic charge from your body before handling the SIMM.

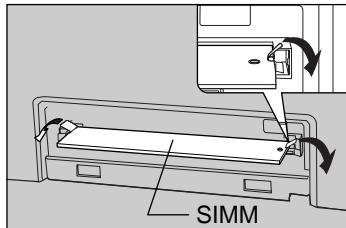
- 1 Turn off the machine.



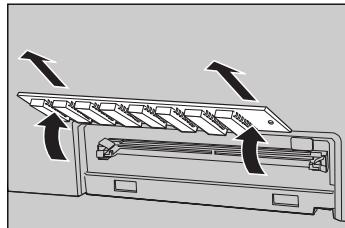
- 2 Remove the SIMM cover located on the left side of the machine.



- 3 Pull apart the hooks on the both sides of the SIMM board that hold it in place.



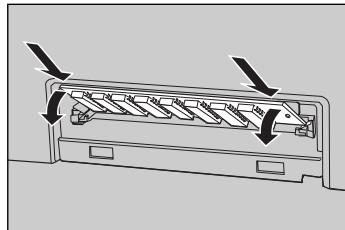
4 Carefully lift out the currently installed SIMM board.



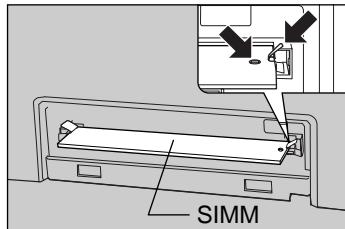
5 Angle the new SIMM board as shown in the illustration, and insert it down into the slot. Gently rock it back and forth until you hear it snap into place.

Important!

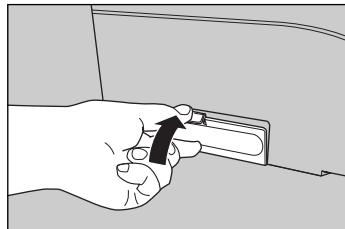
Make sure the SIMM board is oriented correctly when you insert it into the slot.



6 Make sure the hooks on the sides of the SIMM board snap securely into place.



7 Replace the cover by inserting its tabs into the holes provided, as shown in the illustration.



3. PRINTING AND SCANNING

When connected to a compatible PC, you can use this machine as a high performance laser printer and black and white scanner.



Important!

- Make sure that your PC parallel port is set to ECP. If it is not, please consult your PC manual on how to change it.



Note

- For information on PC hardware and software requirements, please read the README file on the CD.
- Printer drivers are provided for both Windows® 95/98 and Windows® 3.1, but the scanning feature requires Windows® 95/98.

Setting up

Before you can start printing and scanning you need to the following if you have not done so already:

- Connect the machine to your PC
- Install the software drivers on your PC

Installing the Software Drivers

Follow the steps below to install the printer/scanner drivers on your PC.

1

Switch the machine on.

2

Make sure the machine is connected to your PC and paper is loaded in the upper paper tray.

☞ *Connecting to a computer; see page 6.*

☞ *Loading Paper; see page 11.*

3

Insert the provided software CD into your CD-ROM drive.

4 Do one of the following according to your operating system:

- **Windows® 95/98**

Run the setup application. For example, if your CD-ROM is assigned to D, run “D:\Scan-in\Setup.exe”.

- **Windows® 3.1**

First copy the disk images under the directory named “3.1” on the CD-ROM to floppy disks.

Then insert the first floppy disk into your floppy disk drive and run “install.exe”.



Note

You cannot install from CD-ROM under Windows 3.1.

Only the printer driver will be installed under Windows 3.1.

5 Follow the instructions that appear on the display.

For detailed information on how to print and scan from your PC, please refer to the online help provided.

Features You Can Access From the Printer Driver

Printer Driver Contents

■ Paper Defaults

Paper size : Size, Measurement Unit
 Page orientation : Portrait, Landscape
 Output : Copies, Print in reverse order
 Paper source : Source
 About

■ N-Up Printing

Select a Layout Option : Normal, Reduce for N-up printing
 (Print page borders ; 2 pages up/sheet ; 4 pages up/sheet)

■ Document

Document Type Settings

| | Automatic | Photo (Grayscale) | Desktop Publishing | High Speed Draft | Business Graphics |
|----------------------|-----------|-------------------|--------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| Graphics Mode | Raster | Raster | GL/2 | Raster | Raster |
| Font Resolution(dpi) | 600 | 600 | 600 | 300 | 600 |
| Graphics Resolution | High | High | High | High | High |
| Halftone | Screening | Screening | Screening | Screening | Dithering |

Job Settings : True Type Mode, Name

■ Configuration

Device Configuration : Feeder ; Toner Save Mode ; Time-out

■ Fonts

Font Manager (To add printer fonts)

■ Overlays

Overlay Assignments : None, All pages, Odd/Even pages, First/Other pages

Cover/Divider page Overlays

Create New Overlay

Manage Overlays : Get files from other sources to use as overlays, Send created overlays to other sources, Rename overlays, Remove overlays

Important!

After printing a large number of pages, wait a few minutes before turning off the machine.

Note

Be sure to use online help and Read me file of the printer driver to get the most out of all the printer features and functions.

Using the Second Printer (Additional Printer)

Use the following procedure to switch between this machine and a second printer when a second printer is connected.

Important!

If the second printer has a bi-directional mode, make sure you turn it off.

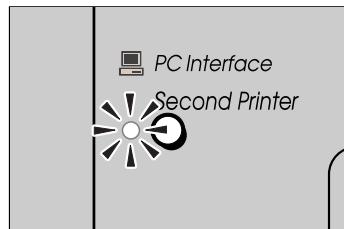
 Refer to page 15 for details on connecting a second printer.

Printing to the Second Printer

1 Press  ^{Second Printer}. The Second Printer indicator lights.

Important!

Whenever you change printers, be sure to also change to the appropriate printer driver on your computer.



Note

While the Second Printer Indicator is lit, print data from your computer passes through the machine to the second printer.

2 Perform the required print operation with the application you are using.

4. FAXING

Your machine is furnished with superior faxing capabilities and wide a range of powerful fax features. Here are some of the things you can do:

- Send and receive fax messages
- Store fax numbers you often use and recall them with a single key press
- Redial the previous fax number
- Share your fax line with a telephone
- Keep track of machine usage through printed reports
- Customise default settings to suit your requirements

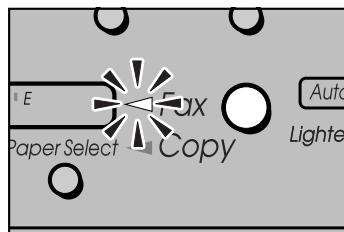


Please read the Setup section before you start. It explains how to set up the fax feature to suit your needs.

Switching between Fax Operation and Copy Operation Mode

This machine has two modes: fax operation mode and copy operation mode. You can still receive fax messages when the machine is in copy operation mode, but if you wish to send a fax you must make sure the machine is in fax operation mode.

To switch back and forth between copy operation mode and fax operation mode, press  .



The Fax and Copy indicators indicate which mode the machine is currently in.



When the machine automatically switches to Economy Mode, all indicators turn off. Press any key to exit Economy mode.

- ☞ *Economy Mode, see page 105.*
- ☞ *You can select the default mode the machine starts in. See User Parameters on page 100.*

Entering Characters on the Operation Panel

Entering Numbers

Enter digits when dialling inputting or fax numbers, specifying function codes, or registering various information, such as your own fax number.

To enter digits 0^{WXY} - 9^{WXY} , press the appropriate key on the numeric keypad. E.g. to enter the number 12345678, press $1_0 2_0 3_0 4_0 5_0 6_0 7_0 8_0$

12345678

☞ *Entering Pauses and Tones in Fax Numbers, see page 42.*

Entering Letters, Symbols and Spaces

When the display asks you enter a name, you can use the numeric keypad to enter characters and symbols.

To enter a character, press the appropriate key on the numeric keypad until the character appears. Then press the Zoom $\text{+}\blacktriangleright$ key to move the cursor forward.

| Press this key repeatedly | To enter these characters: |
|---------------------------|---|
| 1_0 | 1 |
| 2_0 | A B C 2 a b c Ä ä |
| 3_0 | D E F 3 d e f |
| 4_0 | G H I 4 g h i |
| 5_0 | J K L 5 j k l |
| 6_0 | M N O 6 m n o Ñ Ö ñ ö |
| 7_0 | P Q R S 7 p q r s |
| 8_0 | T U V 8 t u v Ü ü |
| 9_0 | W X Y Z 9 w x y z |
| 0^{WXY} | * |
| 0^{WXY} | [Space] . - 0 + ? / : * % & ! () [] " |
| $#^{\text{WXY}}$ | # |

 **Note**

Some special characters in lower case appear identical in upper case on the display due to space limitations. These characters are printed correctly on lists and reports.

Deleting Characters and Moving the Cursor

When entering names and storing numbers:

- To delete the character to the left of the cursor, press .

 **Note**

If the cursor is at the far left of the display, pressing  deletes the whole name and number.

- To move the cursor left, press the  Zoom key.
- To move the cursor right, press the Zoom  key.

Setting up

Please Read This First

Before you can send or receive faxes you must connect the machine to a telephone line and store the following settings:

- ☛ *Own Name/TTI, see page 33.*
- ☛ *Dial Mode, see page 34.*
- ☛ *Own Fax Number, see page 36.*
- ☛ *Date and Time see page 38.*

In addition, you may wish to adjust the following:

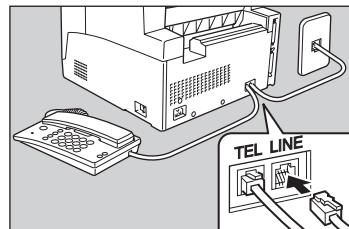
- ☛ *Selecting the Language, see page 104.*
- ☛ *Summer Time (Daylight Saving Time) see page 39.*
- ☛ *The volume of sounds the machine makes, see page 65.*

If you wish to share the line with a telephone handset, you may need to change the reception mode.

- ☛ *Choosing a Reception Mode, see page 45.*

Connecting to the Telephone Line

There are two similar sockets located at the rear of the machine.



- LINE—the telephone line connection
- TEL—for an optional handset when sharing the line with a telephone

1 Insert the line cable into the LINE socket at the rear of the machine.

2 Connect the other end of the line cable to your telephone line.

Storing your Own Name/TTI

Store your name or name of your organisation. When you send a fax, this identification appears at the top of the page when printed at the other end. It is also shown on the other party's display during communication. It can be up to 32 characters long.

- ☞ *Entering Characters on the Operation Panel, see page xii,29.*
- ☞ *If you do not want this identification printed on faxes you send, see Page Header on page 67.*

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press  ►.

Function no.: __

3 Press  .

16 Own name/TTI ^{OK} K

4 Press .

■

5 Enter your name or name of your organisation.

E.g. press   Zoom  ►   

XYZ CO. ■

Zoom  ►     Zoom  ► 

Zoom  ►   Zoom  ►   

Zoom  ►   Zoom  ►



To clear the entire setting, make sure the cursor is at the far left position then press .

XYZ CO.

*Press  to clear the setting, or press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> to cancel this operation*

Delete?

^{OK} K

6 Press . The display opposite will flash briefly on the display and then the function menu will reappear.

Registered

 **Note**

Do not carry out any operations while “Registered” appears on the display.

1 Set up



7 Do one of the following:

- Enter another function number.
- Press  to return to standby mode.

Setting the Dial Mode

Specify the type of telephone line you are using (tone or pulse dial). If you are unsure of what this should be, please consult your line provider.

If your machine is behind a PABX, you should also provide the following details:

- The PABX number that gives you an outside dial tone— You can enter 0, or a value between 01 and 99 (00 is not possible).
- The PSTN access method. This will depend on your locale and the PABX system you are using.

The machine will not function correctly if these settings are not correct. Consult your systems administrator if you are unsure.

1 Press .

Prt Help List ►

2 Press .

Function no.: __

3 Press  .

12 Dial Mode 

4 Press .

Mode: Tone? 

5 Press   to select Pulse or Tone.

Mode: Pulse? 

6 Press **OK** .

- If the display opposite does not appear, press to finish.

Mode: PABX? No? **7** Press **◀**  **Zoom** or **Zoom** **▶** to select whether your fax machine is behind a PABX.Mode: PABX? Yes **8** Press **OK** .

- If you chose "No" in step **7**, proceed to step **12**.
- If you chose "Yes", proceed to step **9**.

1 Set up Postline by: **9** Enter the digit or digits that give you an outside dial tone on the numeric keypad, e.g. enter 0.

You can enter 0, or a value between 01 and 99 (00 is not possible).

**Note**

When changing an existing setting, press **Clear**  to clear it, then enter the new number.

Postline by: 0 **10** Press **OK** .Method: 0? **11** Press **◀**  **Zoom** or **Zoom** **▶** to select the PSTN access method.Method: Flash? 

Three methods are available.

<number>: Access the outside line by dialling the number you entered in step **9**

Ground: Ground Start

Flash: Flash Start

12 Press . The display opposite will flash briefly on the display and then the function menu will reappear.

Registered



Do not carry out any operations while “Registered” appears on the display.

1 Set up



13 Do one of the following:

- Enter another function number.
- Press Help/Function to return to standby mode.

Storing your Own Fax Number

Store the telephone number of the line your machine is connected to. This will appear on the other party's display during communication and be printed on their and your own reports.



In some locales you cannot store your own fax number.

If the other party is using Authorized Reception or a similar feature to handle messages from certain senders differently, they should specify this information when registering Specified Senders on their machine.

To increase the legibility of your number, you can insert a “+” character and spaces. To enter a “+”, press . To enter a space, press .



The fax number can be up to 20 digits long.

☞ *Entering Numbers, see page 30.*

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press  ►.

Function no.: __

3 Press  .

17 Own Fax No. 

4 Press .



5 Enter your own fax number on the numeric keypad.

+12 3 456 

E.g. press #          

 **Note**

To clear the entire setting, make sure the cursor is at the far left position then press . The display opposite will appear.

Delete? 

Press  to clear the setting, or press  to cancel this operation.

6 Press .

Registered

 **Note**

Do not carry out any operations while "Registered" appears on the display.

1 Set up 

7 Do one of the following:

- Enter another function number.
- Press  to return to standby mode.

Setting the Date and Time

This is printed on reports to help you keep track of machine usage.

- If you make a mistake when entering a value, press the \blacktriangleleft  and \blacktriangleright  keys to position the cursor and enter the value again.

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press  \blacktriangleright .

Function no.: __

3 Press .

11 Date/Time

- Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> to return to standby mode.

4 Press .

Time: 01:13 °_K

5 Press .

Year: 99°_K

6 Enter the year on the numeric keypad.

E.g. to enter the year 2000, press  .

Year: 00°_K

7 Press .

Month: 02°_K

8 Enter the month on the numeric keypad.

E.g. press  .

Month: 05°_K

9 Press .

Day: 01K

10 Enter the date on the numeric keypad.

E.g. press   .

Day: 23K

11 Press . The display opposite will flash briefly on the display and then the function menu will reappear.



Do not carry out any operations while “Registered” appears on the display.

Registered

12 Do one of the following:

- Enter another function number.
- Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> to return to standby mode.

1 Set up K

Turning Summer Time (Daylight Saving Time) on/off

This feature is useful if local custom requires advancing or setting the clock back.

One minute after you turn Summer Time on, the clock advances by an hour. Similarly, one minute after you turn Summer Time off, the clock is put back an hour.

☞ For how to switch this feature on or off, see *Changing On/Off Settings* on page 67.

Sending Faxes

How to Send a Fax

This is the basic procedure for sending a fax message. For detailed information and explanations of the advanced features available, see the following pages:

- ☛ *Economy Mode, see page 105.*
- ☛ *Quick Dials, see page 53.*
- ☛ *Name Dials, see page 58.*
- ☛ *Redialling a Number, see page 43.*
- ☛ *Entering Pauses and Tones in Fax Numbers, see page 42.*

1 Check that the standby display is shown.

100% 01

- If the display is blank, press any key to exit Economy mode.

2 If necessary, press to switch to fax operation mode.

Dial/Set orig.

3 Carefully insert the document stack face-down into the ADF until the display changes to “Dial number”.

- Make sure this message appears. If it does not, your document will not be scanned from the ADF

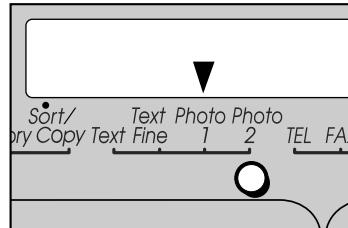


Dial number

4 Adjust the scan settings if necessary.

- E.g. if your document is a photograph, press the Original Type Select key twice to select Photo 1.

| Setting | Use for: |
|-------------|----------------------------|
| [Text] | Standard text |
| [Text Fine] | Detail text |
| [Photo1] | Photographs |
| [Photo2] | Mixed text and photographs |



☞ To select the Resolution/Photo setting 76.

5 Dial the fax number in one of the following ways:

- On the numeric keypad.

E.g. press .

12345678_

- Press a Quick Dial key with a number stored in it.

E.g. press .

B: XYZ CO.

- Press  then enter the first letter of a previously stored Name Dial.

E.g. press  then press  until the Name Dial you require appears.

ABC CO.

6 Press .

Dialing...

Entering Pauses and Tones in Fax Numbers

You can enter pauses and tones when dialling, or store them in Quick Dial and Name Dial numbers.

- ☞ *Quick Dials, see page 53.*
- ☞ *Name Dials, see page 58.*

●Entering Pauses

In some situations, you may need to insert a pause in fax numbers. For example:

- If your telephone line is behind a PABX (you have to dial an access code to access outside numbers), insert a pause between the access code and the telephone number.
- For international numbers, enter a pause after the country code.

To enter a pause in a fax number, press .

The pause is shown on the display as a “-” character.



001-

●Entering Tones

Some organisations offer you special services by telephone which you can access using Touch Tone or DTMF tones.

To enter a tone, press the  or  keys.

- ☞ *Setting the Dial Mode, see page 34.*

Redialling a Number

The machine remembers the last fax or telephone number dialled with the numeric keys, a Quick Dial or a Name Dial. To redial a fax number, follow the procedure below.

Note

- If you dialled the last number with a Quick Dial or Name Dial, the number will be displayed instead of the stored label.
- You cannot redial a number dialled with the handset keypad.

1 Make sure the machine is in fax operation mode.

2 Set your document.

3 Press .

4 Press .

5 Continue the standard procedure for sending a fax.

Automatic Redial

If the machine cannot connect to the other party for some reason (e.g. the line is busy) when sending a document it will wait a while and then attempt to dial again. This will be repeated until the connection is made, or the redial count maximum is reached.

Redial in:1'29"

Note

The redial interval and count maximum vary according to your locale.

● Cancelling Automatic Redial

To cancel redialling, remove your document from the ADF.

Cancelling Transmission of a Fax

To cancel a fax transmission while dialling or during transmission, press the Stop key and remove your document.

Trans. canceled

Note

Once a connection has been established and transmission has begun, you cannot cancel transmission of data already sent.

Receiving Faxes

Choosing a Reception Mode

This machine has two reception modes:

- FAX mode
- TEL mode

●FAX Mode

In this mode the machine automatically answers incoming calls. When a call is received, the machine rings a few times to alert you that a message is being sent, then starts receiving and printing the message.

FAX mode is ideal for a dedicated fax line.

Note

- *The machine cannot switch between FAX mode and TEL mode automatically.*

●TEL Mode

In this mode, the machine does not answer incoming calls automatically. The machine will continue ringing until you pick up the handset (option), or start fax reception manually.

This mode is useful if you are sharing the line with a telephone. If the caller is a person, you can answer the telephone normally, but if it is a fax machine you can still receive the message.

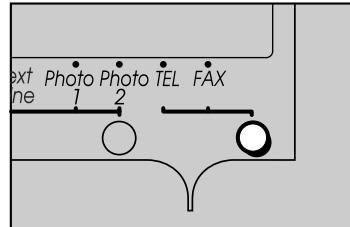
Note

- *On Hook dialling is not available in some locales.*
- *This mode requires someone to be near the machine to receive fax messages. If nobody answers the call, fax messages will not be received.*

☞ *Receiving Calls in TEL Mode, see page 46.*

●Switching between FAX Mode and TEL Mode

Press the Reception Mode key to switch between FAX mode and TEL mode.



●Receiving calls in TEL Mode

When the machine is switched to TEL mode, follow these steps to answer incoming calls.

1 When the machine rings, press 

or lift the handset and listen.

- If you hear a voice and you lifted the handset, continue the conversation as normal and replace the handset when finished.
- If you hear another fax machine, make sure the machine is in fax operation mode (press Fax/Copy if necessary), then go to step 2.

Telephone call

2 Press  and replace the handset.

The machine will start receiving the message.

Connecting ...

Screening out Unwanted Faxes with Authorized Reception

This feature lets you screen out unwanted incoming fax messages.

In this manual, the fax number of another machine which you wish to allow to send you fax messages is referred to as a Specified Sender.

When Authorized Reception is turned on, your machine will only receive fax messages from Specified Senders—all other incoming messages will be rejected and not printed.

When a fax message comes in, the machine checks to see if the sender's fax number is stored in any of the Quick Dials or Name Dials. If it is found and you have used that Quick Dial or Name Dial to send at least one message to that destination, the message is accepted.

 **Note**

You can store up to 30 Specified Senders (25 Name Dials and 5 Quick Dials).

To set up your machine for Authorized Reception, you need to:

- 1** Turn Authorized Reception on.
- 2** Make sure all the Specified Sender fax numbers are stored in Quick Dials or Name Dials.
- 3** Make sure that you have sent at least one message to all the Specified Senders using their Name Dials or Quick Dials. After one message has been sent, the Specified Sender is enabled and you can receive fax messages from them.

 **Note**

If you turn Authorized Reception on and omit steps 2 and 3 above, the machine will not be able to receive any fax messages.

- ☞ *Storing, Editing and Deleting Quick Dials, see page 53.*
- ☞ *Storing and Deleting Name Dials, see page 58.*
- ☞ *Unauthorized Call Report, see page 64.*

●Turning Authorized Reception on/off

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press  ►.

Function no.: __

3 Press .

21 Author. RX  _{OK}

4 Press .

Mode: Off?  _{OK}

5 Press   ► to adjust the setting.

Mode: On?  _{OK}

6 Press . The display opposite will flash briefly on the display and then the function menu will reappear.

Registered



Do not carry out any operations while "Registered" appears on the display.

2 Communication

7 Do one of the following.

- Enter another function number.
- Press  to return to standby mode.

Cancelling Reception of a Fax

If for some reason you want to cancel reception of fax while it is being received, do the following.

1 Make sure the machine is in fax operation mode.

Recep. canceled

2 Press .



A portion of the fax message may still be printed.

Making Telephone Calls

If you connect an optional telephone handset, you can use the same line for both telephone calls and fax messages.



If you wish to be able to receive telephone calls, be sure to select TEL mode.

☛ *Choosing a Reception Mode, see page 45.*

1 Do one of the following:

- Pick up the telephone handset and dial with the handset keypad
- Make sure the machine is in fax operation mode, pick up the telephone handset and dial using the operation panel numeric keypad, a Quick Dial, a Name Dial or the Pause/Redial key.
- Make sure the machine is in fax operation mode, press the On Hook key and dial using a Quick Dial, a Name Dial or the Pause/Redial key. When the other party answers, pick up the telephone handset.



• In some locales, On Hook dialling is not available and/or you cannot dial using a Quick Dial, Name Dial, the number keys or Redial key when the handset is lifted.

2 Continue your conversation as usual.

Faxing During a Telephone Call

You can also have the machine take over the line and send or receive a fax message at the end of your telephone call. This is useful when:

- The other party shares their line with a similar fax machine and you wish to send or receive a message after your conversation.
- You wish to check that the number is indeed a fax number before attempting to send your message.



The other party's machine must support this feature.

1 Do one of the following:

- Pick up the telephone handset and dial with the handset keypad
- Make sure the machine is in fax operation mode, pick up the telephone handset and dial using the operation panel numeric keypad, a Quick Dial, a Name Dial or the Pause/Redial key.
- Make sure the machine is in fax operation mode, press the On Hook key and dial using a Quick Dial, a Name Dial or the Pause/Redial key. When the other party answers, pick up the telephone handset.



• In some locales, On Hook dialling is not available and/or you cannot dial using a Quick Dial, Name Dial, the number keys or Redial key when the handset is lifted.

2 Listen to the line.

- If a voice answers, continue your conversation as normal.
- When you wish to send a fax, listen for the fax tone of the other party then continue from step **3** below.
- When you wish to receive a fax, listen for the fax tone of the other party, then continue from step **5** below.

● Sending a Fax during a Telephone Call**3 Make sure the machine is in fax operation mode, set your document and adjust any scan settings as required.****4** Press  and replace the handset.

Connecting...

● Receiving a Fax during a Telephone Call**5 Make sure the machine is in fax operation mode.****6** Press  and replace the handset.

Connecting...

**Note**

Fax reception is not possible while there is a document in the ADF.

Monitoring the Line while Dialling with On Hook

This feature lets you dial a telephone number without lifting the optional external handset. You can listen to what is happening on the line through the machine's internal speaker.

1 If necessary, press  to switch to fax operation mode.

Dial/Set orig.

2 Press .

Dial number

3 Dial the telephone number using the numeric keypad, a Quick Dial, a Name Dial or the Pause/Redial key.

12345

4 If you hear a voice answer, pick up the external handset, press  again and continue your conversation.

 **Note**
To cancel the call, press .

5 Replace the handset when you have finished the call.

Dial/Set orig.

Remote Change

If you have set the reception mode to TEL mode and turn this feature on, you can use the telephone handset numeric keypad to start fax reception when you hear another fax machine on the line.

When you hear a fax machine through the handset, press the Remote Change digit on the telephone handset twice to initiate fax reception, then replace the handset.

You need to specify the Remote Change digit using when you turn this feature on with the following procedure.

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press  ►.

Function no.: __

3 Press  .

32 Remote Change

4 Press .

Mode: Off? 

5 Press  [–] or  ► to turn Remote Change on or off.

Mode: On? 

6 Press  and do one of the following:

- If you turned Remote Change on, go to step **7**.
- If you turned Remote Change off, go to step **8**.

Change with 2 

7 Press a digit on the numeric keypad to select the Remote Change digit.

Change with 7 

E.g. press .

8 Press . The display opposite will flash briefly on the display and then the function menu will reappear.

Registered



Do not turn off the machine while “Please wait” or “Registered” is shown on the operation panel display.

3 Fax Switch 

9 Do one of the following.

- Enter another function number.
- Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> to return to standby mode.

Storing Fax and Telephone Numbers

This machine provides two useful methods for storing fax and telephone numbers:

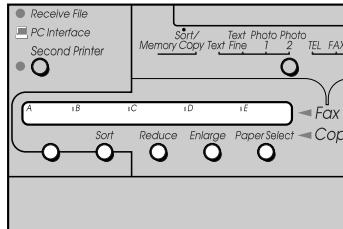
- Quick Dials
- Name Dials



The maximum length of a fax number you can dial, or store in Quick Dials/Name Dials, is 40 digits.

Quick Dials

If you often dial certain numbers, you can save time and effort by storing them in Quick Dial keys. Once stored, instead of entering a fax number directly on the numeric keypad, just press the Quick Dial key the number is stored in.



If you store a number in a Quick Dial, you can also give it a name up to 10 characters long.

If you press a Quick Dial key when the display below is shown, the stored name will come up on the display so you can check it.

Dial/set orig.

B:XYZ CO.

You can store one fax number in each of the five Quick Dial keys labeled A-E. To check the fax numbers stored in Quick Dials, print out the Dial List.

- ☛ *Printing the Dial List, see page 63.*
- ☛ *Name Dials, see page 58.*
- ☛ *For how to dial with a Quick Dial, see page 41 step 5.*

● Storing Quick Dials

- ☞ Entering Characters on the Operation Panel, see page xiv.
- ☞ Entering Pauses and Tones in Fax Numbers, see page 42.

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function*</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press  ^{Zoom} ►.

Function no.: __

3 Press  .

13 Quick Dial 

4 Press .

Press Quick or



Print List ►

5 To select a Quick Dial, press a Quick Dial key.

E.g. press  <sup>Sort/
Memory Copy</sup> to select Quick dial (1B).

B: ■



To print a list of currently stored Quick Dials, press  ^{Zoom} ►.

Dial List



Press Start

Then press  ^{Start}.

Printing...

6 Enter or edit the fax number you wish to store with the numeric keypad.

E.g. press          .

123456789■

7 Press **OK** .

B:

8 Enter or edit the name for this Quick Dial.

B:XYZ CO.

E.g. press   Zoom   
 Zoom     Zoom  
 Zoom    Zoom   
 Zoom    Zoom 

9 Press **OK** .

Registered



Do not turn off the machine while “Please wait” or “Registered” is shown on the operation panel display.

Print List 



Press Quick or

10 Do one of the following:

- To store another Quick Dial, go back to step **5**.
- To return to standby mode, press  twice.
- To access another function, press  then enter a function number.

●Editing Quick Dials

1 Press .

Prt Help List 

2 Press **Zoom**  .

Function no.:

3 Press  .

13 Quick Dial 

4 Press **OK** .

Print List 



Press Quick or

5 Press the Quick Dial key you wish to edit.

1234567989

6 Press **Zoom**  **▶** twice then press .

123456789

1203456789



*To clear the Leftmost digit, press **Zoom**  **▶**.
Then press .*

123456789

23456789

7 Press **OK** .

B : XYZ

8 Edit the name stored in this Quick Dial.

B : AXYZ

E.g. Press  ^{ABC}.

- To move the cursor, press  **Zoom** or **Zoom**  **▶**.

9 Press **OK** .

Registered



Do not turn off the machine while “Please wait” or “Registered” is shown on the operation panel display.

Print List 



Press Quick or

10 Do one of the following:

- To edit another Quick Dial, go to step **5**.
- To return to standby mode, press  ^{Help/} **Function** twice.

●Clearing Quick Dials

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> .

Prt Help List ►

2 Press  + ►.

Function no.: __

3 Press  3 ^{DEF} .

13 Quick Dial ^o K

4 Press  .

Print List ►



Press Quick or

5 Press the Quick Dial key you wish to delete.

E.g. press  <sup>Sort/
Memory Copy</sup> to select Quick dial (1B).

12345

6 Press  .

Delete?



If you do not wish to clear this Quick Dial, press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> twice to return to standby mode.

7 Press  .

Deleted

8 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> twice to return to standby mode.

B: ■

Name Dials

Name Dials are a handy way of storing fax numbers that you dial regularly in machine memory. When you store a number in a Name Dial, you must also give it a name up to 10 characters long. When dialling, you enter the first letter of this name to quickly find the Name Dial you require.

Office B

You can store multiple Name Dials with identical first letters and step through them to find the one you want when dialling.

You can store up to 25 Name Dials.



You cannot store two Name Dials with the same name.

To check which Name Dials are currently stored, print out the Dial List.

☞ *Printing the Dial List, see page 64.*

☞ *Quick Dials, see page 54.*

● Storing Name Dials

☞ *Entering Characters on the Operation Panel, see page xii, 30.*

☞ *Entering Pauses and Tones in Fax Numbers, see page 42.*

1 Press  ^{Help/}Function.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press Zoom  ►.

Function no.: __

3 Press  4^{SH}.

14 Name Dial 

4 Press .

Register? 

5 Press .

■

6 Enter the fax number you wish to store with the numeric keypad.

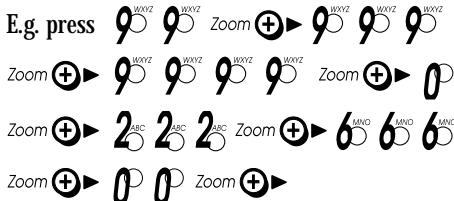
E.g. press 

123456789■

7 Press .

Name : ■

8 Enter or edit the name for this Name Dial.

E.g. press 

Name : XYZ CO. ■

9 Press .

Registered



Note

- Do not turn off the machine while “Please wait” or “Registered” is shown on the operation panel display.
- If a Name Dial with the same name is already stored, “Name exists” will flash on the display. Enter a different name.

Register?



10 Do one of the following.

- To store another Name Dial, go back to step **4**.
- To return to standby mode, press  twice.
- To access another function, press  once and enter another function number.

● Deleting Name Dials

1 Press  ^{Help/}_{Function}.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press  ⁺ ►.

Function no.: __

3 Press  4^{ghi}.

14 Name Dial 

4 Press   ⁺ ►.

Delete? 

5 Press .

Select letter

6 Enter the first letter of the Name Dial label.

Marty

E.g. press  ^{mvo}.

- If Name Dial you are looking for does not appear, keep pressing the key until it does.

E.g. press  ^{mvo} again



You can also search through Name Dials that begin the same initial letter with the  ⁻ and  ⁺ keys.

7 Press  ^{Clear}.

Delete?

8 Do one of the following.

- To delete the Name Dial, press  and go to step 9.

Deleted

Delete? 

- To cancel this operation, press  ^{Help/}_{Function} either enter another function number, or press  ^{Help/}_{Function} to return to standby mode.

9 Do one of the following

- To delete another Name Dial, go to step **5**.
- To return to standby mode, press  ^{Help/}_{Function} twice.
- To access another function, press  ^{Help/}_{Function} once and enter another function number.

● Dialling with Name Dials

Instead of dialling the number on the numeric keypad, do the following in fax operation mode.

☞ *How to Send a Fax, see page 40.*

1 Make sure the machine is in fax operation mode.

Dial/Set orig.

2 Press ^{Name}.

Select letter

2 Enter the first letter of the Name Dial label.

Marty

E.g. press  ^{MNO}.

- If the Name Dial you are looking for does not appear, keep pressing the key until it does.

E.g. press  ^{MNO} again.

Main Off



You can also search through Name Dials that begin the same initial letter with the  keys.

Reports and Lists

Printing the Journal

The Journal is a record of fax messages that were recently sent or received by your machine. By default, it is printed automatically after every 35 communications.

You can print it out whenever you wish to check on machine usage, or to find out if a communication was successful or not.

The following items are included on the Journal:

- Own name—this machine's Own name/TTI identification
- Transmission—list of recent fax transmissions from this machine
- Reception—list of recent fax messages received by this machine
- Date and Time—when the communication took place
- Address—the fax number/identification of the other party
- Duration—how long the communication took
- Page—how many pages the message contained
- Result—whether the communication completed successfully

☞ For how to turn automatic printing of the Journal on/off, see *User Parameters*, see page 100.

1 Press  ^{Help/} _{Function} .

Prt Help List ►

2 Press **Zoom**  ►.

Function no.: __

3 Press  

41 Journal

4 Press **OK**  .

Press Start

5 Press  ^{Start}.

Printing...

Printing the Dial List

Print this list to check on the names and numbers of Quick Dials and Name Dials stored in the machine.

You can print the Dial list using the procedure below, or when storing Quick Dials.

The following items are included on the Dial List:

- Own name—this machine's Own name/TTI identification
- Own fax number—this machine's fax number
- Quick Dial—list of Quick Dial labels and numbers
- Name Dial—list of Name Dial labels and numbers

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press  ^{Zoom} + ►.

Function no.: __

3 Press  452.

42 Dial List 

4 Press  ^{OK}.

Press Start

5 Press  ^{Start}.

Printing...

Transmission Result Report

By default, this report is turned off. If you turn it on, this report will be printed after every fax you send.

The following information is listed:

- From (Owner)—this machine's fax number/identification
- To—the destination fax number/identification
- Page(s)—number of pages in document
- Date, Time—when the communication took place

- Duration—how long the communication lasted
- Result—whether the transmission was successful
- ☞ *To turn automatic printing of this report on or off, see Customising Default Settings with the User Parameters, see page 100.*

Error Report

By default, this report is printed automatically if a reception or transmission fails.

The following information is given:

- From (Owner)—the sender's fax number/identification
- To—the receiver's fax number/identification
- Date, Time—when the communication failure happened
- Duration—how long the communication lasted
- Reason for error

Power Failure Report

If power is lost while sending a message, receiving a message, or while a message has been stored in memory when the Receive File indicator is lit, this report will be printed out when power is restored.

- ☞ *When the Receive File Indicator is lit, see page 87.*

Unauthorized Call Report

If you have set up Authorized Reception, and turned this report on, a report is printed if an unauthorized sender tries to send you a message.

By default this report is turned off. Turn it on with the User Parameters.

- ☞ *Authorized Reception, see page 46.*
- ☞ *User Parameters, see page 100.*

The following items are recorded:

- From—the fax number/id of the sender
- Date, Time—when they tried to send the message

Advanced Features

Making Machine Sounds Louder or Quieter

This machine makes various sounds during operation. You can adjust the volume of these sounds, or turn them off completely according to your taste. You can change the following:

- TX—the sound of a fax being sent
- RX—the sound of a fax being received
- On Hook—sounds made when using the On Hook feature
- Dialling—tones you hear after pressing Start
- Buzzer—warning beep (e.g. when cover is opened) and the sound made every time you press a key on the operation panel
- Ring—ringing sound when a call comes in



Note

On Hook is not available in some locales.

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press  ►.

Function no.:

3 Press  .

31 Adjust Volume

4 Press .

TX: ■ 

5 Press  ► or  to make the volume louder or quieter.

TX: ■■ 

6 Press .

7 Repeat steps **5** and **6** for all adjustable volumes.

After adjusting the Ring volume and pressing **OK** , the display opposite will appear. Now go to step **8**.

Registered



Do not turn off the machine while “Please wait” or “Registered” is shown on the operation panel display.

8 Do one of the following:

- Enter another function number.
- Press **OK**  ^{Help/}Function to return to standby mode.

3 FaxSwitch **OK**

Sending Faxes Over Unreliable Lines-Slow (4800bps)

If you experience problems sending faxes due to bad telephone lines, you can reduce the speed at which your machine sends fax messages to 4800 bits per second.



This setting does not affect the speed at which your machine receives faxes.

Use the following procedure to turn this feature on/off.

1 Press **OK**  ^{Help/}Function.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press **Zoom**  ►.

Function no.: __

3 Press **2**  **2** .

22 Slow(4800bps)

4 Press **OK** .

4800bps: No? **OK**

5 Press  or  **Zoom** to adjust the setting.

4800bps: Yes? 

6 Press . The display opposite will flash briefly on the display and then the function menu will reappear.

Registered



Do not carry out any operations while “Registered” appears on the display.

2 Communication

7 Do one of the following:

- Enter another function number.
- Press  ^{Help/}  to return to standby mode.

RDS

RDS stands for Remote Diagnostic System.

If your machine has a problem, a service technician can perform various diagnostic tasks over the telephone line from the service station to try and find out what is wrong. The service technician can also use this feature to change some of your machine's settings if you request it.

For this feature to work, you must turn it on before the service technician starts the RDS operation on your machine.

☞ For how to switch this feature on or off, see *Changing On/Off Settings*, see page 67.

Page Header

By default, your TTI/Own Number appears on top of faxes you send when printed at the other end. If you wish, you can turn this feature off.

☞ For how to switch this feature on or off, see *Changing On/Off Settings*, see above.

☞ Storing your Own Name/TTI, see page 33.

Changing On/Off Settings

Use this procedure to turn the following features on or off:

☞ Page Header, see above.

☞ Turning Summer Time (Daylight Saving Time) on/off, see page 39.

☞ RDS, see above.

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press  ►.

Function no.: __

3 Press  .

51 Select 

4 Press .

Page Header 

5 Press  ^{Zoom} or  ► until the setting you wish to change appears on the display.

Summer Time 

E.g. press  ► once.

6 Press .

Mode: Off? 

7 Press  ^{Zoom} or  ► to adjust the change.

Mode: On? 

8 Press . The display opposite will flash briefly on the display and then the function menu will reappear.

Registered



Do not carry out any operations while "Registered" appears on the display.

9 Do one of the following:

- Enter another function number.
- Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> to return to standby mode.

5 Select 

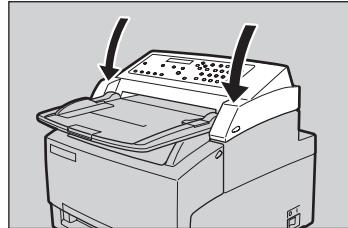
5. COPYING

Making a Copy

You can load up to 10 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m² or 20 lb) at a time into the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF).

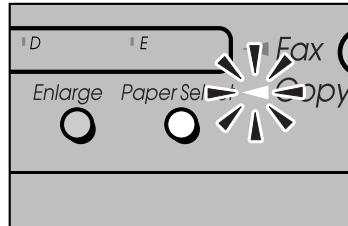
Important!

Check to make sure that the ADF cover is securely closed before using it.

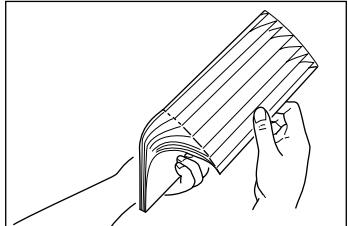


Before you start, make sure the machine is in copy operation mode and the display opposite is shown.

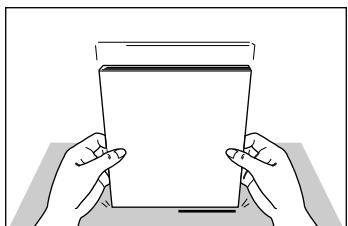
To switch between copy operation mode and fax operation mode, press  .



- 1** Fan the stack of originals. Never try to place more than 10 sheets of plain paper onto the ADF.



- 2** Straighten up all four sides of the stack, by tapping them on a desk or table top.

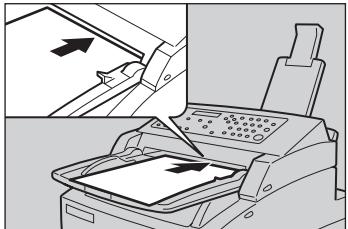


3 Carefully insert the document stack face-down into the ADE.

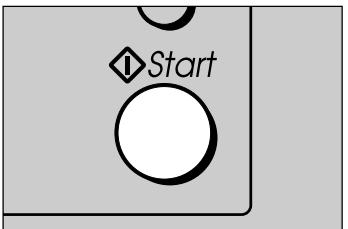
The side of the original to be copied should be face down.

**4** Insert the stack of originals along the document guide into the ADE.

Insert your stack of originals into the ADF until it stops. If you do not push it right in, the machine will not detect the stack.

**5** Make sure the upper tray extension is pulled out.**6** Press  to perform the copy operation.

If your original jams while being fed into the ADF, press  to cancel the operation. See page 90 for how to clear the jam.



Originals that do not meet the following requirements can cause paper misfeeds, and even damage the machine.

■ Requirements

- Thickness 0.05mm to 0.2mm (0.002" to 0.08")
- Weight 60 to 90 g/m² (16lb to 24lb)
- Clear markings Markings on the originals must be clear to be read correctly.
- Uniform page size All pages should be the same size.
- Page condition Avoid using originals that are bent, curled, damaged, or stapled, and originals printed on coated paper, carbon paper, or photographic paper.

Making Multiple Copies

1 Carefully insert the document stack face-down into the ADF



2 Enter the number of copies you wish to make using the numeric keypad.

| | |
|------|----|
| 100% | 10 |
|------|----|

E.g. to make ten copies, press **1** **0**.



Note

If your document is not scanned in even when



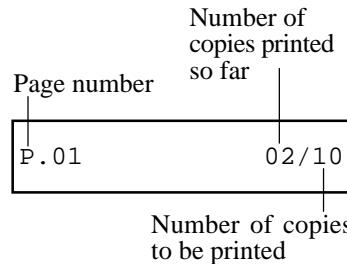
you press **Start**, there is a chance it is not set correctly in the ADF. Reset your document and try again.

3 Press **Start** to perform the copy operation.



Note

During the copy operation, the display shows the number of copies printed so far and that to be printed. For example, 02/10 appears while the second copy of a run of 10 copies is being printed.



Tips

- After copying finishes, press **Clear Modes** to clear any settings.

Reduction and Enlargement

Press  or  to select preset reduction or enlargement factors for the copy operation.

To Set the Reduction Factor

1 Carefully insert the document stack face-down into the ADF



2 Press  until the desired size ratio appears. The sizes change in the following order.

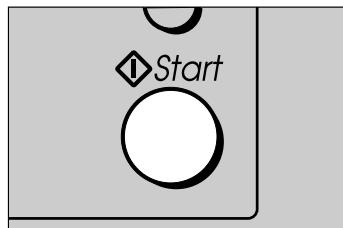
100% → 93% → 87% → 82%
 ↑
 50% ← “71% A4 ▶ A5” ←

| | |
|------|----|
| 100% | 01 |
|------|----|

| Ratio (%) | Original → Paper size |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| 93 | A little reduced. |
| 87 | A4 → B5 |
| 82 | B5 → A5 |
| 71 | A4 → A5 |
| 50 | Reduced by 1/4. |

3 Press  to perform the copy operation.

 **Note**
 After copying finishes, press  to clear any settings.



To Set the Enlargement Factor

1 Carefully insert the document stack face-down into the ADF



2 Press  until the desired size ratio appears. The sizes change in the following order.

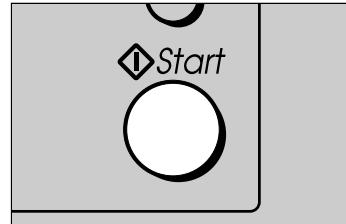
100% → 115% → 122%
 ↑
 200% ← “141% A5 ▶ A4” ←

| | |
|------|----|
| 100% | 01 |
|------|----|

| Ratio (%) | Original→Paper size |
|-----------|---------------------|
| 115 | B5 → A4, B6 → A5 |
| 122 | A5 → B5 |
| 141 | A5 → A4 |
| 200 | A6 → A4 |

3 Press  to perform the copy operation.

 **Note**
 After copying finishes, press  to clear any settings.

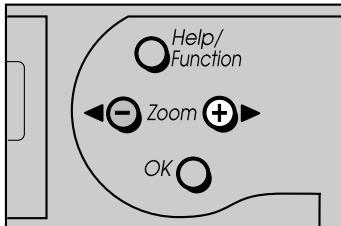
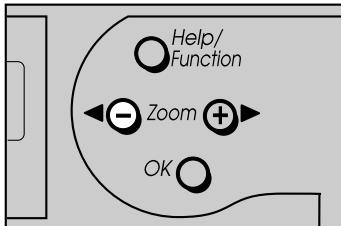


Zoom (In 1% Increments)

Zoom allows you to tune the preset reduction and enlargement factors to exactly the value you want. You can change the zoom factor in increments of 1%.

To Use Zoom

Setting Range



- 1 Carefully insert the document stack face-down into the ADF.



- 2 Press \blacktriangleleft (decrease) or \triangleright (increase) until the desired size ratio appears.

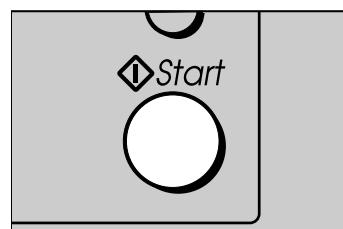
| | |
|------|----|
| 100% | 01 |
|------|----|

| | |
|-----|----|
| 99% | 01 |
|-----|----|

- 3 Press \diamond Start to perform the copy operation.

Note

After copying finishes, press \bigcirc Clear Modes to clear any settings.



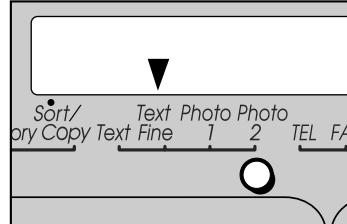
Adjusting the Copy Image

To Select the Resolution/Photo Setting

1 Carefully insert the document stack face-down into the ADF.

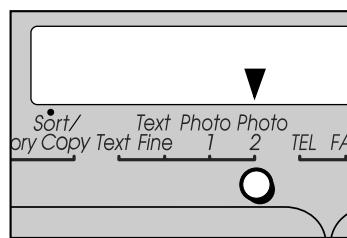


2 Press the Original Type Select key to specify the resolution or halftoning method for the copy operation.



3 A pointer (▼) moves on the display to indicate the current setting.
Choose a setting that matches your original:

| Setting | Use for: |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| [Text Fine] | Copying text |
| [Photo1] | Copying photographs |
| [Photo2] | Copying mixed text and photographs |



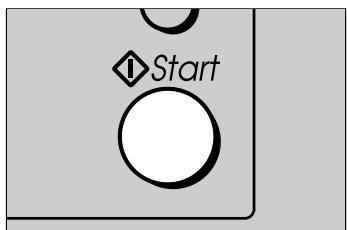
Note

If the memory size of your machine is 4MB, the machine automatically switches from Photo2 to Photo1 when you make multiple copies using the ADF.

4 Press  to perform the copy operation.

Note

After copying finishes, press  to clear any settings.

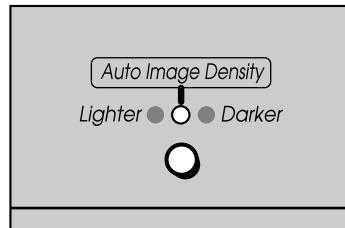


To Adjust the Image Density

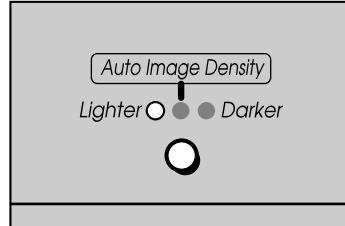
1 Carefully insert the document stack face-down into the ADF



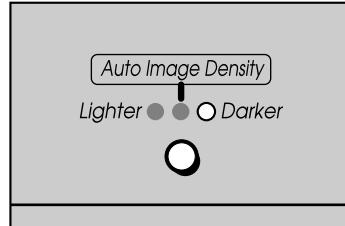
2 Press the Density key to select the image density.



- Select [Lighter] to make the image lighter.



- Select [Darker] to make the image darker.

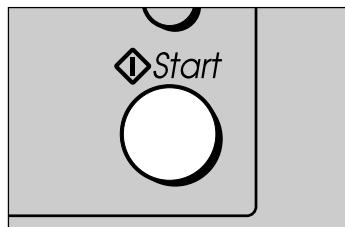


3 Press  to perform the copy operation.



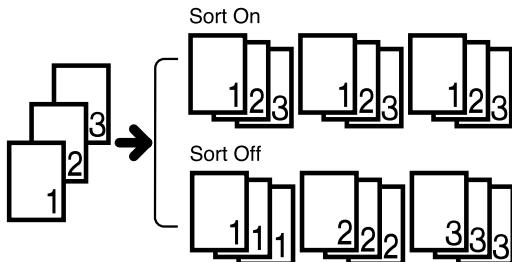
Note

After copying finishes, press  to clear any settings.



Sorting Output

The following example shows how output is affected by turning sorting on and off.



Important!

The sort operation requires scanning of all your originals into memory before starting the copy operation. The number of originals that can be scanned at one time depends on how much memory you have installed. Refer to page 23 for details on increasing memory capacity.

Sort Copying

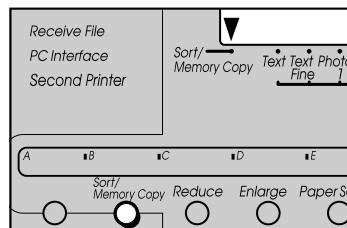
1 Carefully insert the document stack face-down into the ADF.

☞ How to set originals, see page 69.



2 Sorting is activated when the ▼ pointer is visible on the display above Sort/

Memory Copy. Press  to turn
sorting on.

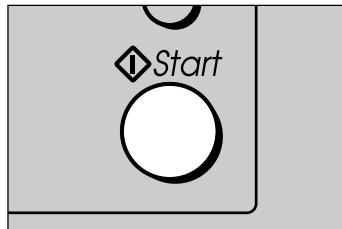


3 When you press  to start the copy operation, all of the originals on the ADF are scanned into memory before they are printed.



Note
After copying finishes, press  to clear any settings.

Clear Modes

6. TROUBLESHOOTING

General

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|--|---|--|------|
| Nothing happens when the machine is turned on. | Power cord is not connected. | Correctly connect the power Cable to the machine and plug it into a outlet. | p.9 |
| | SIMM is not installed correctly | Install the SIMM correctly. | p.23 |
| | SIMM does not meet the required specifications. | Use a SIMM with the required specifications. | p.23 |
| Paper misfeeds when the machine is turned on for the first time after the installation. | Paper was loaded in the machine before the machine was turned on. | Remove the paper, turn the machine off and then back on. After machine initialization is complete, load the paper back into the machine. | p.9 |
| After installing a SIMM board, the memory value that appears on the machine's display does not match the amount of memory installed. | SIMM does not meet the required specifications. | Use a SIMM with the required specifications. | P.23 |

Printing and Copying (1/2)

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|--------------------------|---|--|------------|
| Frequent paper misfeeds. | The upper paper tray is not set correctly | Set the upper paper tray correctly. | p.4 |
| | Improper paper. | Use paper of the correct size and thickness. | p.10 |
| | Paper is not set correctly in the upper paper tray. | Realign the paper with the paper guide, and if necessary, fan the paper stack. | p.11 |
| | Paper is curled or damp. | Uncurl the paper. | p.11,13,19 |
| | | Insert paper into the upper paper tray from the least-curved side. | p.11,13 |
| | | Set paper face down if necessary. | p.11,13,19 |
| | | Avoid using damp paper. | — |
| | Too much paper is loaded in the machine. | Remove some of the paper. | p.11,15 |
| | Paper is loaded incorrectly. | Check the paper and realign it if necessary. | p.11,19 |

Printing and Copying (2/2)

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|---|---|--|---------|
| Frequent paper mis-feeds. | Attempting to print on both sides of the paper. | Print on only one side. Two-side printing is not supported by this machine. | p.11,19 |
| | Printing onto loosely stacked envelopes. | Flatten the envelopes to expel all air. | p.15 |
| | Misfeeding of the envelope flap. | Make sure that envelope flaps are closed (folded down). | p.15 |
| Part of the image is unclear. | Toner is distributed unevenly in the toner cassette. | Remove the toner cassette, gently rock it left and right a few times, and replace it into the machine. | p.94 |
| Black lines on the printout. | Heat damage to the toner cassette caused by turning off the machine too soon after copying a large number of pages. | Replace the toner cassette. | p.94 |
| Dark areas along the sides of the printout. | Turning off the machine too soon after printing or copying a large number of pages. | Replace the toner cassette. | p.94 |

Printing

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|--|--|--|-------|
| Abnormal or unexpected printing results. | Use of wrong cable. | Use the cable that comes with this machine. | p.6 |
| | Wrong printer driver settings. | Change to the correct printer driver settings. | p.25 |
| | Attempting to print from a DOS application at 600 dpi. | Change to 300 dpi. | p.102 |
| Parts of the image are not printed out. | The correct paper size is not specified. | Specify the paper size using the operation panel. | p.20 |
| Cannot print from a second printer. | Second printer is not connected correctly. | Check connections and make corrections, if necessary. | p.16 |
| | Second printer is not selected. | <i>Second Printer</i> Press  so the indicator above it is lit. | p.28 |
| | Incorrect settings of the second printer driver. | Use the printer driver of the second printer to turn off bi-directional printing. | p.28 |

Copying and Faxing (1/2)

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|---|---|---|------------|
| Frequent original mis-feeds with ADF | Original is not set correctly. | Set the original correctly. | p.39,69 |
| | Curled original(s). | Straighten out the original(s). | p.39,69 |
| | | Insert the original(s) from the least-curved side. | p.39,69 |
| | Incorrect original specifications. | Use originals of the correct size, thickness, and quantity. | p.70 |
| Original is not fed from the ADF | ADF cover is open. | Close the ADF cover. | p.69 |
| | Document is not set correctly in ADF | Set the document properly. | p.39,69 |
| Periodic black marks on printed output. | Cleaning pad is not installed. | Correctly install the cleaning pad. | p.94 |
| Black and white lines on printed output when using the ADF. | Dirty ADF transport path. | Clean the ADF transport path. | p.93 |
| Output too light. | Low contrast original. | Adjust the print density. | p.78 |
| Unclear photographic images. | Copying in Text Fine Mode. | Use the Original Type Select key to select the Photo1 or Photo2 Mode. | p.76 |
| Parts of the original image are not copied. | The correct paper size is not specified | Specify the paper size using the operation panel. | p.11,13,19 |
| Cannot send or receive faxes. | The power is off. | Turn on the power. | p.9 |
| | The machine is not connected to the telephone line. | Check the line connection. Make sure that one end of the line cable is connected to the LINE socket at the rear of the machine and the other to your telephone line socket. | p.32 |
| | The Dial Mode settings are not correct. | Make sure you have selected the correct line type (pulse or tone). If behind a PABX, make sure the PABX settings are correct. | p.34 |

Copying and Faxing (2/2)

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|---|--|---|------|
| Cannot send faxes. | The machine is in copy operation mode. | Press the Fax/Copy key to switch to fax operation mode. | p.29 |
| Cannot receive faxes | The machine is busy processing or printing a PC print job. | Fax reception is not possible while the machine is processing or printing PC print data. | — |
| | The machine is busy making copies. | Fax reception is not possible while making copies. | — |
| | The machine has run out of paper, or small size paper is loaded in the upper tray. | Load more paper. If small size paper is loaded, load A4 size paper so you can receive faxes. | p.11 |
| | Toner has run out. | Install a new toner cassette. | p.94 |
| | The machine is in TEL mode. | Press the Reception Mode key to switch to FAX mode, or read about how to receive faxes manually in TEL mode. | p.45 |
| | Paper is jammed. | Clear all jammed paper. | p.87 |
| | Front unit cover open. | Close the front unit. | p.3 |
| | The machine has been set up to only receive faxes from certain senders with the Authorized Reception feature. | Turn Authorized Reception off with function 21, or read how to configure this feature. | p.47 |
| Even when you press the Remote Change digit, Remote Change will not function. | Remote Change is not turned on. | Turn it on with function 32. | p.51 |
| | You are pressing the wrong Remote Change digit, have pressed a key on the operation panel or the machine is busy dialling. | The default Remote Change digit is 2. If pressing this digit on the handset keypad still does not work, try changing the Remote Change digit to another number. Do not press any key on the operation panel before pressing the Remote Change digit. If the machine is busy dialling, Remote Change is not available. | p.51 |

Scanning

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|---|---|---|------|
| PC scanning does not function properly. | The PC parallel port is not set to ECP. | Consult your PC manual on how to set your parallel port to ECP. | p.25 |

Error Messages (1/3)

The table below explains the error messages that may appear on the display and the appropriate action to take.

| Message | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|---|---|---|----------|
| “Close cover” | Front unit is open. | Close the front unit. If a copy job is in progress, set the copy quantity again. | P.3 |
| “Add paper” | Machine is out of paper. | Load paper. If a copy job is in progress, set the copy quantity again. | P.11,19 |
| “Toner near end” | Machine is almost out of toner. | Prepare a toner cassette for replacement. | — |
| “Add Toner” | Toner cassette is not loaded correctly. | Correctly load the toner cassette into the machine. If a copy job is in progress, set the copy quantity again. | P.2 |
| | Machine is out of toner. | Replace the toner cassette. | P.88 |
| “Clear paper” | Paper misfeed or paper will not feed at all. | Remove the misfed paper. If a copy job is in progress, set the copy quantity again. If paper persistently misfeeds, carry out the procedure on page 89. | P.88 |
| “Memory overflow” | Not enough memory capacity. (PC printing only) | Either lower the printer driver Resolution setting, or increase memory capacity by installing a larger SIMM. Press any operation panel key to clear the error message from the display. | P.23 |
| “Remove original” (when original is set in ADF) | Original misfeed or paper will not feed at all. | Remove the original from the ADF. If a copy job is in progress, set the copy quantity again. | P.69 |
| “Memory full” and “Press Stop” | Too much sort copy data. | Press  to cancel sort copying. If you need to print big copy jobs, increase the memory capacity. | P.23, 78 |
| | Too many sort copy pages. | Press  to print pages already stored in memory. To cancel the job, press  . If you need to print big copy jobs, increase the memory capacity. | P.23, 78 |

Error Messages (2/3)

| Message | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|---------------------------------|---|---|------|
| “Transm.error” and “Press Stop” | An error occurred during transmission, or the other line was busy. If power was lost during the dialing or connecting phases of transmission, or in fax transmission standby mode, this message will appear when you next turn the machine on. | Press  to clear the error message. | — |
| “Too many numbers” | Either the maximum number of Name Dials have been stored (25), or you tried to enter more than 40 digits for a destination fax number. | Delete some Name Dials or enter a shorter number. | P.61 |
| “No connection” | The line is busy while dialling with On-Hook, connection failed, you dialled the wrong number, or there is no answer. | If scanning from the exposure glass, press  and remove your document. When scanning from the ADF, the machine will automatically enter redial mode. To cancel redialling, remove your document from the ADF. | P.51 |
| “No loop current” | The line current was not detected-the line may not be connected. | Check the line connection. | P.8 |
| “Printer in use” | The machine is busy printing. | Wait until it has finished and try again. | — |
| “Machine busy” | The machine is busy communicating. | Wait until the current operation has finished and try again. | — |
| “Name exists” | The name you input for this Name Dial already exists. | Either use a different name, or delete the other Name Dial and try again. | P.58 |
| “Unable” | The machine is unable to print the report or list because there is a problem with the printer. | Press  ^{Help/} _{Function} to exit function mode and rectify the problem indicated on the display. | — |

Error Messages (3/3)

| Message | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|----------------------------------|--|--|----------|
| “Check fax no.” and “Press Stop” | Multiple attempts at communication with this number failed. | Press  to cancel the transmission. In some locales, if this number was stored in a Name Dial, Quick Dial, or the redial memory, the number will be erased completely from the machine memory to comply with regulations. Check the number is correct and store it again if necessary. | — |
| “No dial tone” | No dial tone was detected. | Check the line connection and if behind a PABX, the PABX settings. | P.34 |
| “Set A4 paper” | Small size paper is loaded in the upper tray (A4 size paper is required for receiving faxes) | Load A4 size paper in the upper tray and register the correct paper size setting. | p.11 |
| “Set paper size” | The actual length of the paper is less than the registered paper length. | Make sure the registered paper size matches the paper loaded and register the correct paper size setting. | p.20 |
| “Error” and “Press Stop” | An error occurred during reception. | Press  to clear the error message and inform the other party to send their fax again. | — |
| “Not registered” | The Redial memory or pressed Quick Dial key is empty. | Print the Dial List to check on which Quick Dials have numbers stored in them. | p.53, 64 |
| “Name: No entry” | No name Dial exists with the initial letter you selected. | Make sure you selected the correct search letter for this Name Dial. You also can print the Dial List to see currently stored Name Dials. | p.53, 63 |
| “Error XX” | Possible machine defect. | Turn power off and then back on again. | P.9 |
| | There is a problem with your machine. | | |

If you have a problem with the machine and you cannot resolve it by referring to the information in this chapter, please contact your service representative.

If an “Error XX” message is displayed, be sure to turn off the machine before calling.

When the Receive File Indicator is Lit

This indicator lights to inform you that a page of an incoming fax message could not be printed for some reason (e.g. paper has run out) and that page has been stored in memory.



Important!

The machine cannot receive any more messages until you solve the problem. Turning off the power will erase any message stored in memory.

To print the page out, check the display and rectify the problem (e.g. paper has run out). When the problem is resolved, the page will automatically be printed out.



Note

If there is not enough memory, all or some parts of the message will not be stored or printed.

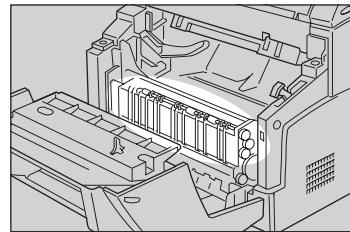
The machine will only store a page in memory if a problem occurs while reception is in process. The line will be disconnected immediately and following pages of the same message will not be received.

Clearing a Paper Misfeed

This section describes how to clear a paper misfeed when one occurs.

⚠ CAUTION

When removing misfed paper, do not touch the fusing section because it could be very hot.



Important!

Hold a misfed sheet with both hands and slowly pull it out. Do not use a tool, such as a screwdriver or tweezers as this may damage the unit.

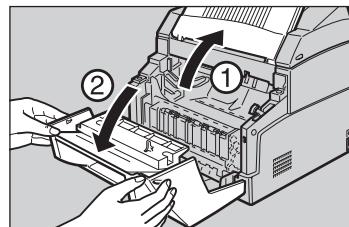


Note

If "Clear Paper" is still displayed after you clear the jam, there may be paper jammed in another part of the machine. Check all areas described in this section

Clearing a Feed in the Main Unit

- 1
 - ① Raise the document trap.
 - ② Lift up the tabs located on the sides of the machine and open the front unit.

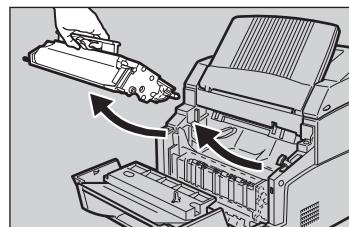


- 2 Pull out the toner cassette.



Note

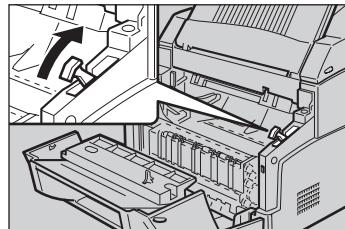
- Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.
- Keep the toner cassette horizontal to avoid spilling the toner.



3 Push back the blue paper release lever located on the right.



The lever releases pressure on the paper. If you do not push it back, you could damage the machine when removing paper.



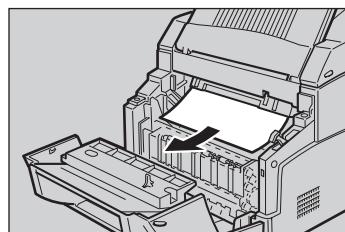
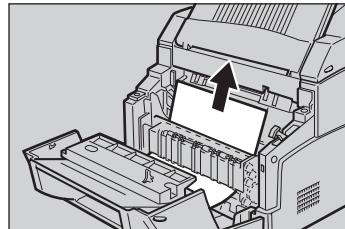
4 Pull out the misfed paper in the directions indicated by the arrows in the illustrations.



- If you are using the paper feed unit (option) and cannot clear the misfeed using this procedure.

☛ *Clearing a Misfeed in the Optional Paper Feed Unit, see page 90.*

- If toner gets on your hands, wash them immediately.

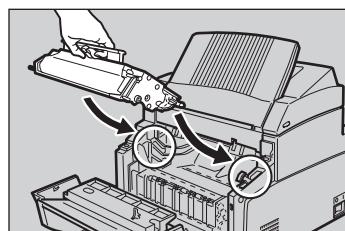


5 Install the toner cassette into the machine.



- Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.
- Keep the toner cassette horizontal to avoid spilling the toner.

☛ *Installing the toner cassette, see page 2.*



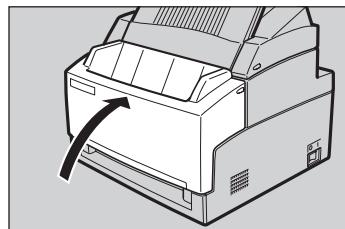
6 Close the front unit.



If "Clear Paper" is still displayed after you clear the jam, there may be paper jammed in another part of the machine. Check all areas described in this section



If a paper misfeed occurs during a copy job, be sure to specify the desired copy quantity again.

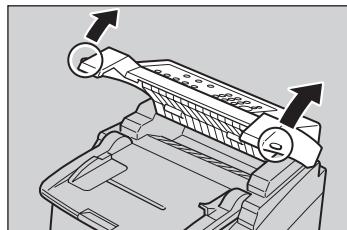


Clearing a Misfeed in the ADF

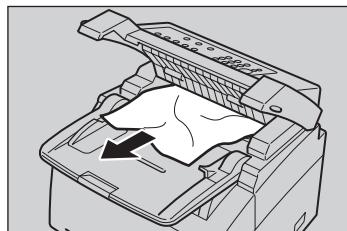
1 Open the ADF cover.

Note

Be sure to open the ADF cover before pulling out the misfed original. Failure to do so can result in damage to the original.



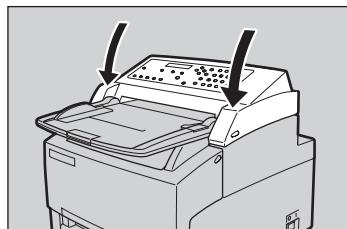
2 Pull out the misfed original.



3 Close the ADF cover, and make sure it locks securely into place.

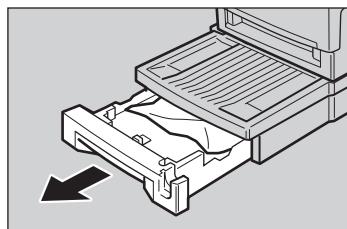
Important!

If copying was in progress, be sure to specify the desired copy quantity again.

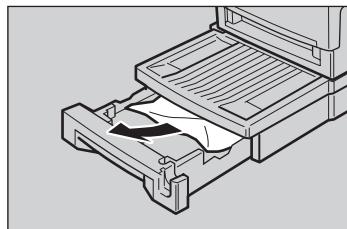


Clearing a Misfeed in the Optional Paper Feed Unit

1 Pull out the paper tray.



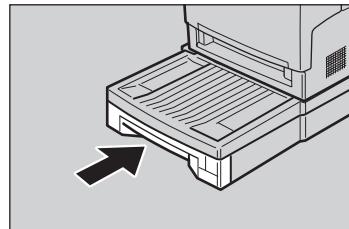
2 Pull out the misfed paper.



3 Slide the paper tray back into the paper feed unit until it locks into place.



For how to set paper in the optional paper feed unit, see page 19.



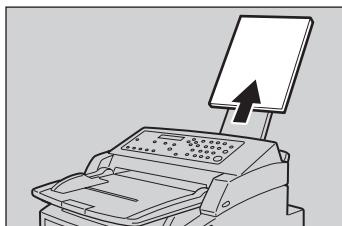
Tip

If you cannot find a remedy for unexpected printout results here, check the printer driver's online help for other useful information.

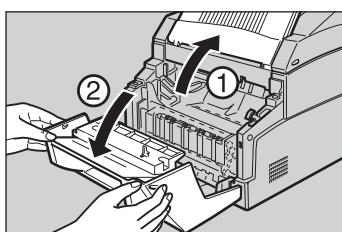
When Paper Will Not Feed

If paper has completely stopped feeding, check using the following procedure.

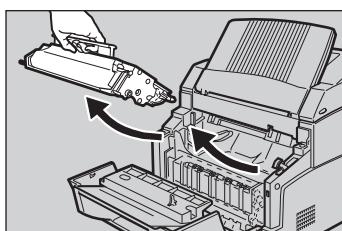
1 Remove all paper.



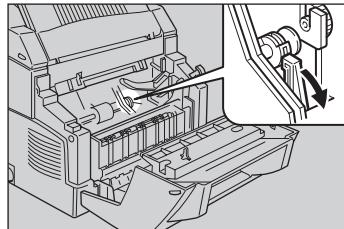
2 ① Raise the document trap.
 ② Lift up the tabs located on the sides of the machine and open the front unit.



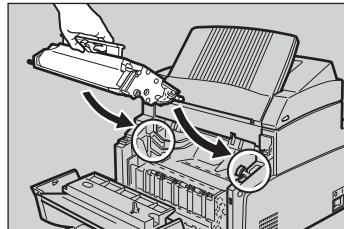
3 Pull out the toner cassette.



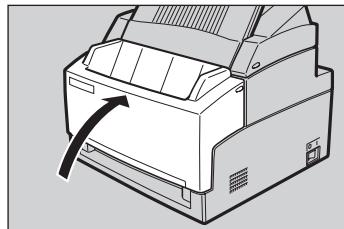
4 Pull the blue key-shaped pawl located deep inside on the right where the toner cassette was set forward.



5 Install the toner cassette into the machine.



6 Close the front unit.
When the front unit is closed, the motor will start running. When the sound of the motor stops, set paper in the original position and continue with normal operation.



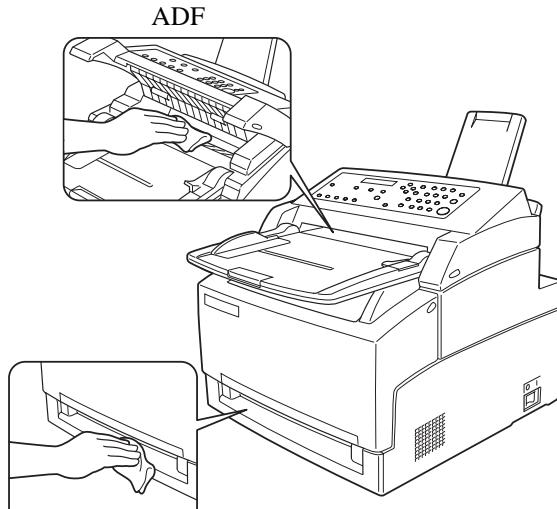
7. USER MAINTENANCE

Daily Maintenance

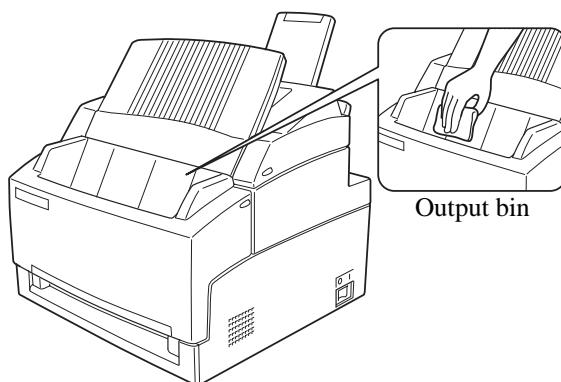
Clean with a damp cloth and wipe dry.



Turn off the machine before cleaning



Lower output slot



Output bin

Replacing the Toner Cassette And the Cleaning Pad

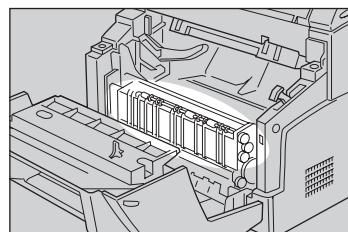
Printing on A4 size paper under the recommended temperature and humidity conditions noted in the table under “Environment” on page 1, you can expect a toner cassette to print approximately 3,000 pages when you are printing typical business letters that have text covering 5% of the total surface. The starter cassette that comes with the machine can print approximately 1,000 pages. Pages that contain graphics use more toner and shorten the life of a toner cassette.

⚠ WARNING

- 🚫 Do not incinerate used toner or toner containers. Toner dust might ignite when exposed to an open flame. Dispose of the used toner cassettes according to local regulations for plastics.
- 🚫 This machine has been tested for safety using this supplier's parts and consumables. We recommend you only use these specified supplies.

⚠ CAUTION

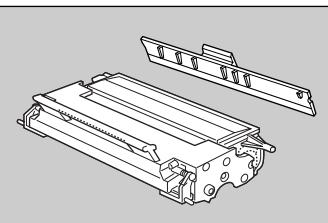
- ⚠ When replacing the toner cassette and cleaning pad, do not touch the fusing section because it could be very hot.



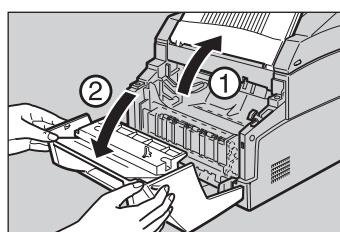
- 1 Open the box of the new toner cassette and check to make sure it contains a toner cassette and cleaning pad.

>Note

Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.



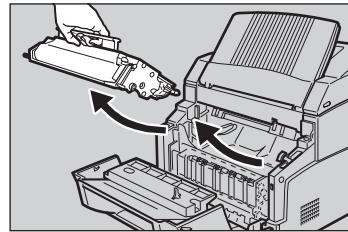
- 2 ① Raise the document trap.
② Lift up the tabs located on the sides of the machine and open the front unit.



3 Hold the toner cassette by its handle and pull it out.

 **Note**

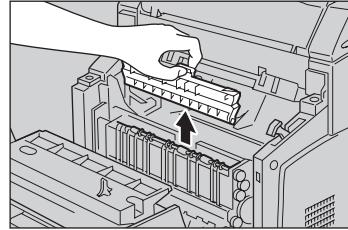
Keep the toner cassette horizontal to avoid spilling the toner.



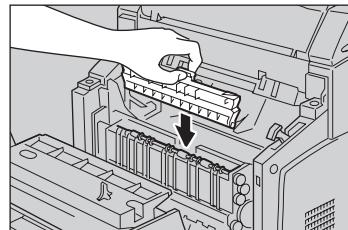
4 Remove the old cleaning pad.

 **Note**

Be sure to grasp the green handle when removing the cleaning pad.

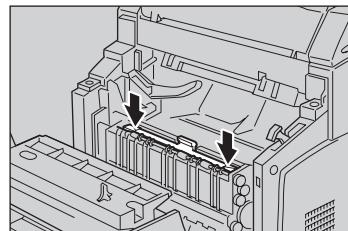


5 Grasp the new cleaning pad by the green handle and insert it into place.



6 Press down gently but firmly on both sides of the pad to make sure that it is inserted as far as it can go.

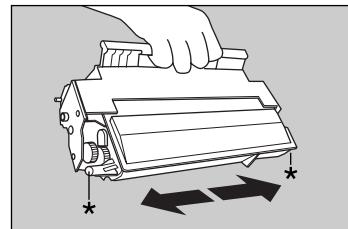
Do not forget to install the cleaning pad whenever you install a new toner cassette.



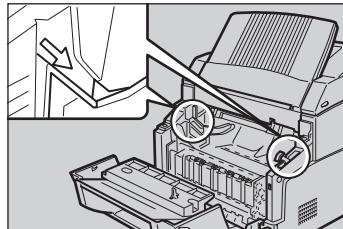
7 Prepare the new toner cassette. Holding the toner cassette by its handle, gently shake it side to side 5 or 6 times to evenly distribute the toner inside.

 **Note**

Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.



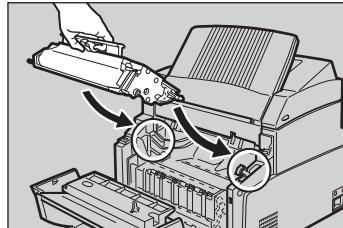
8 Look inside the machine and note the locations of the arrows that indicate the toner cassette guides on either side.



9 Make sure the plastic pins (marked with “*” in the illustration next to step above) on either side of the toner cassette slide along the guides inside the machine.



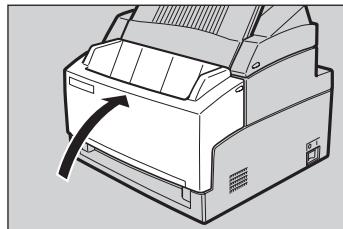
Note
Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.



10 To close the front unit, press down firmly but gently on both sides of it until the top unit closes and clicks securely into place.



Note
Background gray cast is sometimes evident just after installing a new toner cassette.



Storage

Paper

Paper should always be stored properly. Improperly stored paper might result in poor image reproduction, creased copies, or paper misfeeds. Generally, avoid paper curling and absorption of moisture.

- Avoid storing paper in humid areas. In high-temperature and high-humidity, or low-temperature and low-humidity conditions, store paper in a vinyl bag.
- Do not store paper where it will be exposed to heat.
- Store on a flat surface.
- Use older stock first.
- Do not lay heavy objects on paper.
- Keep open reams of paper in the package, and store as you would unopened paper.

Toner Cassette

- Keep the toner cassette inside the packaging that it comes packed in whenever it is removed from the machine.
- Store horizontally in a cool, dark place.
- Never store a toner cassette where it will be exposed to heat.
- Do not lay heavy objects on the toner cassette.

CAUTION

Keep toner cassettes out of children's reach.

8. TECHNICAL REFERENCE

Printing the Help List

Print this list to get a quick guide to frequently used fax features.

- 1 While the machine is not performing any other operation, press  ^{Help/} _{Function}.

Prt Help List 

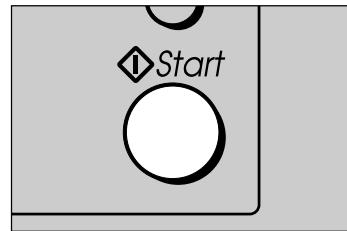
- 2 Press .

Press Start

- 3 Press  to print the Help List.



Note
Print on A4, Letter, or Legal paper.



Customising Default Settings with the User Parameters

Changing the User Parameters

The User Parameters allow you to customise various machine settings and features to suit your requirements.

They are four User Parameter Switches numbered 00 to 03. Each switch has 8 adjustable “bits” which can set to either 0 or 1.

7654 3210 ← bit number
 Switch number → 00: 0000 1011 ← bit values

For the meaning of each bit and how changing them affects the machine, see page xx.

Note

Take care when changing the switch values. Only change the bits whose meanings are described in this manual.

Note

Do not turn off the power while adjusting the User Parameter bit switches.

The following procedure describes how to change the User Parameters.

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press **Zoom**  ►.

Function No.: __

3 Press  .

52 User Param. °_K

4 Press .

00 :1000 1011 °_K

5 Press  **Zoom** or **Zoom**  ► until the switch you wish to edit appears.

02 :1110 0000 °_K

E.g. press **Zoom**  twice to show switch 02.

6 To toggle the value of a single bit, press the number on the numeric keypad that corresponds to the number of the bit you wish to change.

E.g. press 3^{DEF} to change bit 3.

02 :1110 1000 °K

7 Press **OK** . The display opposite will flash briefly on the display and then the function menu will reappear.



Do not turn off the machine while “Please wait” or “Registered” is shown on the operation panel.

Please wait

8 Do one of the following:

- Enter another function number.
- Press Help/Function to return to standby mode.

5 Select °K

User Parameter Switch Summary

The following tables summarize the User Parameter bit switches and their meanings.

SWITCH 00 (1/2)

| Bit | Explanation | Available Settings | Default | Notes |
|-----|--|------------------------------------|------------|---|
| 7 | Width scanned when faxing a document | 0: 210 mm (A4) 1: 216mm (LT/LG) | 210mm (A4) | This setting takes effect from the next power on. |
| 6 | Display “Original left on glass.” Warning when scanning from the ADF and an original is left on the exposure glass | 0: Yes 1: No | Yes | |
| 5 | Maximum length of document when scanning from the ADF | 0: 400mm 1: 1200mm | 400mm | This setting takes effect from the next power on. |
| 4 | Automatically print the Transmission Result Report after every successful transmission | 0: No 1: Yes | No | |

SWITCH 00 (2/2)

| Bit | Explanation | Available Settings | Default | Notes |
|-----|--|--------------------|---------|---|
| 3 | Automatically print the Journal after every 35 communications | 0: No 1: Yes | Yes | |
| 2 | Print the Unauthorized Call Report when an unregistered caller tries to send you a fax (when Authorized Reception is switched on) | 0: No 1: Yes | No | |
| 1 | Do not change this setting | | | |
| 0 | Automatically reduce received images to fit page | 0: No 1: Yes | Yes* | * This function turned off by default in some locales. If you turn this function off, some parts of the printed image may be lost. |

SWITCH 01

| Bit | Explanation | Available Settings | Default | Notes |
|-------|---|--|------------|--|
| 7 | Copy/Fax Operation mode home position. | 0: Fax 1: Copy | Copy | |
| 6 | Do not change these settings | | | |
| 5 | | | | |
| 4 | Reset the image density and resolution to the values below after sending a fax, switching to fax operation mode or on power up. | 0: No 1: Yes | Yes | These settings have no affect on the copy feature. |
| 3 & 2 | Image density home position when bit 4 above is 1. | b3 b2 0 0: Auto 0 1: Darker 1 0: Lighter | Auto | |
| 1 & 0 | Resolution home position when bit 4 above is 1. | b1 b0 0 0: Text (STD) 0 1: Text (Fine) 1 0: Photo 1 1 1: Photo 2 | Text (STD) | |

SWITCH 02

| Bit | Explanation | Available Settings | Default | Notes |
|-----|--|------------------------|---------|-------|
| 7 | Do not change these settings | | | |
| 6 | | | | |
| 5 | | | | |
| 4 | | | | |
| 3 | PCL Resolution Set the printer to 300 dpi if the designated output is not obtained when printing using a DOS application compatible with the 300 dpi PCL printer. | 0: 600dpi 1: 300dpi | 600dpi | |
| 2 | Toner Saving mode When Toner Saving is turned on, the machine prints using less toner. Use this mode if you wish to save on toner and do not mind lighter prints. | 0: Off 1: On | Off | |
| 1 | Do not change these settings | | | |
| 0 | | | | |

SWITCH 03

| Bit | Explanation | Available Settings | Default | Notes |
|-----|------------------------------|--------------------|---------|-------|
| 7 | Do not change these settings | | | |
| 6 | | | | |
| 5 | | | | |
| 4 | | | | |
| 3 | | | | |
| 2 | | | | |
| 1 | | | | |
| 0 | | | | |

Function List

| Function Number | Function Name | Page Reference |
|-----------------|--|----------------|
| 11 | Date/Time | 38 |
| 12 | Dial Mode | 34 |
| 13 | Quick Dial/Print Dial List | 53 |
| 14 | Name Dial | 58 |
| 15 | Language | 104 |
| 16 | Own name/TTI | 33 |
| 17 | Own Fax No. | 36 |
| 21 | Authorized Reception | 47 |
| 22 | Slow (4800bps) | 66 |
| 31 | Adjust Volume | 65 |
| 32 | Remote Change | 51 |
| 41 | Journal | 62 |
| 42 | Dial List | 63 |
| 51 | Page Header Summer Time RDS Mode | 67 39 67 |
| 52 | User Parameters | 99 |
| 61 | Tray Paper Size | 11 |

Selecting the Language

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List 

2 Press   .

15 Language 

3 Press  and press  or  until the desired language appears.

4 Press .

Registered



Note

- Do not turn off the machine while “Registered” is displayed.
- If you do not press , the setting is not changed.

1 Set up 

5 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> to return to the standby display.

Economy Mode

Economy mode is a power saving feature and is turned on by default. If no operation is performed for 5 minutes, the display becomes blank and all the indicators go out. If no operation is performed in the next 10 minutes or 235 minutes (according to the setting), the heater turns off.

| Economy mode | Operation panel turns off after | Heater turns off after |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|--|
| ON (default setting) | 5 minutes | 15 minutes (including time when operation panel is off) |
| OFF | 5 minutes | 240 minutes (including time when operation panel is off) |

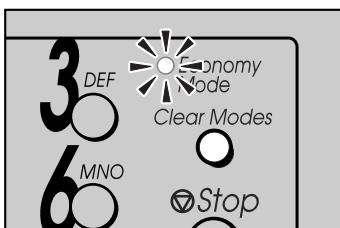
Note

- In Economy Mode, the heater turns back on in the following cases.
 - ◆ When any key on the operation panel is pressed
 - ◆ When paper is set in or removed from the upper paper tray
 - ◆ When the tray of the paper feed unit (option) is pulled out or pushed back into the machine
 - ◆ When the front unit is opened.
 - ◆ When an original is set in or removed from the ADF.
 - ◆ On initiation of fax operations, such as fax reception, lifting the headset etc.
 - ◆ On initiation of PC printing.
- When a key on the operation panel is pressed to turn the heater on, the key does not perform its normal function.
- After the heater is turned back on, the previous %, quantity, Sort settings, entered fax number, original type and various other settings are cleared.

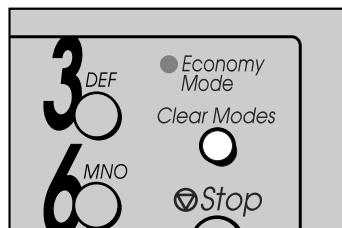
Changing the Economy Mode

Hold down the Clear modes key for approximately 1 second until the Economy mode indicator lights or goes out, as required.

Economy Mode ON



Economy Mode OFF



9. SPECIFICATIONS

General Specifications

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|-------|--------------------|-------|-------------------|-------|--------------------|------|-------------------|------|-------------------------|------|---------------------------|-------|--------------|------|--|
| Paper Capacity Upper tray plain paper (80 g/m ² : 20 lb.) 100 sheets Optional paper unit plain paper (80 g/m ² : 20 lb.) 250 sheets ADF (Auto Document Feeder) Capacity plain paper: A4, IT·LG (80 g/m ² : 20 lb) 10 sheets Output tray plain paper (80 g/m ² : 20 lb.) 50 sheets | Machine Life 30,000 sheets/5 years Printer Duty 6,000 sheets/1 month Scanner Duty 2,000 sheets/1 month | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Memory 4 MB (Expandable to 8 MB, 16MB or 32MB) EDO SIMM, 60 ns, 72 pin | Paper Sizes Plain paper A4 = 210 mm × 297 mm A5 = 148 mm × 210 mm Letter (IT) = 8 1/2" × 11" Legal (LG) = 8 1/2" × 14" Half Letter = 5 1/2" × 8 1/2" F4 = 8 1/4" × 13" | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Dimensions 297mm × 352mm × 576mm (H×W×D) 11.70" × 13.87" × 22.69" (H×W×D) | Envelopes C5 = 162 mm × 229 mm C6 = 114 mm × 162 mm DL = 110 mm × 220 mm | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Weight 15.5 kg (34.18 lb) | Other Transparencies Label paper | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Power Supply AC 220 to 240 V 50/60 Hz | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Power Consumption <table><tr><td>Max</td><td>640 W</td></tr><tr><td>Printing (Average)</td><td>230 W</td></tr><tr><td>Copying (Average)</td><td>250 W</td></tr><tr><td>Stand-by (Average)</td><td>75 W</td></tr><tr><td>PC-Scan (Average)</td><td>75 W</td></tr><tr><td>Sending Faxes (Average)</td><td>75 W</td></tr><tr><td>Receiving Faxes (Average)</td><td>230 W</td></tr><tr><td>Economy Mode</td><td>15 W</td></tr></table> | Max | 640 W | Printing (Average) | 230 W | Copying (Average) | 250 W | Stand-by (Average) | 75 W | PC-Scan (Average) | 75 W | Sending Faxes (Average) | 75 W | Receiving Faxes (Average) | 230 W | Economy Mode | 15 W | |
| Max | 640 W | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Printing (Average) | 230 W | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Copying (Average) | 250 W | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Stand-by (Average) | 75 W | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| PC-Scan (Average) | 75 W | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Sending Faxes (Average) | 75 W | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Receiving Faxes (Average) | 230 W | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Economy Mode | 15 W | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Operating Environment Temperature /Humidity 10°C (50°F) to 35°C (95°F) 15% to 80% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Printing Specifications

| | |
|---|---|
| Printer Language PCL 5e compatible | Resident Font |
| Print Resolution 600 dpi × 600 dpi 1200 dpi × 600 dpi (enhanced) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dutch 801 SWC Dutch 801 Italic SWC Dutch 801 Bold SWC Dutch 801 Bold Italic SWC Swiss 742 SWC Swiss 742 Italic SWC Swiss 742 Bold SWC Swiss 742 Bold Italic SWC Swiss 742 Condensed SWC Swiss 742 Condensed Italic SWC Swiss 742 Condensed Bold SWC Swiss 742 Condensed Bold Italic SWC Incised 901 SWC Incised 901 Italic SWC Incised 901 Bold SWC Fixed Pitch 810 Courier Roman SWC Fixed Pitch 810 Courier Bold SWC Fixed Pitch 810 Courier Italic SWC Fixed Pitch 810 Courier Bold Italic SWC Fixed Pitch 850 Letter Gothic 12 pitch/text SWC Fixed Pitch 850 Letter Gothic Bold 12 pitch/text SWC Fixed Pitch 850 Letter Gothic Italic 12 pitch/text SWC Flareserif 821 SWC Flareserif 821 Extra Bold SWC Ribbon 131 SWC Wingbats SWM |
| Print Speed 6 ppm (pages per minute) | |
| Paper/Media Types Plain paper Envelopes Transparencies Label paper | |
| Paper Weight 60 to 90 g/m ² (16 to 24 lb) | |
| Interface IEEE 1284 | |

Scanner Specifications

| | |
|--|--|
| Configuration Flatbed / ADF | Grey scale 256 levels (8-bit) |
| Document Size LG, IT, HIT, A4, A5, B5 | Interface IEEE 1284 ECP mode |
| Optical Resolution 300dpi | Compatibility TWAIN |
| Scanning Resolution 1bit 100 × 100, 150 × 150, 200 × 200, 300 × 300, 400 × 400, 600 × 600 dpi | ADF Up to 10 pages of 80g/m ² (20lb), Plain paper |
| 8bit 300 × 300 dpi | Maximum scanning size 212 × 351.6 mm |
| | OS Windows 95/98 only |

Copying Specifications

| | |
|---|--|
| Copy Speed 6 cpm (copies per minute) | Paper Weight 60 to 90 g/m ² (16 to 24 lb) |
| Warm-up Time 30 seconds or less | Original Types Exposure glass Sheet/Book |
| First copy 17 seconds or less | ADF Up to 10 pages of 80g /m ² (20lb), Plain paper |
| Multiple Copies Up to 99 copies | Maximum Original Size Legal(LG) = 8 1/2 " × 14" |
| Copy Reduction and Enlargement 50%, 71%, 82%, 87%, 93%, 115%, 122%, 141%, 200% | Copy Resolution 600 dpi × 600 dpi |
| Paper/Media Types Plain paper Envelopes Transparencies Label paper | |

Fax Specifications

| | |
|--|---|
| Modem Speed 14400 bps | Fax Resolution Text (Standard) :203 × 98dpi Text Fine (Detail) :203 × 196dpi |
| Protocol ITU Group 3 | Quick Dials 5 |
| Compression Method MH/MR/MMR | Name Dials 25 |

INDEX**1**

1 to 1 Copy 69

A

Additional printer 16

Auto image density 76

Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) x

Setting an original 69

Authorized reception 47

Automatic redial 43

B

Busy indicator xiii

C

Cancelling transmission of a fax 44

Changing On/Off settings 67

Check display indicator xiii

Clearing a paper misfeed 88

Clear key xii

Cleaning pad 97

Computer port xi

Connecting a second printer

(Additional Printer) 16

Connecting to a computer 6

Connector 6

Copy operation 29, 69

Corner guides 17, 19

D

Daily maintenance 93

Date and time 38

Density key xiii

Dial mode 34

Display xii

Document guides x

Document output tray xi

Installing 4

E

Economy mode 105

Economy mode/Clear modes key xii

Economy mode indicator xii

Enlarge key xiii

Enlargement 74

Entering numbers 30

Entering pauses 42

Entering tones 42

Envelopes 15

Error messages 84

Error report 64

Exposure glass x

F

Fax/Copy key xii

Fax mode 46

Fax operation 29

Front guide 17, 19

H

Help list 98

Help/Function xii

I

Image density 77

Installing

Document output tray 5

Software drivers 25

Toner cassette 2

Upper paper tray 4

L

Label paper 15

Language 104

Limit mark 11, 17, 19

Lines-slow (4800 bps) 66

Loading Paper 11

| | |
|--------------------------|-------------|
| Loading | |
| Plain paper | 11 |
| Small size paper | 13 |
| Other media | 15 |
| Location | 1 |
| M | |
| Metal plate | 17, 19 |
| Multiple copies | 72 |
| N | |
| Name key | xiv |
| Name Dials | |
| Deleting Name Dial | 60 |
| Dialling Name Dial | 61 |
| Storing Name Dial | 58 |
| Numeri keypad | xii |
| O | |
| OK key | xiii |
| On hook | 51 |
| On hook dial key | xiv |
| Operation Panel | x, xii, xiv |
| Original | |
| Setting (ADF) | 40, 69 |
| Requirements (ADF) | 78 |
| Original guide | x |
| Original type select key | xiii |
| Output tray | x |
| Output tray extension | x, 6 |
| P | |
| Page header | 67 |
| Paper and other media | 10 |
| Paper select key | xiii |
| paper size | |
| Changing | 20 |
| Specifying (upper) | 13, 15 |
| Specifying (lower) | 19 |
| Paper size indicator | 17, 19 |
| Paper feed unit | 17 |
| Pause/Redial key | xiv |
| PC Interface indicator | xiii |
| Photo1 | 76 |
| Photo2 | 76 |
| Platen cover | x |
| Power socket | x |
| Power switch | x |
| Printer driver | |
| Windows 95/98 | 25 |
| Windows 3.1 | 25 |
| Printer driver contents | 26 |
| Printing the dial list | 63 |
| Printing the journal | 62 |
| Power failure report | 64 |
| Q | |
| Quick Dials | |
| Clearing Quick Dial | 57 |
| Editing Quick Dial | 55 |
| Storing Quick Dial | 54 |
| Quick Dial key | xiv |
| R | |
| Receive file indicator | xiv |
| Receiving faxes | 45 |
| Reception mode key | xiv |
| Redialling a number | 43 |
| Reduce key | xiii |
| Reduction | 73 |
| Remote change | 51 |
| Replacing | |
| Toner cassette | 97 |
| Cleaning pad | 97 |
| Resolution/Photo setting | 76 |
| RDS | 67 |

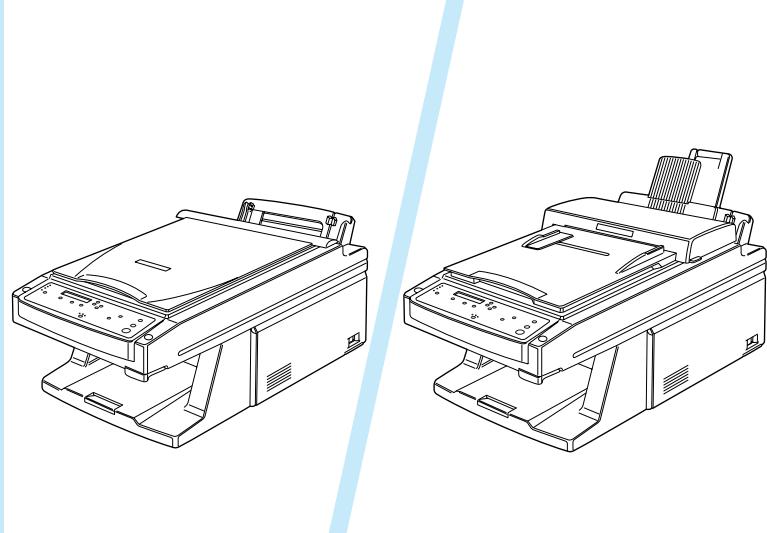
| | |
|---|----------|
| S | |
| Safety information | i |
| Scanner lock | x |
| Unlocking | 4 |
| Second (Additional) printer | xi |
| Connecting | 16 |
| Using | 28 |
| Second printer key | xv |
| Sending faxes | 40 |
| Setting up | |
| Connecting to the telephone line | 32 |
| Software drivers | 25 |
| Side guide | 17, 20 |
| SIMM cover | x |
| SIMM | 23 |
| Small size paper feed access panel | x |
| Small size paper | 13 |
| Sort | 78 |
| Sort/Memory key | xiii |
| Sounds | 65 |
| Specifications | 106 |
| Start key | xii |
| Stop key | xii |
| Storing your own fax number | 36 |
| Storage | 97 |
| Summer time | 39 |
| T | |
| TEL/LINE | xi, 32 |
| Tel mode | 45 |
| Telephone call | 50 |
| Text fine | 76 |
| Toner cassette | |
| Installing | 2 |
| Replacing | 94 |
| Top release lever | x |
| Top unit | x |
| Transmission result report | 63 |
| U | |
| Unauthorized call report | 64 |
| Upgrading memory | 23 |
| Upper paper tray | x, 4, 11 |
| Upper try extension | xi |
| User parameter | 100 |
| Using the second (Additional) printer | 28 |
| Z | |
| Zoom key | xiii |
| Zoom (In 1% increments) | 75 |



The logo for the RICOH BIZworks 406/406DF. It features the word 'RICOH' in a bold, black, sans-serif font at the top left. To its right is a stylized graphic of the word 'BIZ' in black, with a sharp, diagonal white wedge pointing from the top of the 'B' towards the bottom of the 'Z'. To the right of this graphic is the word 'works' in a large, white, sans-serif font. Below 'works' is the model number '406/406DF' in a large, bold, black, sans-serif font. A small 'TM' symbol is located at the top right of the 'works' text.

Operation Manual

Read this manual carefully before you use this product and keep it handy for future reference. For safety, please follow the instructions in this manual.



Introduction

This manual contains detailed instructions on the operation and maintenance of this machine. To get maximum versatility from this machine, all operators should carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual. Please keep this manual in a handy place near the machine.

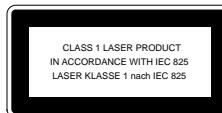
Please read the safety information on pages i - iii of this manual. It contains Important Information related to user safety and preventing equipment problems.

Operator Safety:

This machine is considered a class 1 laser device, safe for office/ EDP use. The machine contains a 5-milliwat, 765 - 805 nanometer wavelength, GaAlAs laser diodes. Direct (or indirect reflected) eye contact with the laser beam might cause serious eye damage. Safety precautions and interlock mechanisms have been designed to prevent any possible laser beam exposure to the operator.

The following label is attached on the machine.

This label can be found when opening the bypass tray.



Laser Safety:

The optical housing unit can only be repaired in a factory or at a location with the requisite equipment. The laser subsystem is replaceable in the field by a qualified Customer Engineer. The laser chassis is not repairable in the field. Customer engineers are therefore directed to return all chassis and laser subsystems to the factory or service depot when replacement of the optical subsystem is required.

Notes:

- Model names for the machines do not appear in the following pages. Check the type of your machine before reading this manual.

Type 1 Bizworks 406

Type 2 Bizworks 406DF

- Some illustrations may be slightly different from your machine.
- Certain types may not be available in some countries. For details, contact your local dealer.

Two kinds of size notation are employed in this manual. With this machine refer to the metric version.

For good print quality, Ricoh recommends that you use genuine Ricoh toner.

Ricoh shall not be responsible for any damage or expense that may result from the use of parts other than genuine Ricoh parts in your Ricoh office product.

Power Source: 220 ~ 240 V, 50/60 Hz, 2.2 A

Please make sure to connect the power cord to a power source as above. For details about power connection, refer to page 8.

Trademarks

Microsoft, Windows, and MS-DOS are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights in those marks.



Declaration of Conformity

"The Product complies with the requirements of the EMC Directive 89/336/EEC and the Low Voltage Directive 73/23/EEC."

In accordance with ISO Standard 7001, this machine uses the following symbols for the main switch:

- means POWER ON.
- means POWER OFF.

Safety Information

When using your machine, the following safety precautions should always be followed.

Types of warnings used in this manual

WARNING

Ignoring this warning could cause serious injury or even death.

CAUTION

Ignoring this caution could cause injury or damage to property.

Symbol examples

 The  symbol means a situation that requires you take care.

 The  symbol means you MUST NOT carry out this operation. This example means “Do not take apart.”

 The  symbol means you MUST perform this operation. This example means “You must remove the wall plug.”

⚠️ **WARNING:**

| | |
|---|---|
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Use of controls or adjustment or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Only connect the machine to the power source described on the inside of the front cover.Avoid multi-wiring.Do not damage, break or make any modifications to the power cord. Do not place heavy objects on it, pull it hard or bend it more than necessary. These actions could cause an electric shock or fire.Do not plug or unplug the power cord with your hands wet. Otherwise, an electric shock might occur. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Make sure the wall outlet is near the machine and freely accessible so that in event of an emergency it can be unplugged easily. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Do not remove any covers or screws other than those specified in this manual. Some parts of the machine are at a high voltage and could give you an electric shock. Also, reflected eye contact with the leaser beam may cause serious eye damage. When the machine needs to be checked, adjusted, or repaired, contact your service representative.Do not take apart or attempt any modifications to this machine. There is a risk of fire, electric shock, explosion or loss of sight. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">If the machine looks damaged or breaks down, smoke is coming out, there is a strange smell or anything looks unusual, immediately turn off the power switch then unplug the power cord from the wall. Do not continue using the machine in this condition. Contact your service representative.If metal, liquid or foreign matter falls into the machine, turn off the power switch, and unplug the power cord. Contact your service representative. Do not keep using the machine with a fault or defect. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Do not put any metal objects or containers holding water (e.g. vases, flower-pots, glasses) on the machine. If the contents fall inside the machine, a fire or electric shock could occur. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Do not incinerate used toner or toner cassettes. Toner dust might ignite when exposed to an open flame. Dispose of the used toner cassettes according to local regulations for plastics. |

⚠ CAUTION:

| | |
|--|--|
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Keep the machine away from humidity and dust. A fire or an electric shock might occur.• Do not place the machine on an unstable or tilted surface. If it topples over, it could cause injury. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• When you move the machine, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet to avoid fire or electric shock.• When the machine is not be used for a long time, unplug the power cord. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• When you pull out the plug from the socket, grip the plug to avoid damaging the cord and causing fire or electric shock. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If you use the machine in a confined space, make sure there is a continuous air turnover. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Do not reuse stapled paper. Do not use aluminium foil, paper containing carbon or any other conductive paper. Otherwise, a fire might occur. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• When removing misfed paper, or replacing the toner cassette and the cleaning pad, do not touch the fusing section because it could be very hot. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• This machine has been tested for safety using this supplier's parts and consumables. We recommend you only use these specified supplies. |

Energy Star program



As an Energy Star partner, we have determined that this machine model meets the Energy Star Guidelines for energy efficiency.

The Energy Star Guidelines intend to establish an international energy- saving system for developing and introducing energy-efficient office equipment to deal with environmental issues, such as global warming.

This product was designed to reduce the environmental impact associated with printing equipment by means of energy-saving features such as Low Power mode.

- **Low Power Mode**

This machine automatically lowers its power consumption 15 minutes after the last printing job has been completed. To exit Low Power mode, press any key on the operation panel.

The machine returns to the ready condition in about 22 seconds. To change the low Power delay, see page 58.

Specification

| Type 1, 2 | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------|
| Low Power Mode (Economy Mode) | Power consumption |
| | Default delay |
| | Recovery time |

Recycled paper

Please contact your sales or service representative for recommended recycled paper types that may be used in this machine.

Contents

| | |
|---------------------------|------|
| Safety Information | i |
| Energy Star program | iv |
| General Description | viii |
| Operation Panel | x |

1. SETTING UP

| | |
|---|---|
| Package Contents | 1 |
| Location | 1 |
| Installing the Starter Toner Cassette | 2 |
| Unlocking the Scanner Lock | 3 |
| Installing the Upper Paper Tray | 4 |
| Other Settings for Type 2 | 5 |
| To remove the protective sheet | 5 |
| To install the document output tray | 6 |
| Connecting to a computer | 7 |
| Turning On the Machine | 8 |

2. GETTING ACQUAINTED

| | |
|--|----|
| Paper and Other Media | 9 |
| Loading Paper | 10 |
| To load plain paper into the upper paper tray | 10 |
| To load small size paper | 12 |
| Loading Other Media | 14 |
| To load envelopes | 14 |
| To load transparencies | 14 |
| To load label paper | 14 |
| Connecting a Second Printer (Additional Printer) | 15 |
| To connect to a second printer | 15 |
| Installing the Paper Feed Unit (Option) | 16 |
| Paper Feed Unit Part Names | 16 |
| To install the Paper Feed Unit | 16 |
| To load paper into the paper feed unit | 18 |
| To change the paper size | 19 |
| To specify the paper size | 19 |
| To install the paper size indicator | 20 |
| To select the paper source | 20 |
| Upgrading Memory | 21 |

3. PRINTING

| | |
|---|----|
| Setting Up For Printing | 23 |
| To install the printer driver under Windows® 95 | 23 |
| To install the printer driver under Windows® 3.1x | 24 |
| New Hardware Found Window | 24 |
| Features You Can Access From the Printer Driver | 25 |
| Using the Second Printer (Additional Printer) | 26 |
| To print to the second printer | 26 |

4. COPYING

| | |
|--|----|
| Making a Copy | 27 |
| Making Multiple Copies | 28 |
| Making a Book Copy | 29 |
| Reduction and Enlargement | 30 |
| To set the reduction factor | 30 |
| To set the enlargement factor | 31 |
| Zoom (In 1% Increments) | 32 |
| To use zoom | 32 |
| Adjusting Copy Image | 33 |
| To select the resolution/photo setting | 33 |
| To adjust the image density | 34 |
| Setting an Original onto the ADF (Type 2 only) | 35 |
| Sorting Output (Type 2 only) | 37 |
| To turn sorting on and off | 37 |

5. TROUBLESHOOTING

| | |
|---|----|
| General problems (printing and copying) | 39 |
| Clearing a Paper Misfeed | 43 |
| Paper feed unit | 47 |

6. USER MAINTENANCE

| | |
|---|----|
| Daily Maintenance | 49 |
| Replacing the Toner Cassette And the Cleaning Pad | 50 |
| Storage | 53 |
| Paper | 53 |
| Toner Cassette | 53 |

7. TECHNICAL REFERENCE

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----|
| Printing the Help List | 54 |
| Selecting the Language | 55 |
| Selecting 300 dpi or 600 dpi..... | 56 |
| Economy Mode | 58 |
| Changing the Economy Mode | 58 |
| Selecting Toner Save Mode | 59 |

8. SPECIFICATIONS 60

| | |
|--------------------|----|
| Index | 63 |
|--------------------|----|

General Description

Type 1

The following describes the Type 1 machine. This information also applies to the Type 2 machine, except where specifically noted in the next page.

Platen cover

Lift this cover to access the exposure glass when you want to place an original on it for copying.

Exposure glass

Place originals on this glass face down for copying.

Operation panel

Key panel for controlling the machine.

Extend tray

Pull out to support paper output from the machine.

Output tray

Copy and printer output is automatically stacked up to 50 sheets of plain paper on this tray.

Upper paper tray
Holds up to 100 sheets of plain paper for copying and printing.

Top unit

Power switch

Turns the machine on and off.

Top release lever

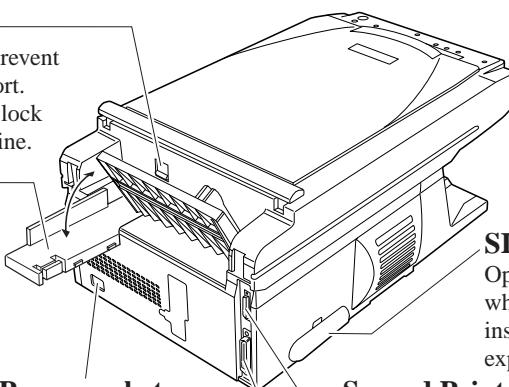
Pull to release the top unit and open it.

Scanner lock

Locks the scanner to prevent damage during transport. Be sure to release this lock before using the machine.

Small size paper feed access panel

This panel can be lowered to provide easier handling when printing on or copying to small size paper.



SIMM cover

Open this cover when you want to install a SIMM and expand memory.

Second Printer (Additional Printer) port

You can connect a second printer to this port.

Computer port

Connect your computer here.

Type 2

The following describes the Type 2 machine.

Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)

Holds up to 10 sheets of paper for automatic feeding. Place originals face down.

Document guides

Slide the left guide to fit the size of the paper you are feeding.

Exposure glass

Operation Panel

Extend tray

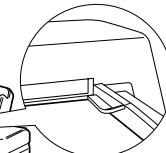
Top release lever

Output tray

Upper paper tray

Original Guide

Guides the original correctly into the machine. Set the original so it is under this guide.



Top unit

Power switch

Platen cover

Lift this cover to access the exposure glass when you want to scan a page from a book, magazine, or any other original that cannot be fed using the ADF.

Scanner lock

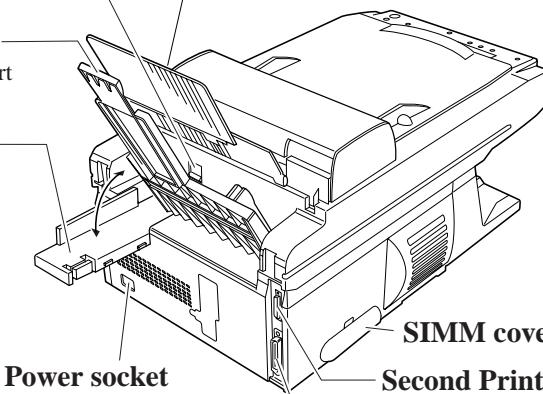
Extend tray

Extend to support originals.

Small size paper feed access panel

Document output tray

Originals that pass through the machine's scanner mechanism during copying operations are automatically stacked on this tray.

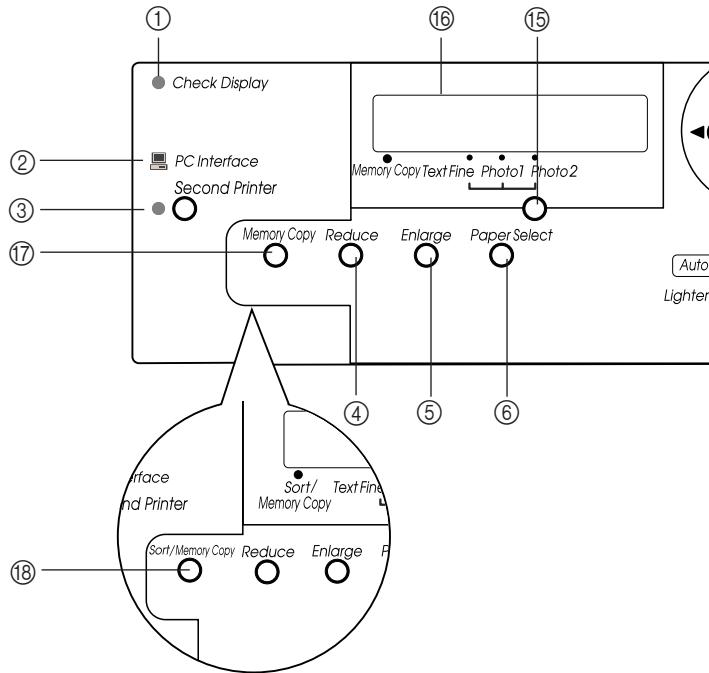


SIMM cover

Second Printer (Additional Printer) port

Computer port

Operation Panel



① Check Display

This indicator lights up to alert you to read the message on the display.

② PC Interface

This indicator lights while the machine is receiving data from a connected computer.

③ Second Printer

Pressing this key switches between printing on the machine (Second Printer indicator off) and printing on a second printer connected to the machine (Second Printer indicator on).

④ Reduce

Press this key to reduce an image during copying. Available reduction ratios are: 50%, 71%, 82%, 87% and 93%.

⑤ Enlarge

Press this key to enlarge an image during copying. Available enlargement ratios are: 115%, 122%, 141% and 200%.

⑥ Paper Select

Press this key to specify the paper size. When the paper feed unit (option) is installed, press this key to switch between paper sources.

⑦ Density key

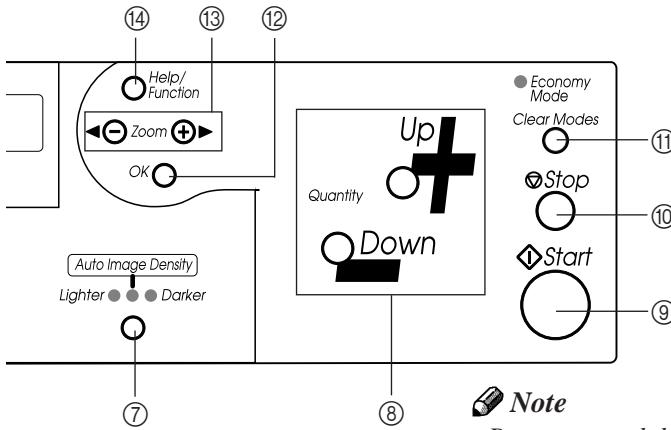
Press this key to select the image density settings: Darker, Auto, Lighter.

⑧ Quantity keys

Press these keys to specify the number of copies or to change numeric values on the display.

⑨ Start

Press this key to start an operation.



 **Note**

Be sure to peel the protective sheet from the operation panel.

⑩ Stop

Press this key to interrupt the current ongoing procedure and return to the stand by state. This key operates as a kind of escape key.

Holding down this key for 3 seconds resets the printer mode.

**⑪ Economy Mode/
Clear Modes key**

Pressing this key cancels the ongoing operation and clears the settings of the current mode to their initial defaults.

Holding down this key for about one second switches the Economy Mode on and off.

Refer to "Economy Mode" on page 58.

⑫ OK

Press this key to execute an operation that is prompted by a message on the display.

⑬ Zoom

Press these keys to tune the preset reduction and enlargement factors to the exact value you want.

⑭ Help/Function

Press this key and then input a function number to perform various settings and list printing functions.

⑮ Copy Mode key

Press this key to specify the Copy Mode. A pointer (▼) appears on the display to indicate the current Text Fine/Photo1/Photo2 setting.

⑯ Display

Displays messages and prompts during operation.

⑰ Memory Copy (Type 1 only)

Press this key to select Memory Copy. (Your original will be scanned only once when making multiple copies.)

**⑱ Sort/Memory Copy
(Type 2 only)**

Press this key to turn Sorting and Memory Copy on and off. Sorting is activated when the pointer is visible on the display above Sort/Memory Copy.

1. SETTING UP

Package Contents

Make sure that all of the items shown in the Package Contents sheet that comes with the machine are included.

⚠ WARNING

❗ Make sure the wall outlet is near the machine and freely accessible so that in event of an emergency it can be unplugged easily.

🚫 Do not put any metal objects or containers holding water (e.g. vases, flowerpots, glasses) on the machine. If the contents fall inside the machine, a fire or electric shock could occur.

⚠ CAUTION

🚫 Keep the machine away from humidity and dust. A fire or an electric shock might occur.

🚫 Do not place the machine on an unstable or tilted surface. If it topples over, it could cause injury.

❗ If you use the machine in a confined space, make sure there is a continuous air turnover.

Location

Conditions

| | Optimum | Recommended |
|-------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| Temperature | 10 to 35°C (50 to 95°F) | 15 to 25°C (59 to 77°F) |
| Humidity | 15 to 80% | 30 to 70% |

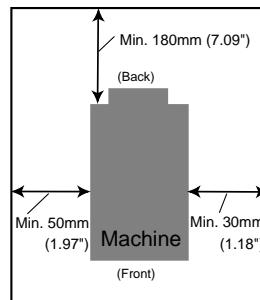
- The machine must be level within 3mm (0.11") both front to rear and left to right.

Locations to Avoid

- Avoid exposed to direct sunlight or strong light (more than 2,000 lux.).
- Avoid directly exposed to cool air from air conditioner's or heated air from heater's. Sudden temperature changes can cause condensation to form inside the machine.
- Avoid where the machine might be subjected to frequent strong vibration.
- Places higher than 2,500m (8,221ft.) above sea level.

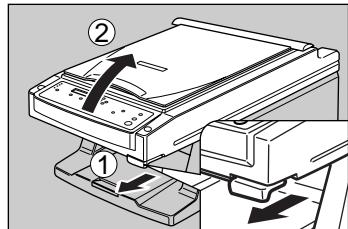
Machine Location

Place the machine near the wall outlet, providing minimum clearance as shown.



Installing the Starter Toner Cassette

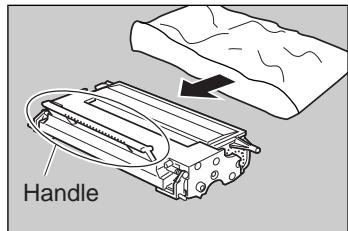
1 Pull the top release lever (①) and open the top unit (②).



2 Hold the starter toner cassette by its handle, and remove it from its vinyl bag.

⚠ CAUTION

Keep all plastic bags out of the reach of children.



⚠ Important!

Be sure to hold the starter toner cassette by its handle.

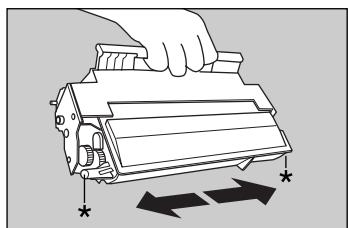
>Note

Keep the vinyl bag for later repackaging when necessary.

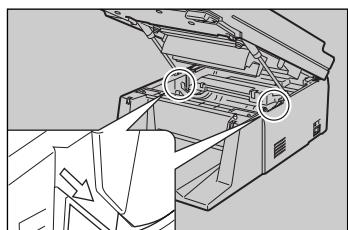
3 Holding the starter toner cassette by its handle, gently shake it side to side 5 or 6 times to evenly distribute the toner inside.

⚠ Important!

Be sure to hold the starter toner cassette by its handle.



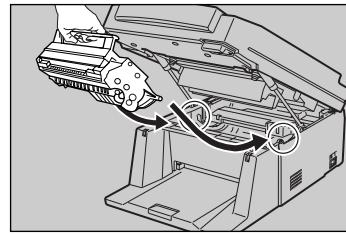
4 Look inside the machine and note the locations of the arrows that indicate the toner cassette guides on either side.



5 Make sure the plastic pins (marked with “*” in the illustration next to step **3**) on either side of the starter toner cassette slide along the guides inside the machine.

 **Note**

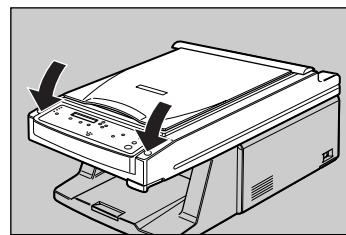
Be sure to hold the starter toner cassette by its handle.



6 To close the top unit, press down firmly but gently on both sides of it until the top unit closes and clicks securely into place.

 **Note**

Background gray cast is sometimes evident just after installing a new toner cassette.



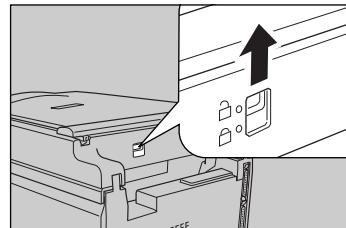
Unlocking the Scanner Lock

 **Important**

Be sure to unlock the scanner lock before using the machine.

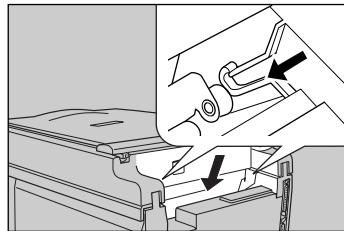
The machine will not operate correctly if the scanner lock is not unlocked.

1 Unlock the scanner lock which is located at the back of the machine.



Installing the Upper Paper Tray

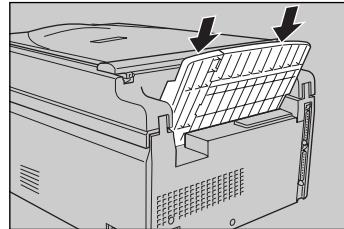
- 1 Look at the rear of the machine and note the locations of the holes for insertion of the upper paper tray on both sides.



- 2 To install the upper paper tray, press down on both sides of the tray, making sure that it is inserted as far as it will go.

 *Note*

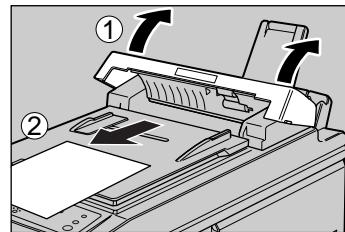
Paper will not be fed correctly into the machine if the upper paper tray is not inserted all the way in.



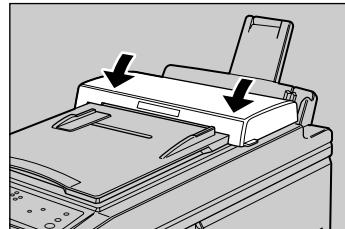
Other Settings for Type 2

To remove the protective sheet

- 1 Open the ADF cover (①) and then remove the protective sheet (②).

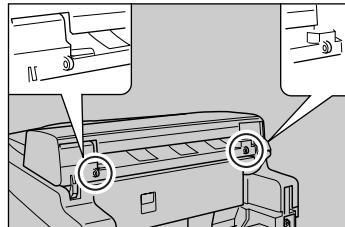


- 2 Close the ADF cover and make sure it locks securely into place.

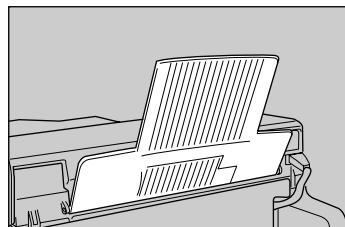


To install the document output tray

- 1 Look at the rear of the machine to confirm where the document output tray should fit.



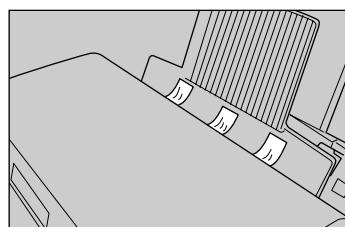
- 2 Insert the pin at one side of the tray by gently bending the document tray until it fits in the insert hole.



- 3 Make sure the small pieces of plastic film curl upwards as shown.

! Important!

The original will not be delivered properly, if the films are not set as shown.

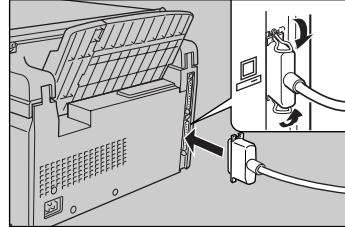


Connecting to a computer

⚠ Important!

Make sure that the power of both the machine and your computer is turned off before making the connection.

- 1 **Plug one end of the your printer cable into the lower port on the side of the machine, and secure it in place as shown in the illustration.**



>Note

- *The machine must be connected to a computer for printing.*
- *Use the cable that comes with the machine to connect to your computer.*

Turning On the Machine

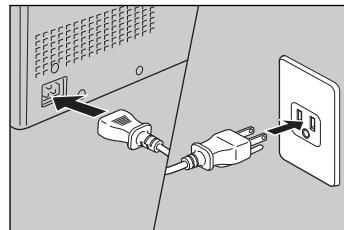
⚠ WARNING

- Only connect the machine to the power source described on the inside of the front cover.
- Avoid multi-wiring.
- Do not damage, break or make any modifications to the power cord. Do not place heavy objects on it, pull it hard or bend it more than necessary. These actions could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Do not plug or unplug the power cord with your hands wet. Otherwise, an electric shock might occur.

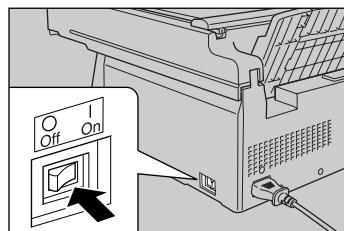
⚠ Important!

When you turn on the machine for the first time after the installation, make sure that no paper is loaded beforehand.

- 1 Attach the power cord to the machine and plug the other end into a outlet.



- 2 Turn on the machine.



2. GETTING ACQUAINTED

Paper and Other Media

The machine supports printing on the following types of paper/media from the upper paper tray.

Refer to the following pages for details on loading each type of paper/media into the upper paper tray.

| | Paper/Media type (Paper size) | Display | Page |
|----------------|---|---|----------|
| Plain paper | A4 (210mm × 297mm) | A4 | p.10 |
| | A5 (148mm × 210mm) | A5 □ | p.10 |
| | 8 ¹ / ₄ " × 13" | 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13 | p.10 |
| | Letter (8 ¹ / ₂ " × 11") | Letter (8 ¹ / ₂ × 11) | p.10 |
| | 8 ¹ / ₂ " × 5 ¹ / ₂ " | 8 ¹ / ₂ × 5 ¹ / ₂ | p.10 |
| | 8 ¹ / ₂ " × 13" | 8 ¹ / ₂ × 13 | p.10 |
| | 8" × 10 ¹ / ₂ " | 8 × 10 ¹ / ₂ | p.10 |
| | Legal (8 ¹ / ₂ " × 14") | Legal (8 ¹ / ₂ × 14) | p.10 |
| Envelopes | A5 (210mm × 148mm) | A5 □ | p.12 |
| | C5 Envelope (162mm × 229mm) | C5 Env | p.12, 14 |
| | C6 Envelope (114mm × 162mm) | C6 Env | p.12, 14 |
| | DL Envelope (110mm × 162mm) | DL Env | p.12, 14 |
| Transparencies | | | p.14 |
| Label paper | | | p.14 |



Note

Do not attempt to use the following types of paper: wrinkled or creased paper, curled or rolled paper, paper containing carbon, carbon-backed paper, coated paper, onion skin or other very thin paper.

| ⚠ CAUTION | |
|-----------|--|
| 🚫 | Do not reuse stapled paper. Do not use aluminium foil, paper containing carbon or other conductive paper. Otherwise, a fire might occur. |

Loading Paper

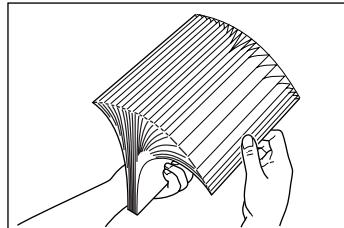
After you set up the machine and specify the paper size, you are ready to actually load paper.

Important!

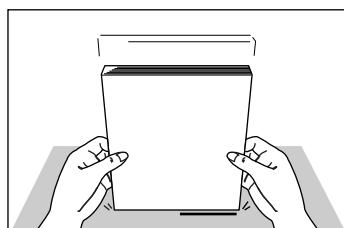
When loading paper into the upper paper tray, make sure that you load maximum 100 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m² or 20 lb). Overloading the upper paper tray can cause misfeeds.

To load plain paper into the upper paper tray

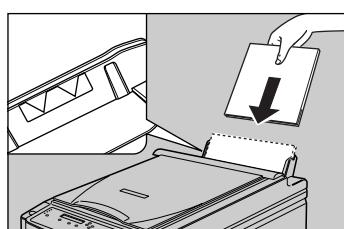
- 1 Fan the stack of paper to make sure that all pages are free and are not sticking together. The upper paper tray holds up to 100 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m² or 20 lb).



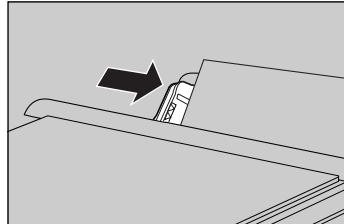
- 2 Straighten up all four sides of the stack, by tapping them on a desk or table top.



- 3 Set paper into the upper paper tray. Make sure that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark on the tray guide.



- 4 Squeeze the tray guide and slide it against the edge of the stack.



5 Press $\text{○}_{\text{Help/Function}}$. “Prt Help List” appears.

Prt Help List \blacktriangleright

6 Press $\text{Zoom } \text{○}_{\text{+}} \blacktriangleright$ or $\text{○}_{\text{-}} \text{Zoom }$ until “1 Tray Pap. Size” appears.

1 Tray Pap. Size \blacktriangleright

1 Tray Pap. Size
3 User Param. \Leftrightarrow 2 Language



If the paper feed unit (option) is installed, refer to page 19 for details on how to specify the paper size.

7 Press $\text{OK } \text{○}$. “Tray guide OK?” appears.

Tray guide OK? ○_{OK}

8 After pressing $\text{OK } \text{○}$, press $\text{Zoom } \text{○}_{\text{+}} \blacktriangleright$ or $\text{○}_{\text{-}} \text{Zoom }$ until the desired size appears. The sizes change in the following order.

A4? \Leftrightarrow A5? \Leftrightarrow $8\frac{1}{4} \times 13$?
 Legal ($8\frac{1}{2} \times 14$)? \Leftrightarrow Letter ($8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$)?
 $8 \times 10\frac{1}{2}$? \Leftrightarrow $8\frac{1}{2} \times 13$? \Leftrightarrow $8\frac{1}{2} \times 5\frac{1}{2}$?

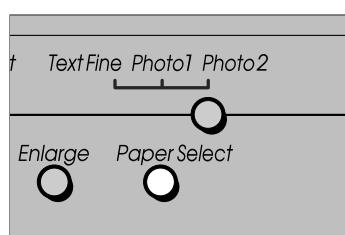
9 When the correct paper size is on the display, press $\text{OK } \text{○}$. “Registered” appears. If the paper feed unit (option) (page 17) is installed, you can also select its paper size at this time.

Registered



Tip

If the paper feed unit (option) is not installed, you can press $\text{○}_{\text{Paper Select}}$ in place of $\text{○}_{\text{Help/Function}}$ in step 5. Next, skip step 6 and 7, and jump directly to step 8.

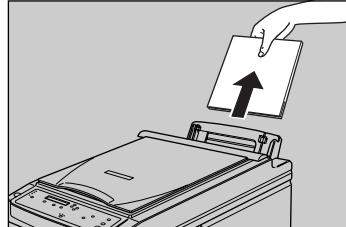


To load small size paper

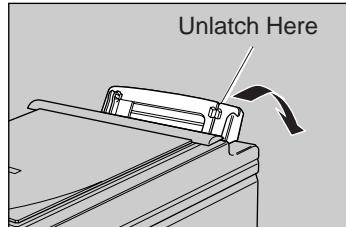


We recommend that you always feed small size paper vertically, with one of its shorter edges feeding into the machine.

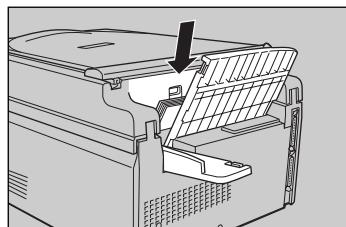
- 1 Remove all paper before loading small size paper in the upper paper tray.



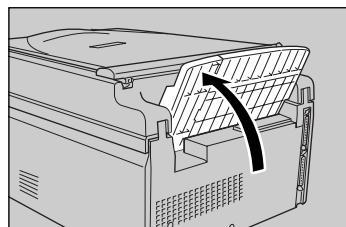
- 2 Open the small panel on the back of the machine by unlatching it as shown in the illustration. Opening the small panel makes it easy to handle small size paper.



- 3 Set paper into the upper paper tray. Make sure that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark on the tray guide.



- 4 After setting the paper into the tray, raise the small panel until it snaps securely into place.



5 Press  *Help/Function*. “Prt Help List” appears.

Prt Help List ►

6 Press  or  until “1 Tray Pap.Size” appears.

1 Tray Pap. Size ►

1 Tray Pap. Size
3 User Param. ⇔ 2 Language



Note

If the paper feed unit (option) is installed, refer to page 19 for details on how to specify the paper size.

7 Press . “Tray guide OK?” appears.

Tray guide OK? OK

8 After pressing , press  or  until the desired size appears. The sizes change in the following order.

A5 □ ? ►

A5 □ ? ⇔ C5 Env?
↓
DL Env? ⇔ C6 Env?

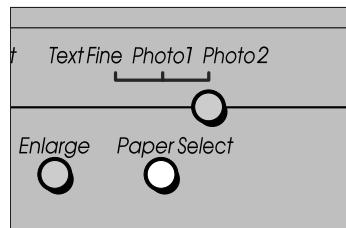
9 When the correct paper size is on the display, press . “Registered” appears.

Registered



Tip

If the paper feed unit (option) is not installed, you can press  in place of  in step **5**. Next, skip step **6** and **7**, and jump directly to step **8**.



Note

- Be sure to specify the paper size before printing on A4 or Letter paper again.

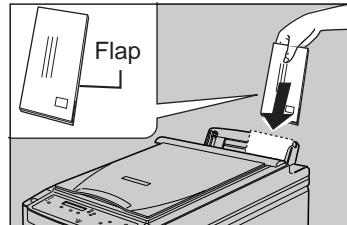
Loading Other Media

Use the following procedures to load envelopes, transparencies, and label paper.

To load envelopes

Load up to 5 envelopes at a time, using the same procedure for loading small size paper on page 12.

- *Insert envelopes print side up with the stamp position as shown.*



- *Envelope flaps should be securely folded down, so the envelope is “closed”. This is especially important when printing on envelopes with adhesive on the flaps, because heat generated during the printing process can cause the adhesive to melt and get on rollers.*

Note

Refer to the paper select operation on page 13.

To load transparencies

Load only one transparency at a time, using the plain paper loading procedure on page 10 for large transparencies, and the small paper loading procedure on page 12 for small transparencies.

Note

Refer to the paper select operation on page 11 for large transparencies or page 13 for small ones.

To load label paper

Load only 10 sheets of label paper at a time, using the plain paper loading procedure on page 10.

Note

Refer to the paper select operation on page 11.

Connecting a Second Printer (Additional Printer)

The machine features a port that you can use to connect your current printer as a second printer (additional printer). Once you do, you have a selection of this machine or the second printer at the touch of **Second Printer** key.

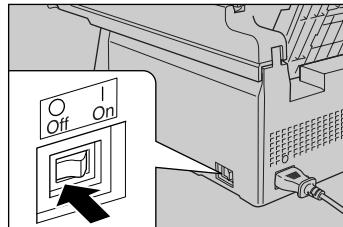


Note

Make sure that the power of your computer is turned off before making the connection.

To connect to a second printer

- 1 Turn off both the machine and your second printer.

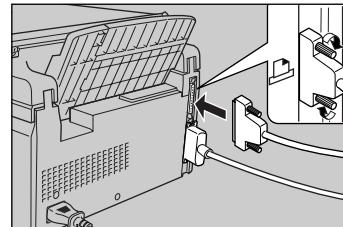


- 2 Connect one end of a parallel interface cable to your second printer.
- 3 Connect the other end of the cable to the second printer port, securing it in place with the screws.



Note

- It requires a standard 36-pin parallel cable compliant with IEEE 1284.
- Refer to page 26 for details on using the second printer.



Installing the Paper Feed Unit (Option)

This section describes how to install the paper feed unit (option) and how to load paper in it. Addition of a paper feed unit provides you with a second paper source that holds up to 250 sheets of A4 or Letter size paper.

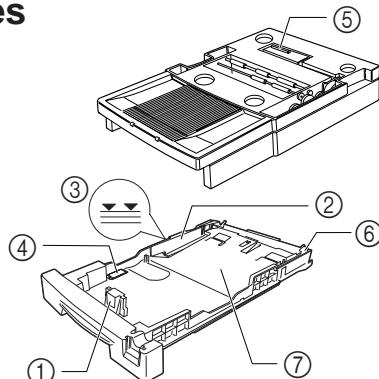


Important!

Make sure that machine power is turned off and that the power cord is unplugged from the power socket before installing the paper feed unit.

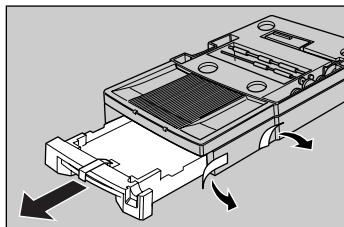
Paper Feed Unit Part Names

- ① Front guide
- ② Side guide
- ③ Limit mark
- ④ Paper size indicator
- ⑤ Connector
- ⑥ Corner guides
- ⑦ Metal plate



To install the Paper Feed Unit

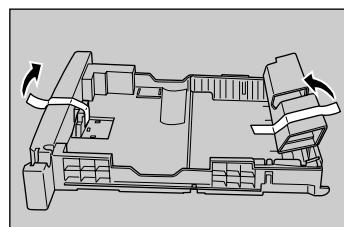
1 Remove all the packing tapes from the paper feed unit and pull the paper tray out of the unit.



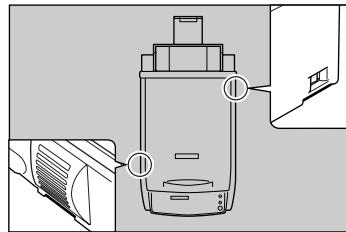
2 After removing all tapes and cardboard from inside of the paper tray, insert the tray back into the machine until it locks into place. Locate the paper feed unit where you plan to use the machine.



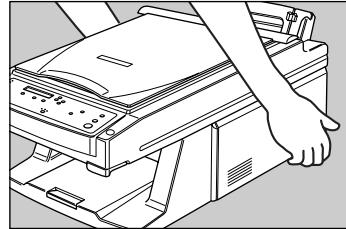
Be sure to place the paper feed unit on a level surface.



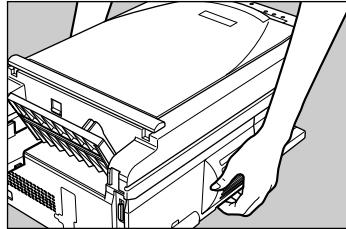
3 The machine has handheld at the locations shown in the illustration. Note that the illustration shows the machine as viewed from above.



- This illustration shows the handheld location on the right side of the machine.



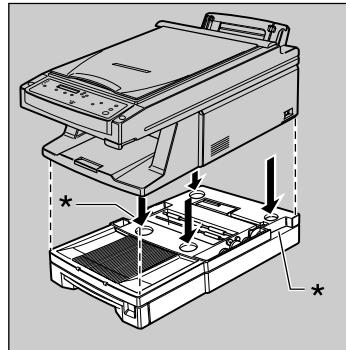
- This is the handheld location on the left side of the machine.



4 Carefully lower the machine onto the paper feed unit, making sure that the dowels on the paper feed unit fit into holes in the bottom of the machine properly.

⚠ CAUTION

When lifting the machine, make sure your hands are at the locations indicated by “*” in the illustration. This protects against pinching your fingers between the machine and paper feed unit.



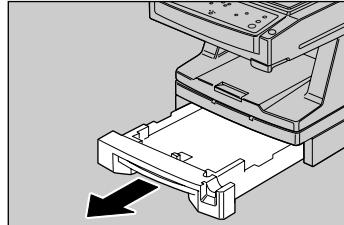
Note

After the above installation, attach the power cord to the machine, and plug the other end into an outlet. Refer to page 8 for details.

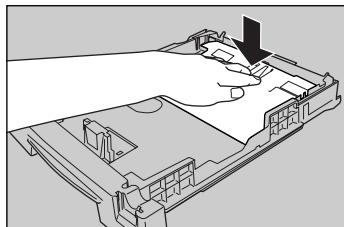
To load paper into the paper feed unit

You can load either A4 or Letter size paper into the paper feed unit. Refer to page 19 for details on how to change the positions of the paper guides inside of the tray to match the type of paper you are using.

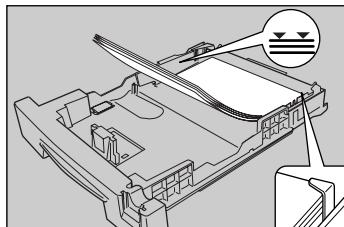
- 1 Pull out the paper tray and remove it from the paper feed unit.



- 2 Press down on the metal plate in the bottom of the paper tray until the plate locks into place with a "click".

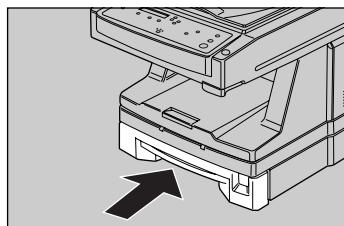


- 3 Up to 250 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m² or 20 lb) can be inserted into the paper tray as shown in the illustration. Make sure that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark on the side fence.



Note
Make sure the leading corners of the paper fit under the corner guides.

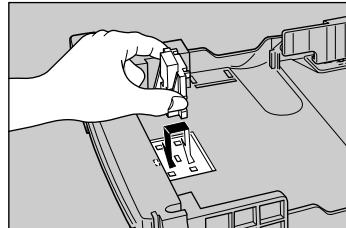
- 4 Slide the paper tray back into the paper feed unit until it locks into place.



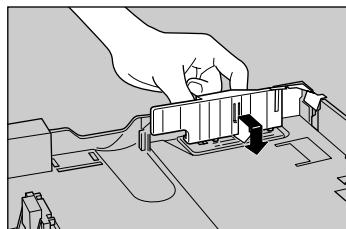
To change the paper size

Use the following procedure to set the positions of the paper guides inside the paper tray for either A4 or Letter paper.

1 Squeezing in on both sides of the front guide, slide it to the correct position for the desired paper size.



2 Squeezing in on both sides of the side guide, slide it to the correct position for the desired paper size.



! Important!

Whenever you change the paper size, be sure to also specify the paper size using the operation panel.

To specify the paper size

After you install the paper feed unit (option), you can select between the upper paper tray and the paper feed unit as the paper source, and specify the size of paper in the paper feed unit.

1 Press the  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>. “Prt Help List” appears.

Prt Help List ▶

2 Press  or  until “1 Tray Pap. Size” appears.

1 Tray Pap. Size ▶

1 Tray Pap. Size
3 User Param ⇌ 2 Language

3 Press **OK**.

Lower Tray?

OK

The actual message that appears on the machine's display depends on the paper source you last used. If "Upper Tray?" appears, press Zoom $\oplus\blacktriangleright$ or $\blacktriangleleft\ominus$ Zoom to display the "Lower Tray?" message before proceeding with step 4.

4 After pressing **OK**, press **Zoom $\oplus\blacktriangleright$** or **$\blacktriangleleft\ominus$ Zoom** until the desired size appears.

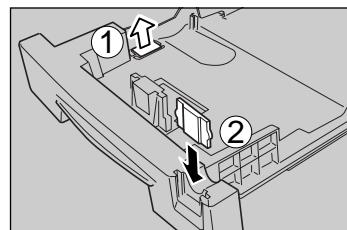
Letter (8 $\frac{1}{2}$ × 11)? **►**Letter (8 $\frac{1}{2}$ × 11)? \leftrightarrow A4?

5 When the correct size is on the display, press **OK**. "Registered" appears.

Registered

To install the paper size indicator

1 Break off the paper size indicator (①). Positioning the indicator so the side that shows the paper size you are using (A4 or Letter) is facing outwards, insert it into the front of the paper tray (②).



To select the paper source

1 Press **Paper Select** until the desired paper source appears.

100% **U 01**

The upper paper tray is selected when "U" is on the display, and the paper feed unit is selected when "L" is on the display.

100% **L 01**

Refer to page 10 for details on using the upper paper tray.

Upgrading Memory

You can install Single Inline Memory Module (SIMM) to upgrade the on-board memory of the machine.

The machine is shipped from the factory with a 4MB SIMM, which can be replaced with an 8MB, 16MB or 32MB SIMM.

Use the following procedure to install 8MB, 16MB or 32MB SIMM.

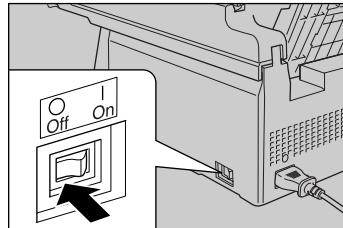
Note

*The following are the required specifications for a SIMM used with this machine:
72-pin, 60ns, Extend Date Out (EDO), parity/non-parity.*

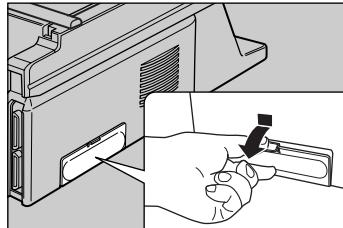
Important!

Make sure you touch some grounded metal object with your hand to discharge any electrostatic charge from your body before handling the SIMM.

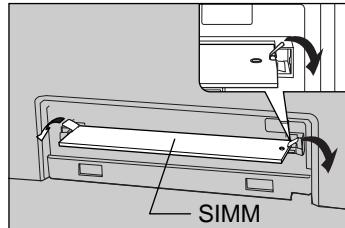
- 1 Turn off the machine.



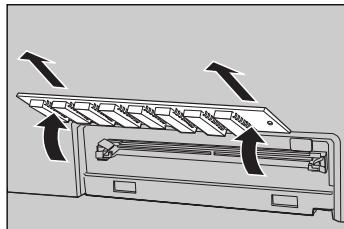
- 2 Remove the SIMM cover located on the left side of the machine.



- 3 Pull apart the hooks on the both sides of the SIMM board that hold it in place.



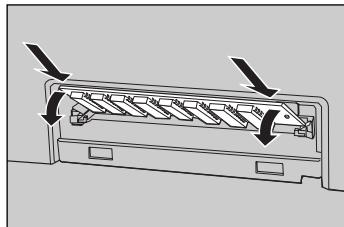
4 Carefully lift out the SIMM board currently installed on your printer.



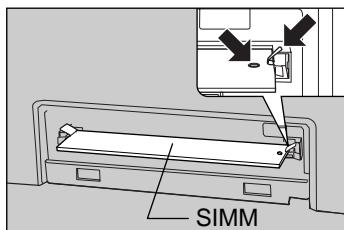
5 Angle the new SIMM board as shown in the illustration, and insert it down into the slot. Gently rock it back and forth until you hear it snap into place.

Important!

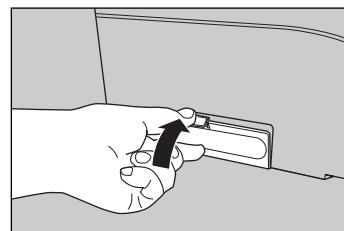
Make sure the SIMM board is oriented correctly when you insert it into the slot.



6 Make sure the hooks on the sides of the SIMM board snap securely into place.



7 Replace the cover by inserting its tabs into the holes provided, as shown in the illustration.



3. PRINTING

Setting Up For Printing

In order to use the machine as a printer, you must install its printer driver on your computer. The printer driver can be found on the diskette that comes with the machine. Use the following procedure to install the printer driver.

Note

- *The following procedure assumes that you are already familiar with basic computer operations. If you aren't, consult the documentation that comes with your computer and its operating system.*
- *Refer to online help and Read me file of the printer driver.*
- *Perform the procedures under "Connecting to a computer (p. 7)" and "Loading Paper (p. 10)" before trying to perform the following procedures.*

To install the printer driver under Windows®95

- 1 If the "New Hardware Found" window is open, click [Cancel] to close it.
- 2 Quit all applications.
- 3 The next step you should perform depends on whether you are installing from diskette.

< To install from diskette, follow these steps >

- Insert the diskette into your computer's floppy disk drive (usually named A: or B:).
- Click [Start] and then [Run].
- Type A: INSTALL (replace "A" with the name of your disk drive if it is different) and then click [OK].
- Follow the instructions that appear on your computer screen. Note that installation takes a few minutes. After it is complete, remove the diskette from your computer's drive.

To install the printer driver under Windows®3.1x

1 Quit all applications except Program Manager.

- Press [Alt] + [Tab] to display the Task List window.
- Select the application you want to quit.
- Click [End Task] and then press [Enter] to quit the program.
- Repeat the above steps as many times as necessary to quit all applications that are running.

2 The next step you should perform depends on whether you are installing from diskette.

< To install from diskette, follow these steps >

- Insert the diskette into your computer's floppy disk drive (usually named A: or B:).
- On the Program Manager [File] menu, click [Run].
- Type **X : INSTALL**, replacing "X" with the name of the drive from which you are installing, and then click [OK].
- Follow the instructions that appear on your computer screen. Note that installation takes a few minutes. After it is complete, remove the diskette from your computer's drive.

New Hardware Found Window

Perform the following steps when the New Hardware Found window appears after you first install the driver.

1 Click [Do not install a driver (Windows will not prompt you again).]

2 Click [OK].

Note

If the above window does not appear after you first install the driver, check to make sure that the printer driver was installed properly and that you are using a suitable cable to connect the machine to your computer.

The above dialog box will not appear if you partially or completely installed this printer driver before.

Features You Can Access From the Printer Driver

Printer Driver Contents

■ Paper Defaults

Paper size : Size, Measurement Unit
 Page orientation : Portrait, Landscape
 Output : Copies, Print in reverse order
 Paper source : Source
 About

■ N-Up Printing

Select a Layout Option : Normal, Reduce for N-up printing
 (Print page borders ; 2 pages up/sheet ; 4 pages up/sheet)

■ Document

Document Type Settings

| | Automatic | Photo (Grayscale) | Desktop Publishing | High Speed Draft | Business Graphics |
|----------------------|-----------|-------------------|--------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| Graphics Mode | Raster | Raster | GL/2 | Raster | Raster |
| Font Resolution(dpi) | 600 | 600 | 600 | 300 | 600 |
| Graphics Resolution | High | High | High | High | High |
| Halftone | Screening | Screening | Screening | Screening | Dithering |

Job Settings : True Type Mode, Name

■ Configuration

Device Configuration : Feeder ; Toner Save Mode ; Time-out

■ Fonts

Font Manager (To add printer fonts)

■ Overlays

Overlay Assignments : None, All pages, Odd/Even pages, First/Other pages

Cover/Divider page Overlays

Create New Overlay

Manage Overlays : Get files from other sources to use as overlays, Send created overlays to other sources, Rename overlays, Remove overlays

Important!

After printing a large number of pages, be sure not to turn off the machine in several minutes.

Note

Be sure to use online help and Read me file of the printer driver to get the most out of all the printer features and functions.

Using the Second Printer (Additional Printer)

Use the following procedure to switch between this machine and a second printer when a second printer is connected.

Important!

If the second printer has a Bi-Direction mode, make sure to set the Bi-Direction mode to Off.

Note

Refer to page 15 for details on connecting a second printer.

To print to the second printer

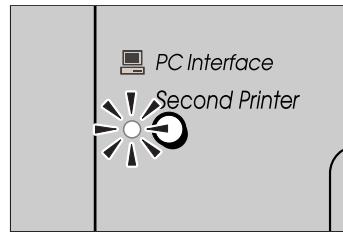
- 1 Press  . The Second Printer indicator lights.

Important!

Whenever you change printers, be sure to also change to the appropriate printer driver on your computer.

Note

While the Second Printer Indicator is lit, print data from your computer passes through the machine to the second printer.

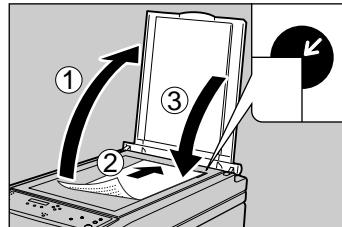


- 2 Perform the required print operation with the application you are using.

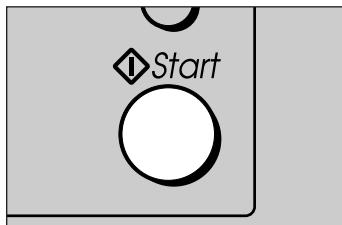
4. COPYING

Making a Copy

1 Lift the platen cover (①). Place the original face down at the arrow mark on the scale (②). Close the platen cover (③).



2 Press  to perform the copy operation.



Important!

After copying a large number of pages, be sure not to turn off the machine in several minutes.

Note

When printing to label paper, envelopes, transparencies, or thin paper (60 g/m² or 16 lb), remove each printout as it comes out of the machine. If you don't, printed output can fall out of the output tray, which can cause it to become curled.

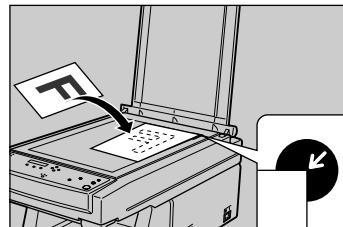
Alignment of Originals

Align the original with the scale of the exposure glass.

- When the original is a standard size such as A4 or Letter, align it to the indexes on the scale.
- When your original is not standard size, align the upper left edge of the original to the arrow mark on the scale.

For Type 2 Users

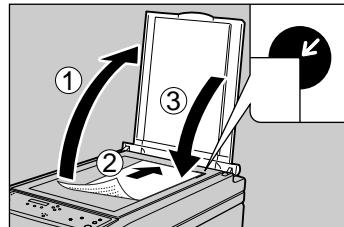
- When the original is smaller than the paper you are copying to, place a second sheet of paper that is larger than the paper you are copying to on top of the original when you place the original onto the exposure glass.



Making Multiple Copies

You can specify the number of copies to be printed by pressing  (to increase the number) or  (to reduce the number).

- 1 Lift the platen cover (①). Place the original face down at the arrow mark on the scale (②). Close the platen cover (③).



- 2 Press  or  until the desired number of copies appears.

 **Note**

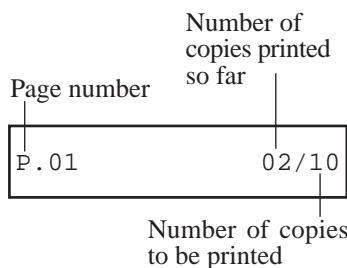
You can specify the number of copies in the range of 01 to 99.

| | |
|------|----|
| 100% | 10 |
|------|----|

- 3 Press  to perform the copy operation.

 **Note**

During the copy operation, the display shows the number of copies printed so far and that to be printed. For example, 02/10 appears while the second copy of a run of 10 copies is being printed.



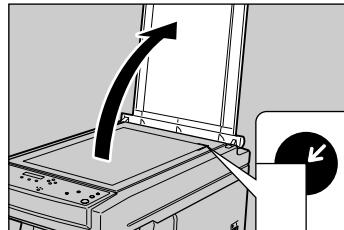
 **Tips**

- Press  to clear the setting after the copying has been finished.
-  (Type 1) or  (Type 2) produces copies at a faster speed, but it can also result in a loss of printout quality.
- With a Type 2 machine, using  also activates the Sort feature automatically.

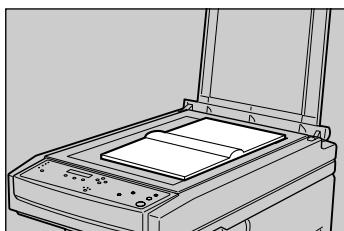
Making a Book Copy

When copying from a book, the thickness of the book should be no more than 30mm (1.18").

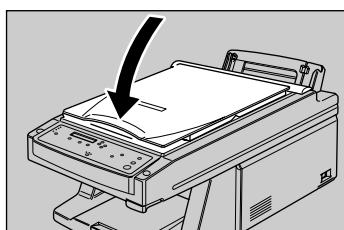
- 1 Lift the platen cover.



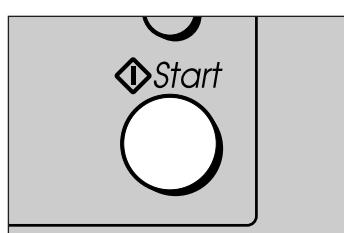
- 2 Open to the page you want to copy and lay the page face down on the exposure glass. Be sure to align one of the corners of the page with the arrow mark on the scale.



- 3 Lower the platen cover.



- 4 Press  to perform the copy operation.

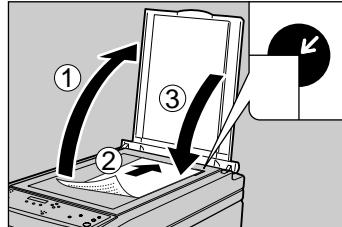


Reduction and Enlargement

Press  or  to select preset reduction or enlargement factors for the copy operation.

To set the reduction factor

- 1 Lift the platen cover (①). Place the original face down at the arrow mark on the scale (②). Close the platen cover (③).



- 2 Press  until the desired size ratio appears. The sizes change in the following order.

100% → 93% → 87% → 82%
 ↑
 50% ← “71% A4 ▶ A5” ←

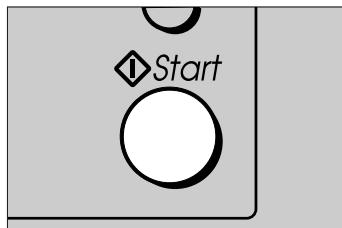
| | |
|------|----|
| 100% | 01 |
|------|----|

| Ratio (%) | Original → Paper size |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| 93 | A little reduced. |
| 87 | A4 → B5 |
| 82 | B5 → A5 |
| 71 | A4 → A5 |
| 50 | Reduced by $1/4$. |

- 3 Press  to perform the copy operation.

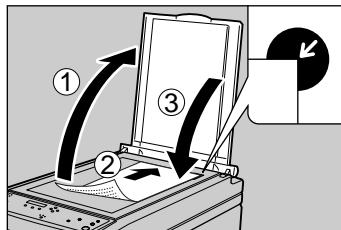


Note
 Press  to clear the setting after copying.



To set the enlargement factor

1 Lift the platen cover (①). Place the original face down at the arrow mark on the scale (②). Close the platen cover (③).



2 Press  until the desired size ratio appears. The sizes change in the following order.

100% → 115% → 122%
 ↑
 200% ← “141% A5 ▶ A4” ←

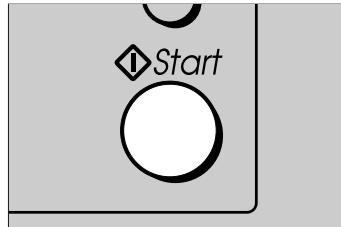
| | |
|------|----|
| 100% | 01 |
|------|----|

| Ratio (%) | Original → Paper size |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| 115 | B5 → A4, B6 → A5 |
| 122 | A5 → B5 |
| 141 | A5 → A4 |
| 200 | A6 → A4 |

3 Press  to perform the copy operation.



Note
 Press  to clear the setting after copying.

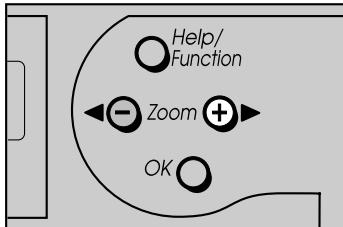
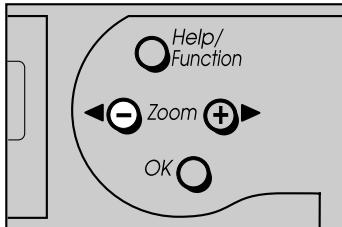


Zoom (In 1% Increments)

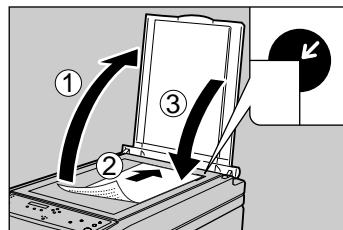
Zoom allows you to tune the preset reduction and enlargement factors to exactly the value you want. You can change the zoom factor in increments of 1%.

To use zoom

Setting Range



1 Lift the platen cover (①). Place the original face down at the arrow mark on the scale (②). Close the platen cover (③).



2 Press \blacktriangleleft Zoom (decrease) or Zoom \triangleright (increase) until the desired size ratio appears.

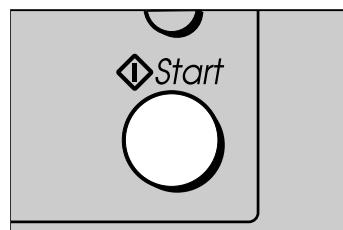
| | |
|------|----|
| 100% | 01 |
|------|----|

| | |
|-----|----|
| 99% | 01 |
|-----|----|

3 Press \diamond Start to perform the copy operation.



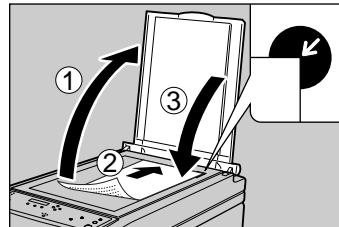
Note
Press \diamond Clear Modes to clear the setting after copying.



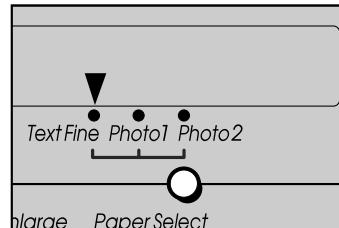
Adjusting Copy Image

To select the resolution/photo setting

1 Lift the platen cover (①). Place the original face down at the arrow mark on the scale (②). Close the platen cover (③).



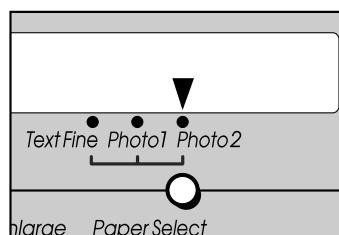
2 Press the Copy Mode key to specify the resolution or halftoning method for the copy operation.



3 A pointer (▼) moves on the display to indicate the current setting.

The following describes when you should use each setting.

| Setting | Use for: |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| [Text Fine] | Copying text |
| [Photo1] | Copying photographs |
| [Photo2] | Copying mixed text and photographs |



Note

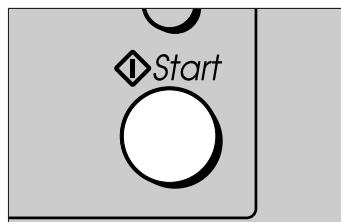
If the memory size of your machine is 4MB, the machine automatically switches from Photo2 to Photo1 in the following cases.

- ♦ when the  (Type 1) or  (Type 2) key is on
- ♦ when you make multiple copies using the ADF (Type 2 only)

4 Press  to perform the copy operation.

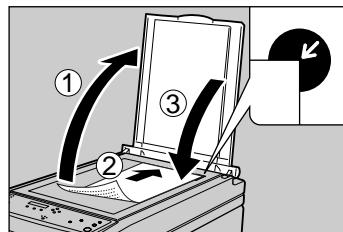
Note

Press  to clear the setting after copying.

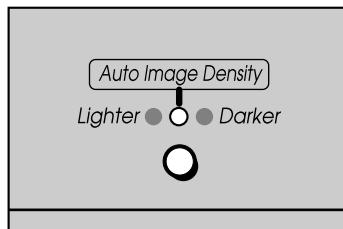


To adjust the image density

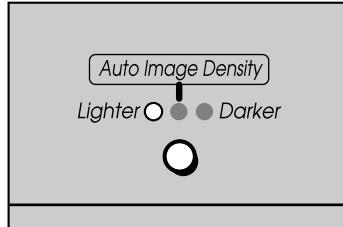
1 Lift the platen cover (①). Place the original face down at the arrow mark on the scale (②). Close the platen cover (③).



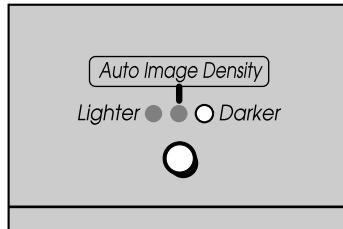
2 Press the Density key to select the image density settings.



- Select [Lighter] to make the image lighter.



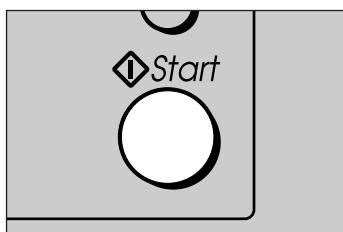
- Select [Darker] to make the image darker.



3 Press  to perform the copy operation.



Note
Press  to clear the setting after copying.

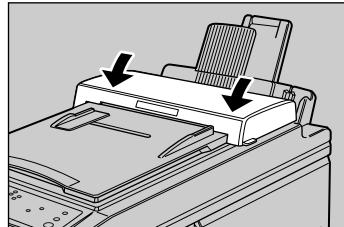


Setting an Original on the ADF (Type 2 only)

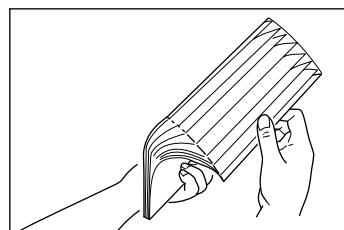
You can load up to 10 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m² or 20 lb) at a time into the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF).

! Important!

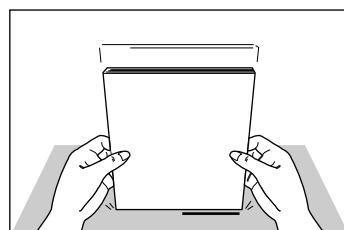
Check to make sure that the ADF cover is securely closed before using it.



1 Fan the stack of originals. Never try to place more than 10 sheets of plain paper onto the ADE



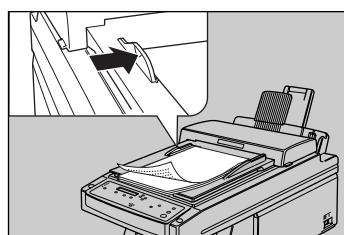
2 Straighten up all four sides of the stack, by tapping them on a desk or table top.



3 Place the stack of originals face down on the ADF and slide the document guide against the side of the stack.

! Note

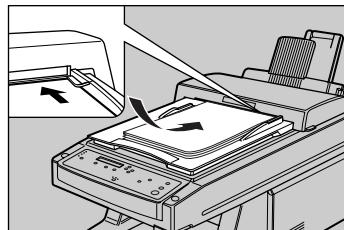
The side of the original to be copied should be face down.



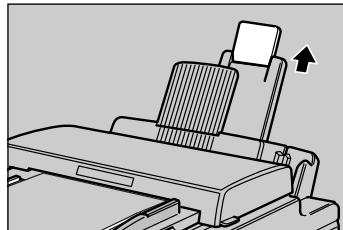
4 Insert the stack of originals along the document guide into the ADE

! Note

Insert your stack of originals into the ADF until it stops. If you do not push it right in, the machine will not detect the stack.



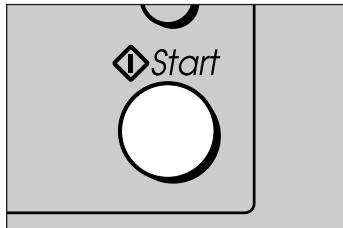
5 Stretch the extend tray that supports the originals.



6 Press  to perform the copy operation.



- If an original becomes misfed during feeding by the ADF, press  to stop the operation. Refer to "Clearing a Paper Misfeed" on page 43.
- We recommend to use the TEXT mode when copying with the ADF.



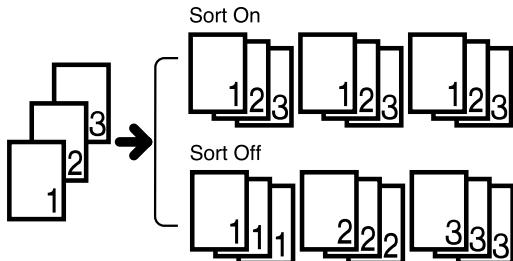
Originals that do not meet the following requirements can cause paper misfeeds, and even damage the machine.

■ Requirements

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| • Thickness | 0.05mm to 0.2mm (0.002" to 0.08") |
| • Weight | 60 to 90 g/m ² (16lb to 24lb) |
| • Clear markings | Markings on the originals must be clear to be read correctly. |
| • Uniform page size | All pages should be the same size. |
| • Page condition | Avoid using originals that are bent, curled, damaged, or stapled, and originals printed on coated paper, carbon paper, or photographic paper. |

Sorting Output (Type 2 only)

The following example shows how output is affected by turning sorting on and off.



Important!

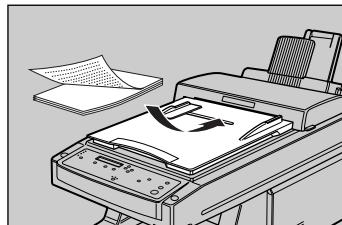
The sort operation requires scanning of all your originals into memory before starting the copy operation. The number of originals that can be scanned at one time depends on how much memory you have installed. Refer to page 21 for details on increasing memory capacity.

To turn sorting on and off

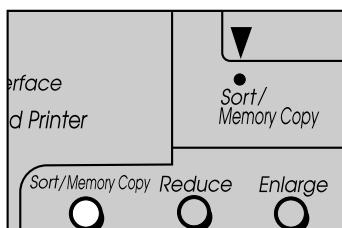
1 Set the originals on the ADE

Note

Refer to page 35 for how to set originals.



2 Sorting is activated when the ▼ pointer is visible on the display above Sort/Memory Copy. Press to select sorting on and off (no pointer).



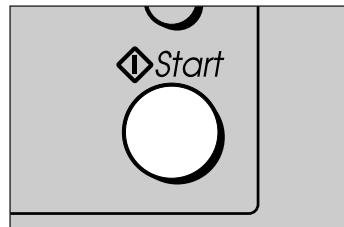
3

When you press  to start the copy operation, all of the originals on the ADF are scanned into memory before they are printed.



Note

Press  to clear the setting after copying.



5. TROUBLESHOOTING

General

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|--|---|--|------|
| Nothing happens when the machine is turned on. | Power cord is not connected. | Correctly connect the power cord to the machine and plug it into a outlet. | p.8 |
| | SIMM is not installed correctly | Install the SIMM correctly. | p.21 |
| | SIMM does not meet the required specifications. | Use a SIMM with the required specifications. | p.21 |
| Paper misfeeds when the machine is turned on for the first time after the installation. | Paper was loaded in the machine before the machine was turned on. | Remove the paper, turn the machine off and then back on. After machine initialization is complete, load the paper back into the machine. | p.8 |
| After installing a SIMM board, the memory value that appears on the machine's display does not match the amount of memory installed. | SIMM does not meet the required specifications. | Use a SIMM with the required specifications. | P.21 |

Printing and Copying (1/2)

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|--------------------------|---|--|------------|
| Frequent paper misfeeds. | The upper paper tray is not set correctly | Set the upper paper tray correctly. | p.4 |
| | Improper paper. | Use paper of the correct size and thickness. | p.9 |
| | Paper is not fed correctly from the upper paper tray. | Realign the paper with the paper guide, and if necessary, take care for the paper to be fed correctly. | p.10 |
| | Paper is curled or damp. | Uncurl the paper. | p.10,12,18 |
| | | Insert paper into the upper paper tray from the least-curved side. | p.10,12 |
| | | Set paper face down if necessary. | p.10,12,18 |
| | | Avoid using damp paper. | — |
| | Too much paper is loaded in the machine. | Remove some of the paper. | p.10,14 |
| | Paper is loaded incorrectly. | Check the paper and realign it if necessary. | p.10,18 |

Printing and Copying (2/2)

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|---|---|--|---------|
| Frequent paper misfeeds. | Attempting to print on both sides of the paper. | Print on only one side. Two-side printing is not supported by this machine. | p.10,18 |
| | Printing on an envelope that is too thick. | Make sure that envelopes are folded flat. | p.14 |
| | Misfeeding of the envelope flap. | Make sure that envelope flaps are closed (folded down). | p.14 |
| Part of the image is unclear. | Toner is distributed unevenly in the toner cassette. | Remove the toner cassette, gently rock it left and right a few times, and replace it into the machine. | p.50 |
| Black lines on the printout. | Heat damage to the toner cassette caused by turning off the machine too soon after copying a large number of pages. | Replace the toner cassette. | p.50 |
| Dark areas along the sides of the printout. | Turning off the machine too soon after printing or copying a large number of pages. | Replace the toner cassette. | p.50 |

Printing

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|--|--|---|------|
| Abnormal or unexpected printing results. | Use of wrong cable. | Use the cable that comes with this machine. | p.7 |
| | Wrong printer driver settings. | Change to the correct printer driver settings. | p.23 |
| | Attempting to print from a DOS application at 600 dpi. | Change to 300 dpi. | p.56 |
| Parts of the image are not printed out. | The correct paper size is not specified | Specify the paper size using the operation panel. | p.19 |
| Cannot print from a second printer. | Second printer is not connected correctly. | Check connections and make corrections, if necessary. | p.15 |
| | Second printer is not selected. | Press  so the indicator above it is lit. | p.26 |
| | Incorrect settings of the second printer driver. | Use the printer driver of the second printer to turn off bi-directional printing. | p.26 |

Copying

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|--|--|--|------|
| "Error 90" appears on the display, and the copy operation is aborted when copying from the exposure glass. | Locked scanner. | Unlock the scanner lock, turn the machine off and then back on. | p.3 |
| Frequent original mis-feeds with ADE | Original is not set correctly. | Set the original correctly. | p.35 |
| | Curled original(s). | Straighten out the original(s). | p.35 |
| | | Insert the original(s) from the least-curved side. | p.35 |
| Original is not fed from the ADE | Incorrect original specifications. | Use originals of the correct size, thickness, and quantity. | p.36 |
| Original is not fed out properly. | ADF cover is open. | Close the ADF cover. | p.35 |
| Periodic black marks on printed output. | The document output tray is not set correctly. | Set the document output tray and the small pieces of plastic film correctly. | p.6 |
| Black lines and marks on printed output when copying from the exposure glass. | Cleaning pad is not installed. | Correctly install the cleaning pad. | p.50 |
| | Copying to small-size paper with the Type 2 machine. | Place a sheet of the same size as the paper you are printing onto behind the original. | p.27 |
| | Different size original and copy paper. | | |
| Non-white original background. | | Adjust the print density. | p.34 |
| Dirty platen cover or exposure glass. | | Clean the platen cover and exposure glass. | p.49 |
| Black and white lines on printed output when using the ADF. | Dirty ADF transport path. | Clean the ADF transport path. | p.49 |
| Output too light. | Low contrast original. | Adjust the print density. | p.34 |
| Unclear photographic images. | Copying in Text Fine Mode. | Use the Copy Mode key to select the Photo1 or Photo2 Mode. | p.33 |
| Parts of the original image are not copied. | The correct paper size is not specified. | Specify the paper size using the operation panel. | p.19 |

Error Messages

| Message | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|---|---|---|----------|
| Close cover | Top unit is open. | Close the top unit. | p.3 |
| Add paper | Machine is out of paper. | Load paper, and set the copy quantity again during a copy job. | p.10,18 |
| Toner near end | Machine is almost out of toner. | Prepare a toner cassette for replacement. | — |
| Add Toner | Toner cassette is not loaded correctly. | Correctly load the toner cassette into the machine. | p.2 |
| | Machine is out of toner. | Replace the toner cassette, and set the copy quantity again during a copy job. | p.50 |
| Clear paper | Paper misfeed. | Remove the misfed paper, and set the copy quantity again during a copy job. | p.43 |
| Memory overflow | Not enough memory capacity. | Either lower the printer driver's "Resolution" setting or increase memory capacity by installing a larger SIMM. Press any operation panel key to clear the error message from the display. | p.21,25 |
| Remove original (when original is set in ADF) | Original misfeed. | Remove the original from the ADF, and set the copy quantity again. | p.47 |
| "Remove original" and "from glass" | An original is under the platen cover. | Remove the original. If there is no original, open the platen cover and close it again. | — |
| "Memory full" and "Press Stop" | Too much sort copy data. | Press  to cancel sort copy, and perform the copy operation without sorting. If you need to print big sort copy jobs, increase memory capacity. | p.21,37 |
| "Memory full" and "Press Start" | Too many sort copy pages. | Press  to print pages already stored in memory. If you need to print big sort copy jobs, increase memory capacity. | p.21, 37 |
| Error 90 | Locked scanner. | Unlock the scanner lock, turn the machine off and then back on. | p.3 |
| Error XX | Possible machine defect. | Turn power off and then back on again. | p.8 |

If you have a problem with the machine and you can not resolve it by referring to the information in this chapter, contact your service representative.

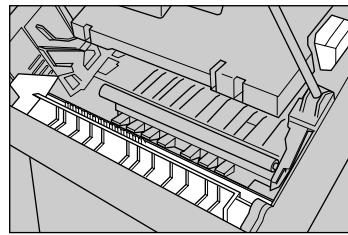
In case of "Error XX" messages, be sure to turn off the machine before calling.

Clearing a Paper Misfeed

This section describes how to clear a paper misfeed when one occurs.

⚠ CAUTION

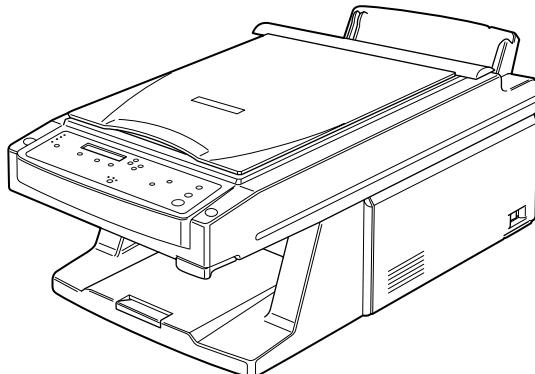
When removing misfed paper, do not touch the fusing section because it could be very hot.



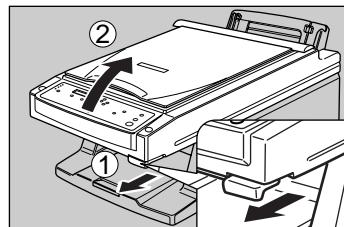
Important!

Hold a misfed sheet with both hands and slowly pull it out. Do not use a tool such as a screwdriver or tweezers as this may damage the unit.

Type 1



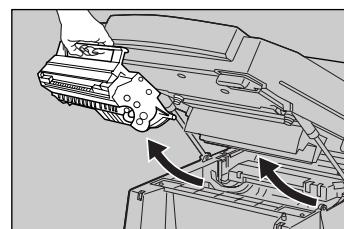
- 1 Pull the top release lever (①) and open the top unit (②).



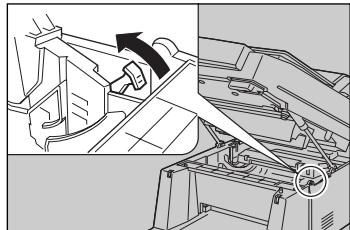
- 2 Pull out the toner cassette.

>Note

- Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.
- Keep the toner cassette horizontal to avoid spilling the toner.



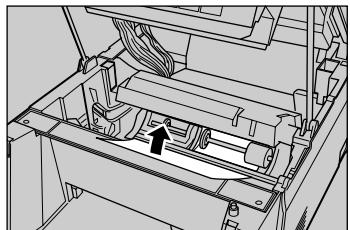
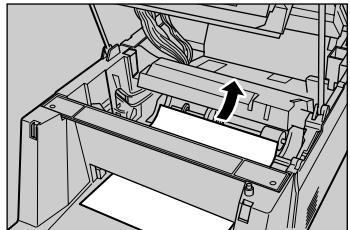
3 Pressing down on the paper release lever (blue) on the right side, pull out the misfed paper.



4 Pull out the misfed paper in the directions indicated by the arrows in the illustrations.

Note

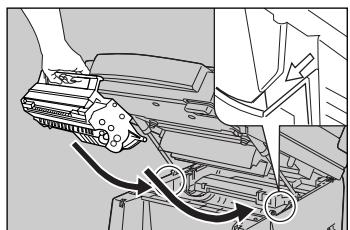
- If you are using the paper feed unit (option) and cannot clear the misfeed using this procedure, use the procedure on page 47 instead.
- Sometimes toner may get on your hands.



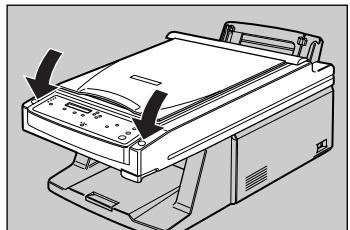
5 Install the toner cassette into the machine.

Note

- Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.
- Keep the toner cassette horizontal to avoid spilling the toner.
- Refer to page 2 for details on how to install the toner cassette.

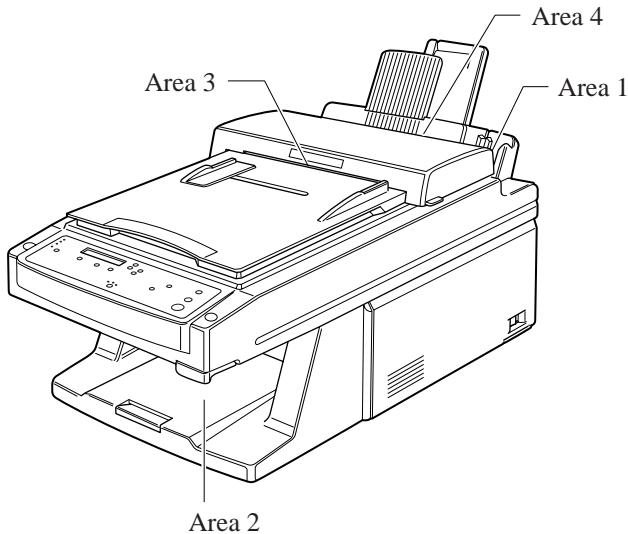


6 Close the top unit.

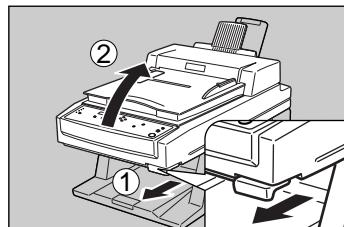


Important!

If a paper misfeed occurs during a copy job, make sure to specify the desired copy quantity again.

Type 2**Area 1 or 2**

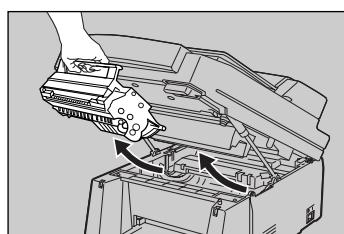
1 Pull the top release lever (①) and open the top unit (②).



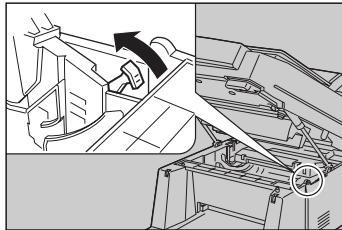
2 Pull out the toner cassette.

**Note**

- Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.
- Keep the toner cassette horizontal to avoid spilling the toner.



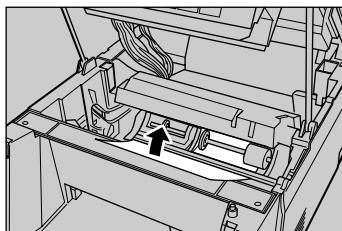
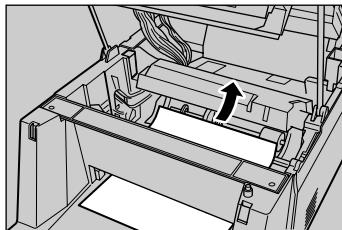
3 Pressing down on the paper release lever (blue) on the right side, pull out the misfed paper.



4 Pull out the misfed paper in the directions indicated by the arrows in the illustrations.

Note

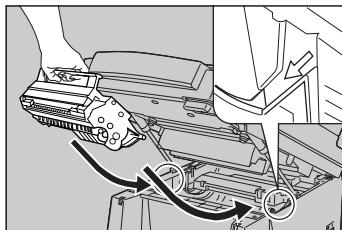
- If you are using the paper feed unit (option) and cannot clear the misfeed using this procedure, use the procedure on page 47 instead.
- Sometimes toner may get on your hands.



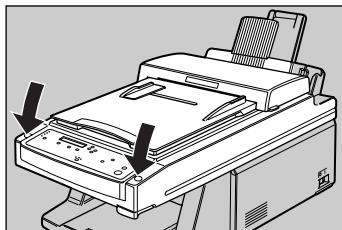
5 Install the toner cassette into the machine.

Note

- Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.
- Keep the toner cassette horizontal to avoid spilling the toner.
- Refer to page 2 for details on how to install the toner cassette.



6 Close the top unit.



Important!

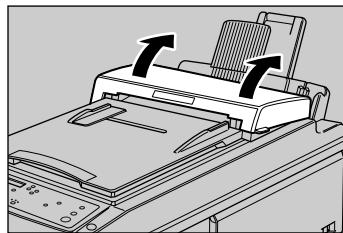
If a paper misfeed occurs during a copy job, make sure to specify the desired copy quantity again.

Area 3 or 4

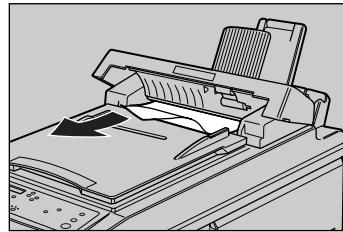
1 Open the ADF cover.



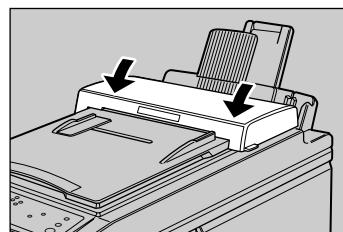
Be sure to open the ADF cover before pulling out the misfed original. Failure to do so can result in damage to the original.



2 Pull out the misfed original.



3 Close the ADF cover, and make sure it locks securely into place.

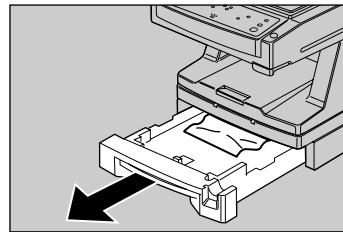


Important!
Make sure to specify the desired copy quantity again.

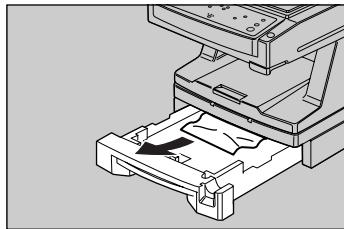
Paper feed unit

Use the following procedure when the misfed paper cannot be removed using the procedure on page 43 (for Type 1) or page 45 (for Type 2).

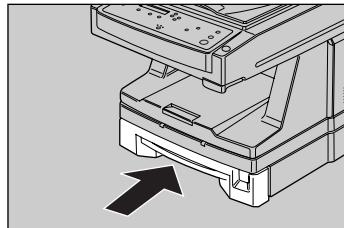
1 Pull out the paper tray.



2 Pull out the misfed paper.



3 Slide the paper tray back into the paper feed unit until it locks into place.



Tip

If you cannot find a remedy for unexpected printout results here, check the printer driver's online help for other useful information.

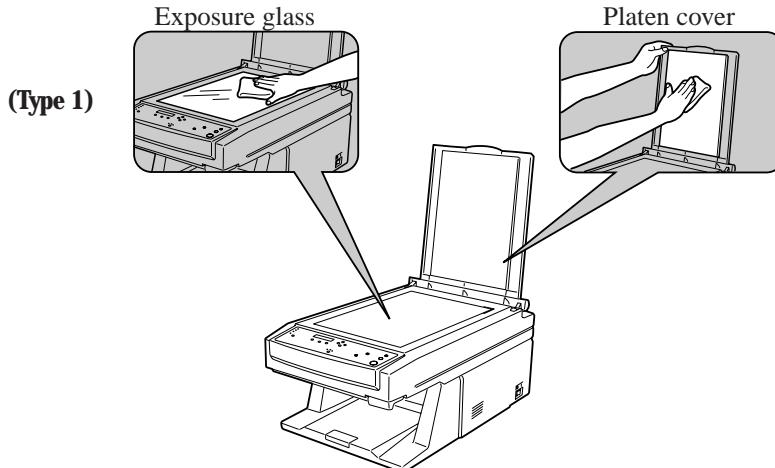
6. USER MAINTENANCE

Daily Maintenance

Clean with a damp cloth and wipe dry.

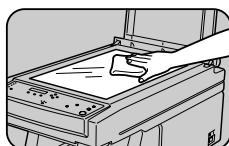


Turn off the machine before cleaning



(Type 2)

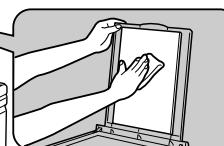
Exposure glass



ADF



Platen cover



Platen



Replacing the Toner Cassette And the Cleaning Pad

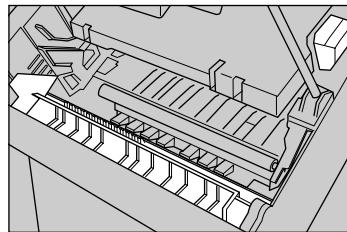
Printing on A4 size paper under the recommended temperature and humidity conditions noted in the table under “Conditions” on page 1, you can expect a toner cassette to print approximately 3,000 pages when you are printing typical business letters that have text covering 5% of the total surface. The starter cassette that comes with the machine can print approximately 1,000 pages. Pages that contain graphics use more toner and shortens the life of a toner cassette.

⚠ WARNING

- 🚫 Do not incinerate used toner or toner containers. Toner dust might ignite when exposed to an open flame. Dispose of the used toner cassettes according to local regulations for plastics.
- 🚫 This machine has been tested for safety using this supplier's parts and consumables. We recommend you only use these specified supplies.

⚠ CAUTION

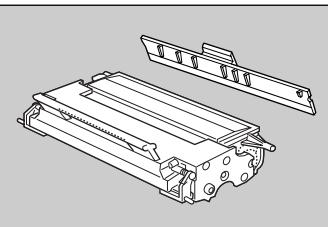
- ⚠ When replacing the toner cassette and cleaning pad, do not touch the fusing section because it could be very hot.



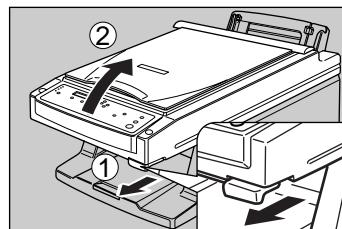
- 1 Open the box of the new toner cassette and check to make sure it contains a toner cassette and cleaning pad.

>Note

Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.



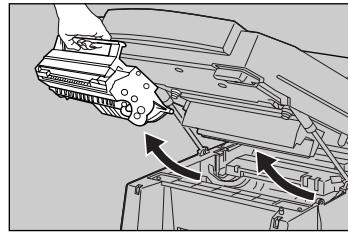
- 2 Pull the top release lever (①) and open the top unit (②).



3 Holding the toner cassette by its handle and pull it out.



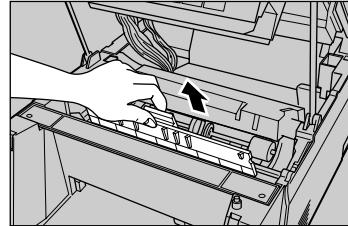
Keep the toner cassette horizontal to avoid spilling the toner.



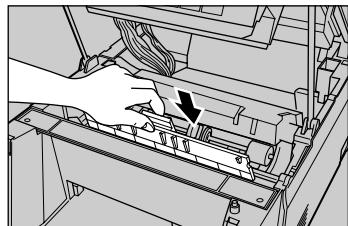
4 Remove the old cleaning pad.



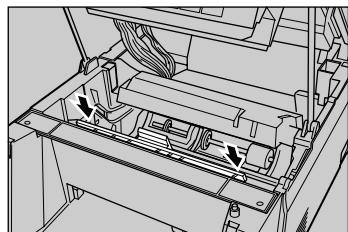
Be sure to grasp the green handle when removing the cleaning pad.



5 Insert the new cleaning pad into place by grasping the green handle.



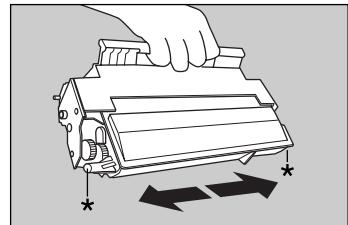
6 Press down gently but firmly on both sides of the pad to make sure that it is inserted as far as it can go.
Do not forget to install the cleaning pad whenever you install a new toner cassette.



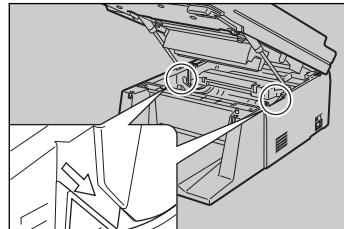
7 Prepare the new toner cassette. Holding the toner cassette by its handle, gently shake it side to side 5 or 6 times to evenly distribute the toner inside.



Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.



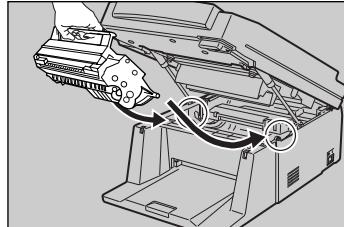
8 Look inside the machine and note the locations of the arrows that indicate the toner cassette guides on either side.



9 Make sure the plastic pins (marked with “*” in the illustration next to step above) on either side of the toner cassette slide along the guides inside the machine.



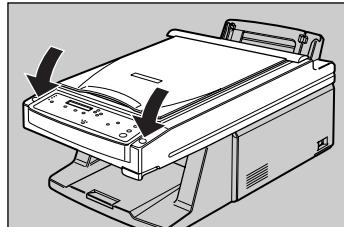
Note
Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.



10 To close the top unit, press down firmly but gently on both sides of it until the top unit closes and clicks securely into place.



Note
Background gray cast is sometimes evident just after installing a new toner cassette.



Storage

Paper

Paper should always be stored properly. Improperly stored paper might result in poor image reproduction, creased copies, or paper misfeeds. Generally, avoid paper curling and absorption of moisture.

- Avoid storing paper in humid areas. In high-temperature and high-humidity, or low-temperature and low-humidity conditions, store paper in a vinyl bag.
- Do not store paper where it will be exposed to heat.
- Store on a flat surface.
- Use older stock first.
- Do not lay heavy objects on paper.
- Keep open reams of paper in the package, and store as you would unopened paper.

Toner Cassette

- Keep the toner cassette inside the packaging that it comes packed in whenever it is removed from the machine.
- Store horizontally in a cool, dark place.
- Never store a toner cassette where it will be exposed to heat.
- Do not lay heavy objects on the toner cassette.

CAUTION

Keep toner cassettes out of children's reach.

7. TECHNICAL REFERENCE

Printing the Help List

You can print out the help list.

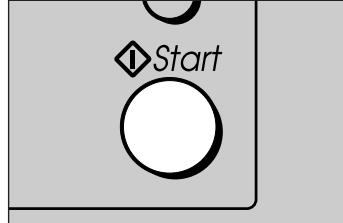
- 1 While the machine is not performing any other operation, press . The message “Prt Help List” appears.

Prt Help List 

- 2 Press . “Press Start” appears.

Press Start

- 3 Press  to print the Help List.



Note

Print on A4, Letter, or Legal paper.

Selecting the Language

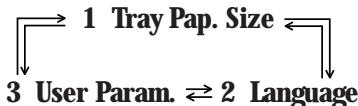
The language for the display can be selected from the following:
English, French, Spanish, Italian, German, Swedish

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>. "Prt Help List" appears.

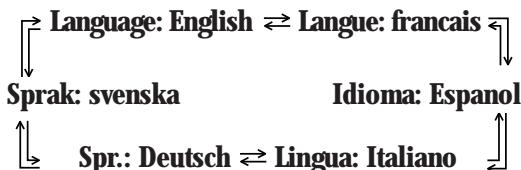
Prt Help List 

2 Press  or  until "2 Language" appears. The messages change in the following order.

2 Language 



3 Press  and press  or  until the desired language appears. The languages change in the following order.



4 Press . "Please wait", then "Registered" appears.

Please wait



Note

- Do not turn off the machine while "Please wait" or "Registered" is displayed.
- The setting is not registered, if  is not pressed.

Registered

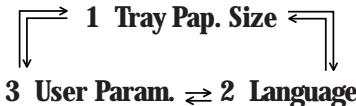
Selecting 300 dpi or 600 dpi

Set the printer to 300 dpi if the designated output is not obtained when printing using a DOS application compatible with the 300 dpi PCL printer.

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>. “Prt Help List” appears.

Prt Help List 

2 Press  or  until “3 User Param.” appears. The messages change in the following order:



3 Press  and press  to move the flashing block cursor until it appears in the position shown in the illustration to the right.

02:0010  0000 

 **Note**

The bits other than the one highlighted in the illustration are unrelated to this setting.

4 Press  to change the setting to 1 or 0, as desired.

| Display | Heater status |
|--------------|---------------------------|
| 02:0010 0000 | 600 dpi (default setting) |
| 02:0010 1000 | 300 dpi |

5 Press . “Please wait”, then “Registered” appears.

 **Note**

- To cancel this change, press  or  instead of . “Please wait” and “Not Registered” appear on the display.
- Do not turn off the machine while “Please wait”, “Registered” or “Not Registered” is displayed.

Please wait

Registered

Economy Mode

The Economy mode can be selected to save power. If no operation is performed for 5 minutes, the display becomes blank and all the indicators go out. If no operation is performed in the next 10 minutes or 235 minutes (according to the setting), the heater turns off.

The economy mode is on as the default setting.

| Economy mode | Operation panel off | Heater off |
|----------------------|---------------------|--|
| ON (default setting) | 5 minutes | 15 minutes (including time when operation panel is off) |
| OFF | 5 minutes | 240 minutes (including time when operation panel is off) |

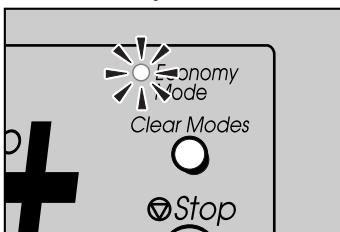
Note

- During the Economy Mode, the heater turns back on in the following cases.
 - ◆ when any key on the operation panel is pressed
 - ◆ when the platen cover is opened
 - ◆ when paper is set in or removed from the upper paper tray (Type 2)
 - ◆ when the tray of the paper feed unit (option) is pulled out or pushed back into the machine
- When a key on the operation panel is pressed to turn the heater on, the key does not perform its normal function.
- After the heater is turned back on, the previous %, quantity, and Sort On settings are cleared.

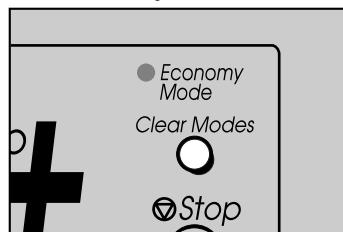
Changing the Economy Mode

Hold down the Clear modes key for approximately 1 second until the Economy mode indicator lights or goes out, as required.

Economy Mode ON



Economy Mode OFF



Selecting Toner Saving Mode

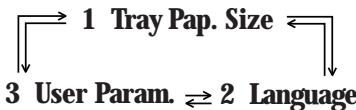
The toner saving mode status has two settings.

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>. “Prt Help List” appears.

Prt Help List 

2 Press  or  until “3 User Param.” appears. The messages change in the following order:

3 User param. 



3 Press  and press  to move the flashing block cursor until it appears in one of the positions shown in the illustration to the right.

02:0000 0■00 



The bits other than the one highlighted in the illustration are unrelated to this setting.

4 Press   to change the bit setting to 1 or 0, as desired.

| Display | Heater status |
|--------------|------------------------------|
| 02:0000 0000 | Off (Default) |
| 02:0000 0100 | On (Density will be lighter) |

5 Press . “Please wait”, then “Registered” appears.

Please wait



- To cancel this change, press  or  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> instead of . “Please wait” and “Not Registered” appear on the display.
- Do not turn off the machine while “Please wait”, “Registered” or “Not Registered” is displayed.

Registered

8. SPECIFICATIONS

General Specifications

| Type 1 | Type 1, Type 2 |
|---|---|
| Paper Capacity | Power Supply |
| Upper tray plain paper (80 g/m ² : 20 lb.) 100 sheets | AC 220 to 240 V 50/60 Hz |
| Option paper unit plain paper (80 g/m ² : 20 lb.) 250 sheets | Power Consumption |
| Output tray Capacity plain paper (80 g/m ² : 20 lb.) 50 sheets | Max 480 W Printing (Average) 215 W Copying (Average) 240 W Stand-by (Average) 75 W Economy Mode 15 W |
| Memory 4 MB (Expandable to 8 MB, 16 MB or 32 MB) EDO SIMM, 60 ns, 72 pin | Operating Environment |
| Dimensions 249mm × 352mm × 576mm (H×W×D) 9.81" × 13.87" × 22.69" (H×W×D) | Temperature /Humidity 10°C (50°F) to 35°C (95°F) 15% to 80% |
| Weight 15.0 kg (33.08 lb) | Machine Life 30,000 sheets/5 years |
| Type 2 | Printer Duty 6,000 sheets/1 month |
| Paper Capacity | Scanner Duty 2,000 sheets/1 month |
| Upper tray plain paper (80 g/m ² : 20 lb.) 100 sheets | Paper Sizes |
| Option paper unit plain paper (80 g/m ² : 20 lb.) 250 sheets | Plain paper A4 = 210 mm × 297 mm A5 = 148 mm × 210 mm Letter (LT) = 8 1/2" × 11" Legal (LG) = 8 1/2" × 14" Half Letter = 8 1/2" × 5 1/2" F4 = 8 1/4" × 13" Government Letter = 8" × 13" Government Legal = 8" × 10 1/2" |
| ADF (Auto Document Feeder) Capacity plain paper: A4, LT, LG (80 g/m ² : 20 lb) 10 sheets | Envelopes C5 = 162 mm × 229 mm C6 = 114 mm × 162 mm DL = 110 mm × 220 mm |
| Output tray Capacity plain paper (80 g/m ² : 20 lb.) 50 sheets | Other Transparencies Label Paper |
| Memory 4 MB (Expandable to 8 MB, 16MB or 32MB) EDO SIMM, 60 ns, 72 pin | |
| Dimensions 297mm × 352mm × 576mm (H×W×D) 11.70" × 13.87" × 22.69" (H×W×D) | |
| Weight 15.5 kg (34.18 lb) | |

Printing Specifications

| | |
|---|---|
| Printer Language | Resident Font |
| PCL 5e emulation | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dutch 801 SWC • Dutch 801 Italic SWC • Dutch 801 Bold SWC • Dutch 801 Bold Italic SWC • Swiss 742 SWC • Swiss 742 Italic SWC • Swiss 742 Bold SWC • Swiss 742 Bold Italic SWC • Swiss 742 Condensed SWC • Swiss 742 Condensed Italic SWC • Swiss 742 Condensed Bold SWC • Swiss 742 Condensed Bold Italic SWC • Incised 901 SWC • Incised 901 Italic SWC • Incised 901 Bold SWC • Fixed Pitch 810 Courier Roman SWC • Fixed Pitch 810 Courier Bold SWC • Fixed Pitch 810 Courier Italic SWC • Fixed Pitch 810 Courier Bold Italic SWC • Fixed Pitch 850 Letter Gothic 12 pitch/text SWC • Fixed Pitch 850 Letter Gothic Bold 12 pitch/text SWC • Fixed Pitch 850 Letter Gothic Italic 12 pitch/text SWC • Flareserif 821 SWC • Flareserif 821 Extra Bold SWC • Ribbon 131 SWC • Wingbats SWM |
| Print Resolution | |
| 600 dpi × 600 dpi | |
| 1200 dpi × 600 dpi (enhanced) | |
| Print Speed | |
| 6 ppm (page per minute) | |
| Paper/Media Types | |
| Plain paper | |
| Envelopes | |
| Transparencies | |
| Label paper | |
| Paper Weight | |
| 60 to 90 g/m ² (16 to 24 lb) | |
| Interface | |
| IEEE 1284 compatible | |

Copying Specifications

| | |
|---|---|
| Copy Speed 6 cpm (copy per minute) | Paper Weight 60 to 90 g/m ² (16 to 24 lb) |
| Warm-up Time 30 seconds or less | Original Types Exposure glass (Type 1/Type 2) Sheet/Book |
| First copy 17 seconds or less | ADF (Type 2) Plain paper (80 g/m ² : 20 lb) |
| Multiple Copies Up to 99 copies | Maximum Original Size A4, 8 1/2" × 14" |
| Copy Reduction and Enlargement 50%, 71%, 82%, 87%, 93%, 115%, 122%, 141%, 200% | Copy Resolution 600 dpi × 600 dpi |
| Paper/Media Types Plain paper Envelopes Transparencies Label paper | |

INDEX

| | |
|---|-------------|
| 1 | F |
| 1 to 1 Copy | 27 |
| A | |
| Additional Printer | 15 |
| Auto image density | 34 |
| Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) | ix |
| Setting an original | 35 |
| B | |
| Book Copy | 29 |
| C | |
| Check Display | x |
| Clearing a Paper Misfeed | 43 |
| cleaning pad | 50 |
| Computer port | viii, ix |
| Connecting a Second Printer (Additional Printer) | 15 |
| Connecting to a computer | 7 |
| Connector | 16 |
| Copy Mode key | xi |
| Corner guides | 16, 18 |
| D | |
| Daily Maintenance | 49 |
| Density key | x |
| Display | xi |
| Document guides | ix |
| Document output tray | ix |
| Installing | 6 |
| E | |
| Economy Mode | 58 |
| Economy Mode/Clear Modes key | xi |
| Enlarge | x |
| Enlargement | 30 |
| envelopes | 14 |
| Exposure glass | viii, ix |
| Extend tray | viii, ix |
| H | |
| Front guide | 16, 19 |
| Front paper support | 16 |
| I | |
| image density | 34 |
| Installing | |
| Document output tray | 6 |
| Toner cassette | 2 |
| Upper paper Tray | 4 |
| L | |
| label paper | 14 |
| Language | 55 |
| Limit mark | 10, 16, 18 |
| Loading Paper | 10 |
| Loading | |
| plain paper | 10 |
| small size paper | 12 |
| other media | 14 |
| Location | 1 |
| M | |
| Memory Copy (Type 1 only) | xi, 28 |
| Metal plate | 10, 16, 18 |
| Multiple Copies | 28 |
| O | |
| OK | xi |
| Operation Panel | viii, ix, x |
| Original | |
| Setting (Exposure glass) | 27 |
| Setting (ADF) | 35 |
| Requirements (ADF) | 36 |
| Original Guide | ix |
| Output tray | viii, ix |

P

| | |
|-----------------------------|----------|
| Paper and Other Media | 9 |
| Paper Select | x |
| paper size | |
| Changing | 19 |
| Specifying (upper) | 11, 13 |
| Specifying (lower) | 19 |
| Paper size indicator | 16, 19 |
| Paper Feed Unit | 16 |
| PC Interface | x |
| Photo1 | 33 |
| Photo2 | 33 |
| Platen cover | viii, ix |
| Power socket | viii, ix |
| Power switch | viii, ix |
| printer driver | |
| Windows 95 | 23 |
| Windows 3.1 | 24 |

Q

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Quantity keys | x |
|---------------------|---|

R

| | |
|--------------------------------|----|
| Reduce | x |
| Reduction | 30 |
| Replacing | |
| Toner cassette | 50 |
| cleaning pad | 50 |
| resolution/photo setting | 33 |

S

| | |
|---|----------|
| Safety Information | i |
| Scanner lock | viii, ix |
| Unlocking | 3 |
| Second Printer (Additional Printer) port | viii, ix |

Second Printer (Additional Printer)

| | |
|--|------------|
| Connecting | 15 |
| Using | 26 |
| Side guide | 16, 19 |
| SIMM cover | viii, ix |
| SIMM | 21 |
| Small size paper feed access panel | viii, ix |
| small size paper | 12 |
| sort | 37 |
| Sort/Memory Copy (Type 2 only) | xi, 28, 33 |
| SPECIFICATIONS | 61 |
| Start | x |
| Stop | xi |
| Storage | 53 |

T

| | |
|-------------------------|----------|
| Text Fine | 33 |
| Toner cassette | |
| Installing | 2 |
| Replacing | 50 |
| Top release lever | viii, ix |
| Top unit | viii, ix |
| transparencies | 14 |
| TROUBLESHOOTING | 39 |
| Type 1 | viii |
| Type 2 | ix |

U

| | |
|--|-----------------|
| Upgrading Memory | 21 |
| Upper paper tray | viii, ix, 4, 10 |
| User Parameter | 56, 59 |
| Using the Second Printer (Additional Printer) .. | 26 |

Z

| | |
|------------|--------|
| Zoom | xi, 32 |
|------------|--------|



Overseas Affiliates

U.S.A.

RICOH CORPORATION
5 Dedrick Place
West Caldwell, New Jersey
07006
Phone: +1-973-882-2000

The Netherlands

RICOH EUROPE B.V.
Groenelaan 3, 1186 AA,
Amstelveen
Phone: +31-(0)20-5474111

United Kingdom

RICOH UK LTD.
Ricoh House,
1 Plane Tree Crescent,
Feltham,
Middlesex, TW13 7HG
Phone: +44-(0)181-261-4000

Germany

RICOH DEUTSCHLAND
GmbH
Mergenthalerallee 38-40,
65760 Eschborn
Phone: +49-(0)6196-9060

France

RICOH FRANCE S.A.
383, Avenue du Général
de Gaulle
BP 307-92143 Clamart
Cedex
Phone: +33-(0)1-40-94-38-38

Spain

RICOH ESPAÑA S.A.
Avda. Litoral Mar, 12-14,
08005 Barcelona
Phone: +34-(0)93-295-7600

Italy

RICOH ITALIA SpA
Via della Metallurgia 12,
37139 Verona
Phone: +39-(0)45-8181500

Hong Kong

RICOH HONG KONG LTD.
23/F., China Overseas
Building,
139, Hennessy Road,
Wan Chai, Hong Kong
Phone: +852-2862-2888

Singapore

RICOH ASIA PACIFIC
PTE,LTD.
260 Orchard Road,
#15-01/02 The Heeren,
Singapore 238855
Phone: +65-830-5888

SUPPLIES MODEL NAME

The correct model name of supplies for
your Bizworks is:
RICOH TONER CASSETTE TYPE 1120D BLACK

RICOH CO., LTD.

Ohmori NM Building, 1-1 Ohmori-kita 2-chome
Ota-ku, Tokyo, 143-0016, Japan

Printed in the Netherlands

EE AE G026-8600



Overseas Affiliates

U.S.A.

RICOH CORPORATION
5 Dedrick Place
West Caldwell, New Jersey
07006
Phone: +1-973-882-2000

The Netherlands

RICOH EUROPE B.V.
Groenelaan 3, 1186 AA,
Amstelveen
Phone: +31-(0)20-5474111

United Kingdom

RICOH UK LTD.
Ricoh House,
1 Plane Tree Crescent,
Feltham,
Middlesex, TW13 7HG
Phone: +44-(0)181-261-4000

Germany

RICOH DEUTSCHLAND
GmbH
Mergenthalerallee 38-40,
65760 Eschborn
Phone: +49-(0)6196-9060

France

RICOH FRANCE S.A.
383, Avenue du Général
de Gaulle
BP 307-92143 Clamart
Cedex
Phone: +33-(0)1-40-94-38-38

Spain

RICOH ESPAÑA S.A.
Avda. Litoral Mar, 12-14,
08005 Barcelona
Phone: +34-(0)93-295-7600

Italy

RICOH ITALIA SpA
Via della Metallurgia 12,
37139 Verona
Phone: +39-(0)45-8181500

Hong Kong

RICOH HONG KONG LTD.
23/F., China Overseas
Building,
139, Hennessy Road,
Wan Chai, Hong Kong
Phone: +852-2862-2888

Singapore

RICOH ASIA PACIFIC
PTE.LTD.
260 Orchard Road,
#15-01/02 The Heeren,
Singapore 238855
Phone: +65-830-5888

SUPPLIES MODEL NAME

The correct model name of supplies for
your Bizworks is:
RICOH TONER CASSETTE TYPE 1120D BLACK

RICOH CO., LTD.

15-5, 1 chome, Minami-Aoyama, Minato-ku, Tokyo,
Phone: Tokyo 3479-3111

Printed in China

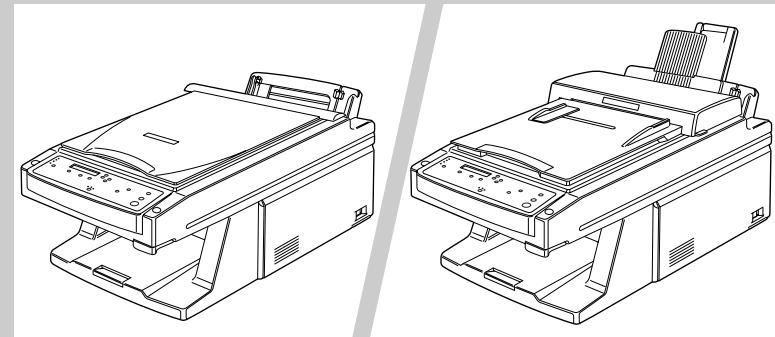
UE G026-8547

RICOH

RICOH
Biz
works****
406e/406eDF

Operation Manual

Read this manual carefully before you use this product and keep
it handy for future reference. For safety, please follow the
instructions in this manual.



RICOH CORPORATION
CALLING FOR SERVICE

For service in the United States, call:

1-800-RICOH38 (1-800-742-6438)

Introduction

This manual contains detailed instructions on the operation and maintenance of this machine. To get maximum versatility from this machine, all operators should carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual. Please keep this manual in a handy place near the machine.

Please read the safety information on pages i - iii of this manual. It contains Important Information related to user safety and preventing equipment problems.

Laser Safety:

The optical housing unit can only be repaired in a factory or at a location with the requisite equipment. The laser subsystem is replaceable in the field by a qualified Customer Engineer. The laser chassis is not repairable in the field. Customer engineers are therefore directed to return all chassis and laser subsystems to the factory or service depot when replacement of the optical subsystem is required.

Notes:

- Model names for the machines do not appear in the following pages. Check the type of your machine before reading this manual.
Type 1 Bizworks 406e
Type 2 Bizworks 406eDF
- Some illustrations may be slightly different from your machine.
- Certain types may not be available in some countries. For details, contact your local dealer.

Two kinds of size notation are employed in this manual. With this machine refer to the metric version.

For good print quality, Ricoh recommends that you use genuine Ricoh toner.

Ricoh shall not be responsible for any damage or expense that may result from the use of parts other than genuine Ricoh parts in your Ricoh office product.

Power Source: 120 V, 60 Hz, 4.2 A

Please make sure to connect the power cord to a power source as above. For details about power connection, refer to page 8.

Trademarks

Microsoft, Windows, and MS-DOS are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights in those marks.

In accordance with ISO Standard 7001, this machine uses the following symbols for the main switch:

- | means POWER ON.
- means POWER OFF.

INFORMATION TO THE USER

USA FCC Part 15 Class B

NOTE

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications.

However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Properly shielded and grounded cables and connectors must be used for connections to host computer in order to meet FCC emission limits.

WARNING

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

COMPLIANCE INFORMATION STATEMENT

Declaration of Conformity

RICOH Bizworks
406/406DF
RICOH CORPORATION
5 Dedrick Place West Caldwell, New Jersey 07006
973-882-2000

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

CANADA Class B

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.
Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

Safety Information

When using your machine, the following safety precautions should always be followed.

Types of warnings used in this manual



WARNING

Ignoring this warning could cause serious injury or even death.



CAUTION

Ignoring this caution could cause injury or damage to property.

Symbol examples



The \triangle symbol means a situation that requires you take care.



The \otimes symbol means you MUST NOT carry out this operation.
This example means “Do not take apart.”



The \bullet symbol means you MUST perform this operation.
This example means “You must remove the wall plug.”

Microsoft[®], Windows[®], and MS-DOS[®] are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Other product names used here in are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights in those marks.

⚠ WARNING:

| | |
|---|---|
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Use of controls or adjustment or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Only connect the machine to the power source described on the inside of the front cover.Avoid multi-wiring.Do not damage, break or make any modifications to the power cord. Do not place heavy objects on it, pull it hard or bend it more than necessary. These actions could cause an electric shock or fire.Do not plug or unplug the power cord with your hands wet. Otherwise, an electric shock might occur. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Make sure the wall outlet is near the machine and freely accessible so that in event of an emergency it can be unplugged easily. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Do not remove any covers or screws other than those specified in this manual. Some parts of the machine are at a high voltage and could give you an electric shock. Also, reflected eye contact with the laser beam may cause serious eye damage. When the machine needs to be checked, adjusted, or repaired, contact your service representative.Do not take apart or attempt any modifications to this machine. There is a risk of fire, electric shock, explosion or loss of sight. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">If the machine looks damaged or breaks down, smoke is coming out, there is a strange smell or anything looks unusual, immediately turn off the power switch then unplug the power cord from the wall. Do not continue using the machine in this condition. Contact your service representative.If metal, liquid or foreign matter falls into the machine, turn off the power switch, and unplug the power cord. Contact your service representative. Do not keep using the machine with a fault or defect. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Do not put any metal objects or containers holding water (e.g. vases, flower-pots, glasses) on the machine. If the contents fall inside the machine, a fire or electric shock could occur. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Do not incinerate used toner or toner cassettes. Toner dust might ignite when exposed to an open flame. Dispose of the used toner cassettes according to local regulations for plastics. |

⚠ CAUTION:

| | |
|--|--|
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Keep the machine away from humidity and dust. A fire or an electric shock might occur.• Do not place the machine on an unstable or tilted surface. If it topples over, it could cause injury. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• When you move the machine, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet to avoid fire or electric shock.• When the machine is not be used for a long time, unplug the power cord. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• When you pull out the plug from the socket, grip the plug to avoid damaging the cord and causing fire or electric shock. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If you use the machine in a confined space, make sure there is a continuous air turnover. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Do not reuse stapled paper. Do not use aluminium foil, paper containing carbon or any other conductive paper. Otherwise, a fire might occur. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• When removing misfed paper, or replacing the toner cassette and the cleaning pad, do not touch the fusing section because it could be very hot. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• This machine has been tested for safety using this supplier's parts and consumables. We recommend you only use these specified supplies. |

Energy Star program



As an Energy Star partner, we have determined that this machine model meets the Energy Star Guidelines for energy efficiency.

The Energy Star Guidelines intend to establish an international energy-saving system for developing and introducing energy-efficient office equipment to deal with environmental issues, such as global warming.

When a product meets the Energy Star Guidelines for energy efficiency, the Partner shall place the Energy Star logo onto the machine model.

This product was designed to reduce the environmental impact associated with printing equipment by means of energy-saving features such as Low Power mode.

- **Low Power Mode**

This machine automatically lowers its power consumption 15 minutes after the last printing job has been completed. To exit Low Power mode, press any key on the operation panel.

The machine returns to the ready condition in about 22 seconds. To change the low Power delay, see page 60.

Specification

| | Type 1, 2 | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------|---------|
| Low Power Mode (Economy Mode) | Power consumption | 15 W |
| | Default delay | 15 min. |
| | Recovery time | 22 sec. |

Recycled paper

Please contact your sales or service representative for recommended recycled paper types that may be used in this machine.

Contents

| | |
|---------------------------|------|
| Safety Information | i |
| Energy Star program | iv |
| Part Names | viii |
| Operation Panel | x |

1. SETTING UP

| | |
|---|---|
| Package Contents | 1 |
| Location | 1 |
| Installing the Starter Toner Cassette | 2 |
| Unlocking the Scanner Lock | 3 |
| Installing the Upper Paper Tray | 4 |
| Other Settings for Type 2 | 5 |
| To remove the protective sheet | 5 |
| To install the document output tray | 5 |
| To pull out the output tray extension | 6 |
| Connecting to a computer | 7 |
| Turning On the Machine | 8 |

2. GETTING ACQUAINTED

| | |
|--|----|
| Paper and Other Media | 9 |
| Loading Paper | 10 |
| To load plain paper into the upper paper tray | 10 |
| To load small size paper | 12 |
| Loading Other Media | 14 |
| To load envelopes | 14 |
| To load transparencies | 14 |
| To load label paper | 14 |
| Connecting a Second Printer (Additional Printer) | 15 |
| To connect to a second printer | 15 |
| Installing the Paper Feed Unit (Option) | 16 |
| Paper Feed Unit Part Names | 16 |
| To install the Paper Feed Unit | 16 |
| To load paper into the paper feed unit | 18 |
| To change the paper size | 19 |
| To specify the paper size | 19 |
| To install the paper size indicator | 20 |

| | |
|---|----|
| To select the paper source | 20 |
| Upgrading Memory | 21 |
| 3. PRINTING AND SCANNING | |
| Setting up | 23 |
| Installing the Software Drivers | 23 |
| Features You Can Access From the Printer Driver | 25 |
| Using the Second Printer (Additional Printer) | 26 |
| To print to the second printer | 26 |
| 4. COPYING | |
| Making a Copy | 27 |
| Making Multiple Copies | 28 |
| Making a Book Copy | 29 |
| Reduction and Enlargement | 30 |
| To set the reduction factor | 30 |
| To set the enlargement factor | 31 |
| Zoom (In 1% Increments) | 32 |
| To use zoom | 32 |
| Adjusting the Copy Image | 33 |
| To select the resolution/photo setting | 33 |
| To adjust the image density | 33 |
| Setting an Original on the ADF (Type 2 only) | 35 |
| Sorting Output (Type 2 only) | 37 |
| To turn sorting on and off | 37 |
| 5. TROUBLESHOOTING | |
| General problems (printing, copying, scanning and Error massages) | 39 |
| Clearing a Paper Misfeed | 44 |
| Paper feed unit | 48 |
| When paper will not feed | 49 |
| 6. USER MAINTENANCE | |
| Daily Maintenance | 51 |
| Replacing the Toner Cassette And the Cleaning Pad | 52 |
| Storage | 55 |
| Paper | 55 |
| Toner Cassette | 55 |

| | |
|-----------------------------------|----|
| 7. TECHNICAL REFERENCE | |
| Printing the Help List | 56 |
| Selecting the Language | 57 |
| Selecting 300 dpi or 600 dpi..... | 58 |
| Economy Mode | 60 |
| Changing the Economy Mode | 60 |
| Selecting Toner Save Mode | 61 |
| 8. SPECIFICATIONS | 62 |
| Index | 65 |

Part Names

Type 1

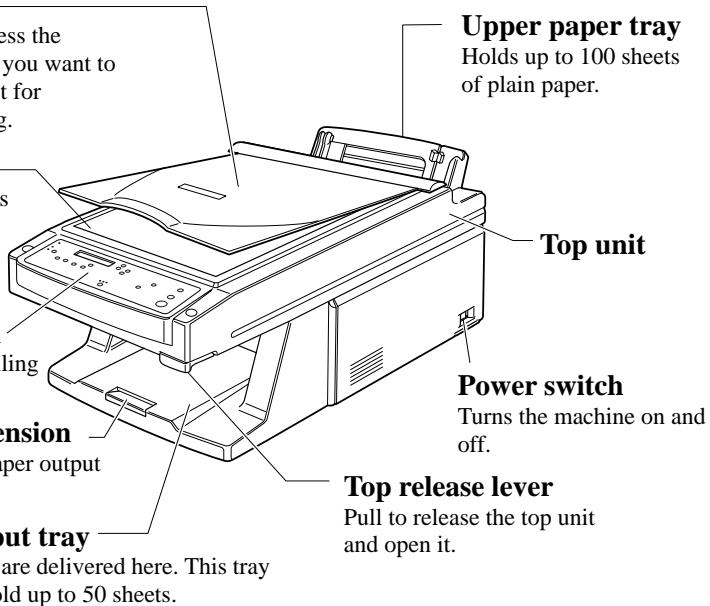
The following describes the Type 1 machine. This information also applies to the Type 2 machine, except where specifically noted in the next page.

Platen cover

Lift this cover to access the exposure glass when you want to place an original on it for copying and scanning.

Exposure glass

Place originals on this glass face down.

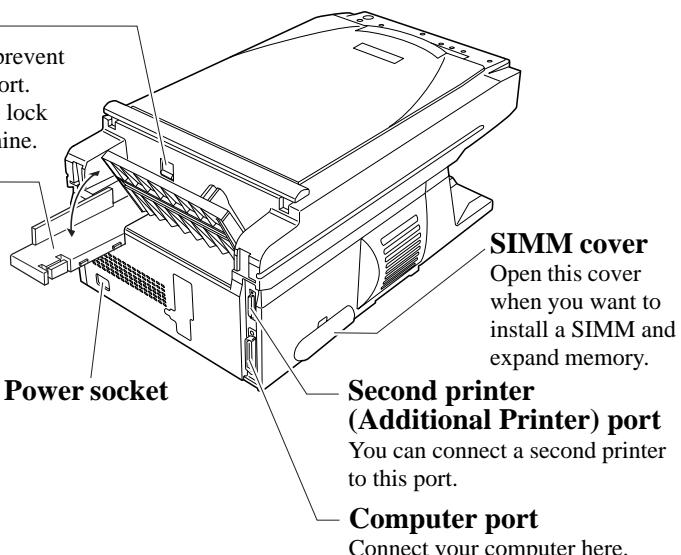


Scanner lock

Locks the scanner to prevent damage during transport. Be sure to release this lock before using the machine.

Small size paper feed access panel

This panel can be lowered to provide easier handling when printing on or copying to small size paper.



Type 2

The following describes the Type 2 machine.

Automatic document feeder (ADF)

Holds up to 10 sheets of paper for automatic feeding. Place originals face down.

Document guides

Slide the left guide to fit the size of the paper you are feeding.

Exposure glass

Operation panel

Output tray extension

Top release lever

Upper paper tray

Original guide

Guides the original correctly into the machine. Make sure your original fits under this guide.

Top unit

Power switch

Platen cover

Lift this cover to access the exposure glass when you want to scan a page from a book, magazine, or any other original that cannot be fed using the ADF.

Document output tray

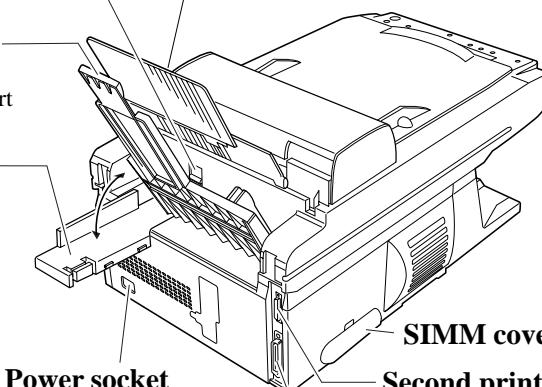
Scanned documents are delivered here.

Scannerlock

Upper tray extension

Extend to support originals.

Small size paper feed access panel

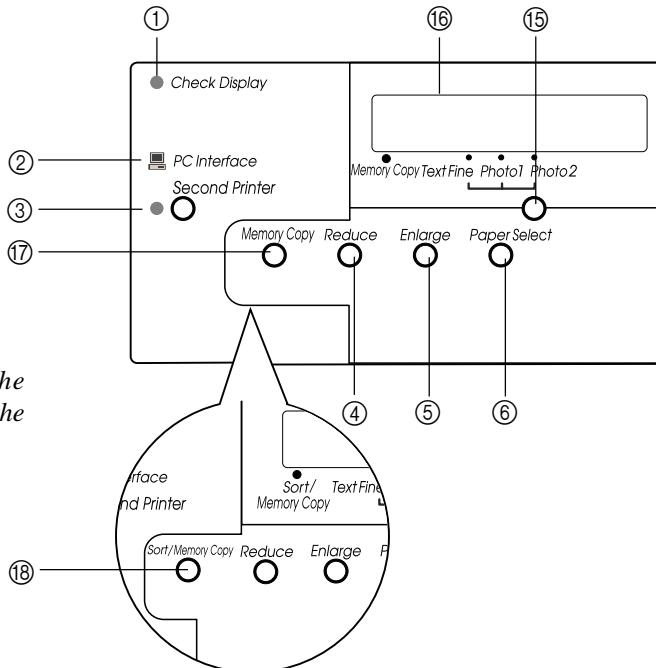


SIMM cover

Second printer (Additional Printer) port

Computer port

Operation Panel



Note

Be sure to panel the protective sheet from the operation panel

① Check Display

This indicator lights up to alert you to read the message on the display.

② PC Interface

This indicator lights while the machine is receiving data from a connected computer.

③ Second Printer

Pressing this key switches between printing on the machine (Second Printer indicator off) and printing on a second printer connected to the machine (Second Printer indicator on).

④ Reduce

Press this key to reduce an image during copying. Available reduction ratios are: 50%, 65%, 77%, 93% and LGL ▶ LTR.

⑤ Enlarge

Press this key to enlarge an image during copying. Available enlargement ratios are: 121%, 129%, 155%, 200% and LTR ▶ LGL.

⑥ Paper Select

Press this key to specify the paper size. When the paper feed unit (option) is installed, press this key to switch between paper sources.

⑦ Density key

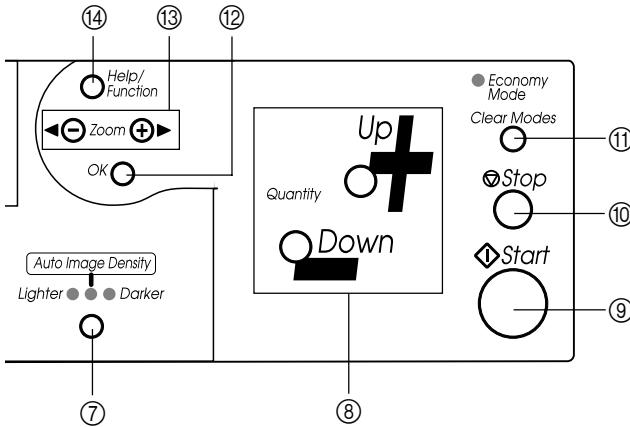
Press this key to select the image density settings: Darker, Auto, Lighter.

⑧ Quantity keys

Press these keys to specify the number of copies or to change numeric values on the display.

⑨ Start

Press this key to start an operation.



⑩ Stop

Press this key to interrupt the current ongoing procedure and return to the stand by state. This key operates as a kind of escape key.

Holding down this key for 3 seconds resets the printer mode.

⑪ Economy Mode/ Clear Modes key

Pressing this key cancels the ongoing operation and clears the settings of the current mode to their initial defaults.

Holding down this key for about one second switches the Economy Mode on and off.

Refer to "Economy Mode" on page 58.

⑫ OK

Press this key to execute an operation that is prompted by a message on the display.

⑬ Zoom

In copy mode, press these keys to fine-tune the preset reduction and enlargement ratios. Also use to select function settings and navigate the function menus.

⑭ Help/Function

Press this key and then input a function number to perform various settings and help list printing functions.

⑮ Copy Mode key

Press this key to specify the Copy Mode. A pointer (▼) appears on the display to indicate the current Text Fine/Photo1/Photo2 setting.

⑯ Display

Displays messages and prompts during operation.

⑰ Memory Copy (Type 1 only)

Press this key to select Memory Copy. (Your original will be scanned only once when making multiple copies.)

⑱ Sort/Memory Copy (Type 2 only)

Press this key to turn Sorting and Memory Copy on and off. Sorting is activated when the pointer is visible on the display above Sort/Memory Copy.

1. SETTING UP

Package Contents

Make sure that all of the items shown in the Package Contents sheet that comes with the machine are included.

| ⚠ WARNING | |
|------------------|---|
| ⚠ | Make sure the wall outlet is near the machine and freely accessible so that in event of an emergency it can be unplugged easily. |
| ⚠ | Do not put any metal objects or containers holding water (e.g. vases, flowerpots, glasses) on the machine. If the contents fall inside the machine, a fire or electric shock could occur. |
| ⚠ CAUTION | |
| ⚠ | Keep the machine away from humidity and dust. A fire or an electric shock might occur. |
| ⚠ | Do not place the machine on an unstable or tilted surface. If it topples over, it could cause injury. |
| ⚠ | If you use the machine in a confined space, make sure there is a continuous air turnover. |

Location

Environment

| | Acceptable | Recommended |
|-------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| Temperature | 10 to 35°C (50 to 95°F) | 15 to 25°C (59 to 77°F) |
| Humidity | 15 to 80% | 30 to 70% |

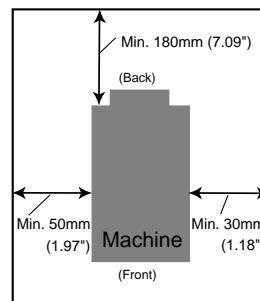
- The machine must be level within 3mm (0.11") both front to rear and left to right.

Locations to Avoid

- Avoid exposed to direct sunlight or strong light (more than 2,000 lux.).
- Avoid directly exposed to cool air from air conditioner's or heated air from heater's. Sudden temperature changes can cause condensation to form inside the machine.
- Avoid where the machine might be subjected to frequent strong vibration.
- Places higher than 2,500m (8,221ft.) above sea level.

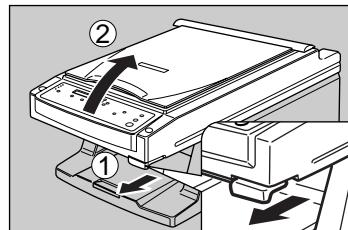
Machine Clearance

Place the machine near the wall outlet, providing minimum clearance as shown.



Installing the Starter Toner Cassette

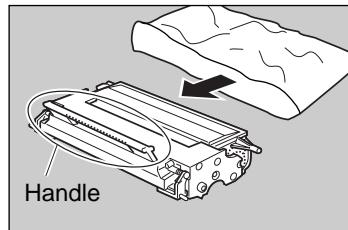
1 Pull the top release lever (①) and open the top unit (②).



2 Hold the starter toner cassette by its handle, and remove it from its vinyl bag.

⚠ CAUTION

Keep all plastic bags out of the reach of children.



⚠ Important!

Be sure to hold the starter toner cassette by its handle.

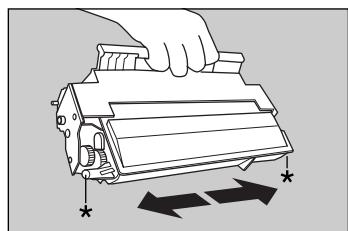
>Note

Keep the vinyl bag for later repackaging when necessary.

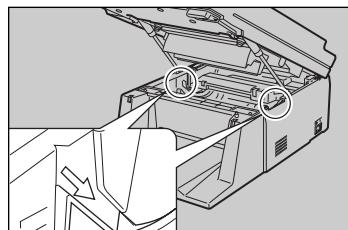
3 Holding the starter toner cassette by its handle, gently shake it side to side 5 or 6 times to evenly distribute the toner inside.

⚠ Important!

Be sure to hold the starter toner cassette by its handle.



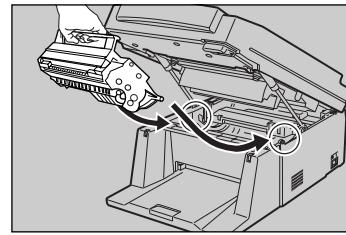
4 Look inside the machine and note the locations of the arrows that indicate the toner cassette guides on either side.



5 Make sure the plastic pins (marked with “*” in the illustration next to step 3) on either side of the starter toner cassette slide along the guides inside the machine.

 **Note**

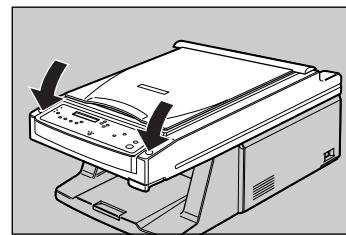
Be sure to hold the starter toner cassette by its handle.



6 To close the top unit, press down firmly but gently on both sides of it until the top unit closes and clicks securely into place.

 **Note**

Background gray cast is sometimes evident just after installing a new toner cassette.



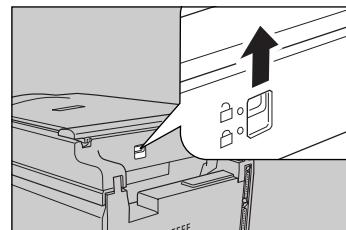
Unlocking the Scanner Lock

 **Important**

Be sure to unlock the scanner lock before using the machine.

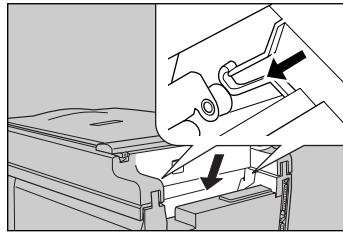
The machine will not operate correctly if the scanner lock is not unlocked.

1 Unlock the scanner lock which is located at the back of the machine.



Installing the Upper Paper Tray

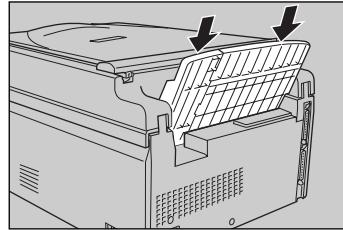
- 1 Look at the rear of the machine and note the locations of the slots for insertion of the upper paper tray on both sides.



- 2 To install the upper paper tray, press down on both sides of the tray, making sure that it is inserted as far as it will go.

 **Note**

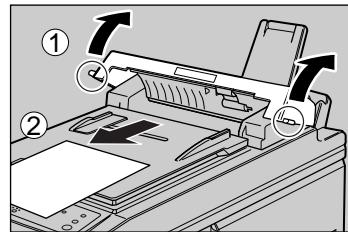
Paper will not be fed correctly into the machine if the upper paper tray is not inserted all the way in.



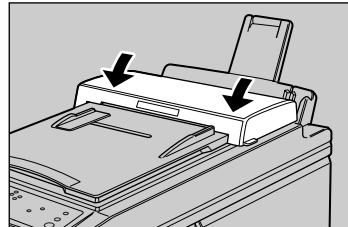
Other Settings for Type 2

To remove the protective sheet

- 1 Open the ADF cover (①) and then remove the protective sheet (②).

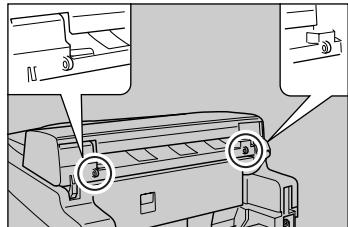


- 2 Close the ADF cover and make sure it locks securely into place.

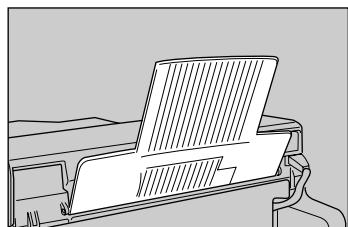


To install the document output tray

- 1 Look at the rear of the machine to confirm where the document output tray should fit.



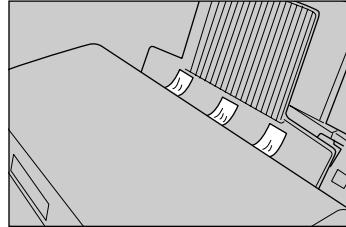
- 2 Insert the pin at one side of the tray by gently bending the document tray until it fits in the insert hole.



3 Make sure the small pieces of plastic film curl upwards as shown.

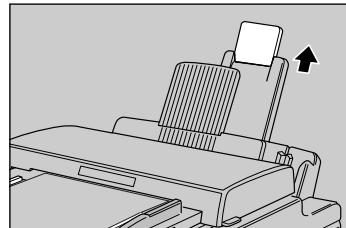
! *Important!*

The original will not be delivered properly, if the films are not set as shown.



To pull out the output tray extension

1 To pull out the output tray extension as shown.



Connecting to a computer

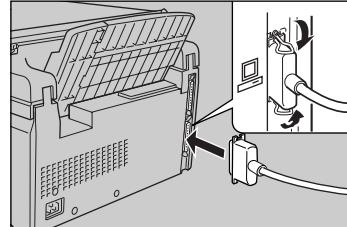
! Important!

Make sure that the power of both the machine and your computer is turned off before making the connection.

- 1** **Plug one end of the your parallel cable into the lower port on the side of the machine, and secure it in place as shown in the illustration.**

>Note

- *The machine must be connected to a computer for printing.*
- *Use the cable that comes with the machine to connect to your computer.*



- 2** **Connect the other end of the parallel cable to your computer's parallel printer port.**

Turning On the Machine

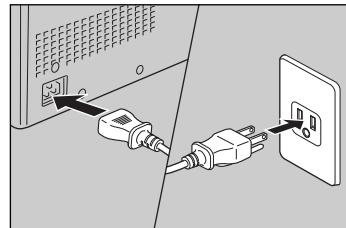
⚠ WARNING

- Only connect the machine to the power source described on the inside of the front cover.
- Avoid multi-wiring.
- Do not damage, break or make any modifications to the power cable. Do not place heavy objects on it, pull it hard or bend it more than necessary. These actions could cause an electric shock or fire.
- Do not plug or unplug the power cord with your hands wet. Otherwise, an electric shock might occur.

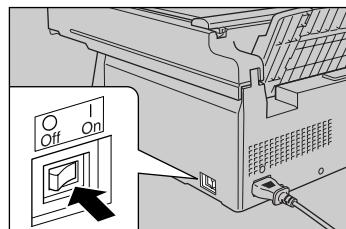
⚠ Important!

When you turn on the machine for the first time after the installation, make sure that no paper is loaded beforehand.

- 1 Attach the power cable to the machine and plug the other end into a outlet.



- 2 Turn on the machine.



2. GETTING ACQUAINTED



Important!

☞ The default display language is English. For how to change to your preferred language, see page 57.

Paper and Other Media

The machine supports printing on the following types of paper/media from the upper paper tray.

Refer to the following pages for details.

| Paper/Media type (Paper size) | | Display | Page |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|------------------|----------|
| Plain paper | Letter (8½" × 11") | Letter (8½ × 11) | p.11 |
| | Half Letter | 5½ × 8½ | p.11 |
| | Legal (8½" × 14") | Legal (8½ × 14) | p.11 |
| | A4 (210mm × 297mm) | A4 | p.11 |
| | A5 (148mm × 210mm) | A5 | p.11 |
| | F4 (8¼" × 13") | 8¼ × 13 | p.11 |
| Envelopes | Executive | Exec (7¼ × 10½) | p.13, 15 |
| | COM 10 | Com 10 (4⅛ × 9½) | p.13, 15 |
| | Monarch | Mon. (3⅞ × 7½) | p.13, 15 |
| Transparencies | | | p.15 |
| Label paper | | | p.15 |



Note

Do not attempt to use the following types of paper: wrinkled or creased paper, curled or rolled paper, paper containing carbon, carbon-backed paper, coated paper, onion skin or other very thin paper.



CAUTION



Do not reuse stapled paper. Do not use aluminium foil, paper containing carbon or other conductive paper. Otherwise, a fire might occur.

Loading Paper

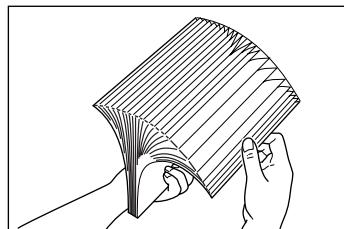
After you have set up the machine you need to load paper then specify the paper size using the procedure below.

! Important!

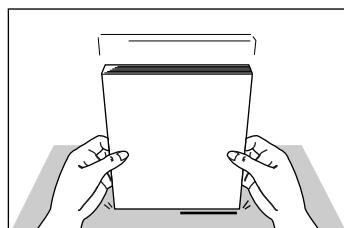
When loading paper into the upper paper tray, do not load more than 100 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m² or 20 lb). Overloading the upper paper tray can cause misfeeds.

To load plain paper into the upper paper tray

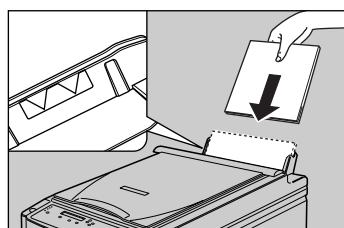
1 Fan the stack of paper to make sure that all pages are free and are not sticking together. The upper paper tray holds up to 100 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m² or 20 lb).



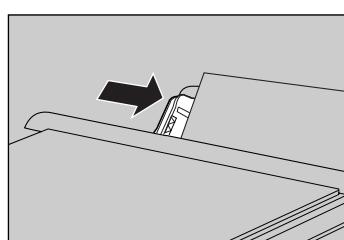
2 Straighten up all four sides of the stack, by tapping them on a desk or table top.



3 Set paper into the upper paper tray. Make sure that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark on the tray guide.



4 Squeeze the tray guide and slide it against the edge of the stack.



5 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

6 Press  .

1 Tray Pap. Size ►



If the paper feed unit (option) is installed, refer to page 19 for details on how to specify the paper size.

7 Press  .

Tray guide OK? 

8 After pressing , press  or  until the desired size appears.

Letter(8¹/₂ × 11)? ►

9 When the correct paper size is on the display, press  . If the paper feed unit (option) (page 17) is installed, you can also select its paper size at this time.

Registered

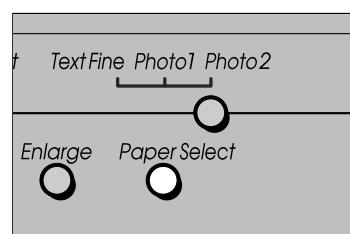


Do not carry out any operations while "Registered" appears on the display.



Tip

If the paper feed unit (option) is not installed, you can press  in place of  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> in step **5** . Next, skip step **6** and **7**, and jump directly to step **8** .

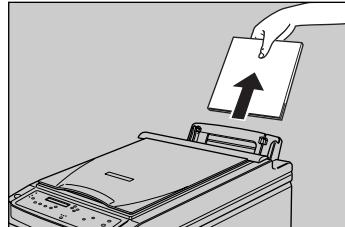


To load small size paper

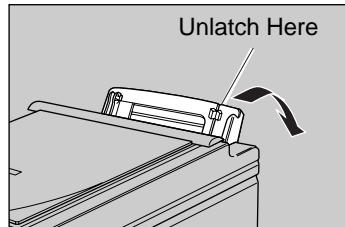


We recommend that you always feed small size paper vertically, with one of its shorter edges feeding into the machine.

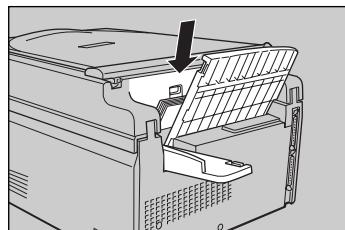
- 1 Remove all paper before loading small size paper in the upper paper tray.**



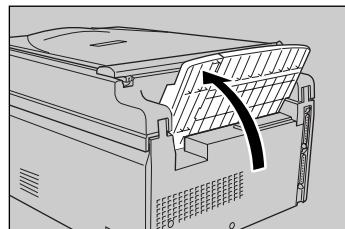
- 2 Open the small panel on the back of the machine by unlatching it as shown in the illustration. Opening the small panel makes it easy to handle small size paper.**



- 3 Set paper into the upper paper tray. Make sure that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark on the tray guide.**



- 4 After setting the paper into the tray, raise the small panel until it snaps securely into place.**



5 Press  Help/
Function.

Prt Help List ►

6 Press Zoom  ►.

1 Tray Pap. Size ►



If the paper feed unit (option) is installed, refer to page 19 for details on how to specify the paper size.

7 Press .

Tray guide OK? 

8 After pressing , press Zoom  + ► or  - until the desired size appears.

5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂? ►

9 When the correct paper size is on the display, press .



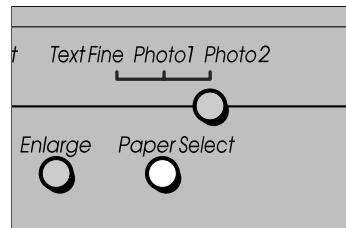
Do not carry out any operations while “Registered” appears on the display.

Registered



Tip

**If the paper feed unit (option) is not installed, you can press  in place of  Help/
Function in step **5**. Next, skip step **6** and **7**, and jump directly to step **8**.**



- Be sure to specify the paper size before printing on A4 or Letter paper again.

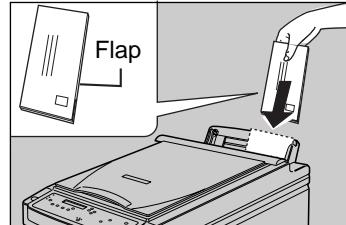
Loading Other Media

Use the following procedures to load envelopes, transparencies, and label paper.

To load envelopes

Load up to 5 envelopes at a time, using the same procedure for loading small size paper on page 12.

- *Insert envelopes print side up with the stamp position as shown.*



- *Envelope flaps should be securely folded down, so the envelope is “closed”. This is especially important when printing on envelopes with adhesive on the flaps, because heat generated during the printing process can cause the adhesive to melt and get on rollers.*

Note

Refer to the paper select operation on page 14.

To load transparencies

Load only one transparency at a time, using the plain paper loading procedure on page 10 for large transparencies, and the small paper loading procedure on page 12 for small transparencies.

Note

Refer to the paper select operation on page 11 for large transparencies or page 13 for small ones.

To load label paper

Load only 10 sheets of label paper at a time, using the plain paper loading procedure on page 10.

Note

Refer to the paper select operation on page 11.

Connecting a Second Printer (Additional Printer)

The machine features a port that you can use to connect your current printer as a second printer (additional printer). Once you do, you have a selection of this machine or the second printer at the touch of **Second Printer** key.

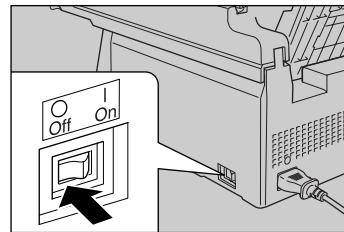


Note

Make sure that the power of your computer is turned off before making the connection.

To connect to a second printer

- 1 Turn off both the machine and your second printer.

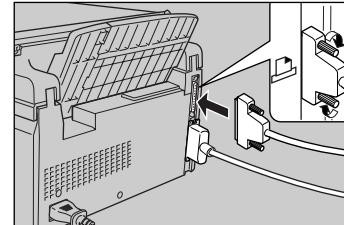


- 2 Connect one end of a parallel interface cable to your second printer.
- 3 Connect the other end of the cable to the second printer port, securing it in place with the screws.



Note

- It requires a standard 36-pin parallel cable compliant with IEEE 1284.
- Refer to page 26 for details on using the second printer.



Installing the Paper Feed Unit (Option)

This section describes how to install the paper feed unit (option) and how to load paper in it. Addition of a paper feed unit provides you with a second paper source that holds up to 250 sheets of A4 or Letter size paper.

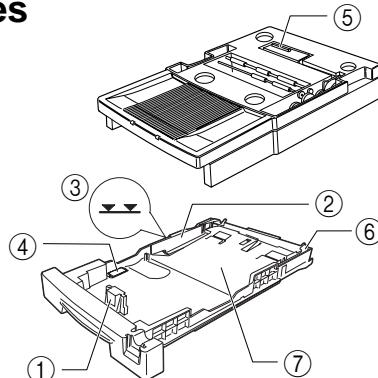


Important!

Make sure that machine power is turned off and that the power cord is unplugged from the power socket before installing the paper feed unit.

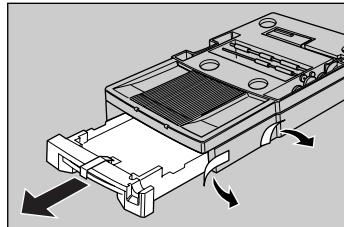
Paper Feed Unit Part Names

- ① Front guide
- ② Side guide
- ③ Limit mark
- ④ Paper size indicator
- ⑤ Connector
- ⑥ Corner guides
- ⑦ Metal plate



To install the Paper Feed Unit

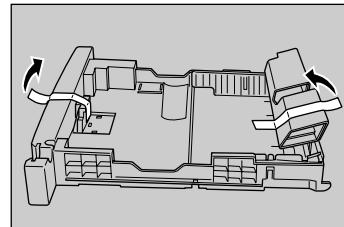
1 Remove all the packing tapes from the paper feed unit and pull the paper tray out of the unit.



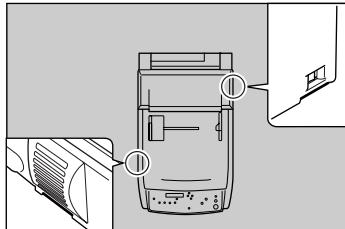
2 After removing all tapes and cardboard from inside of the paper tray, insert the tray back into the machine until it locks into place. Locate the paper feed unit where you plan to use the machine.



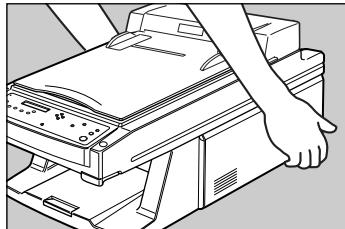
Be sure to place the paper feed unit on a level surface.



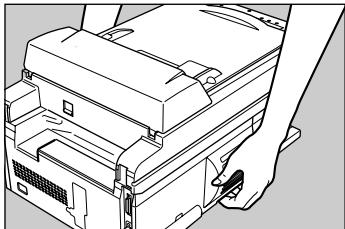
3 The machine has handhold at the locations shown in the illustration. Note that the illustration shows the machine as viewed from above.



- This illustration shows the handhold location on the right side of the machine.



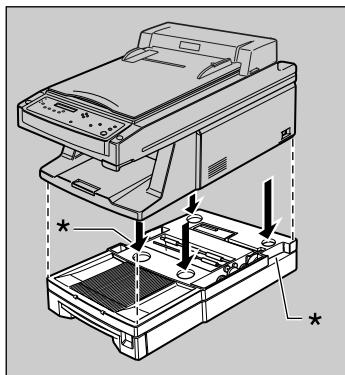
- This is the handhold location on the left side of the machine.



4 Carefully lower the machine onto the paper feed unit, making sure that the dowels on the paper feed unit fit into holes in the bottom of the machine properly.

 **CAUTION**

When lifting the machine, make sure your hands are at the locations indicated by “*” in the illustration. This protects against pinching your fingers between the machine and paper feed unit.



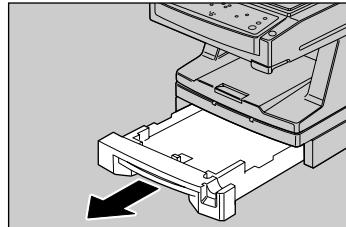
 **Note**

After the above installation, attach the power cord to the machine, and plug the other end into an outlet. Refer to page 8 for details.

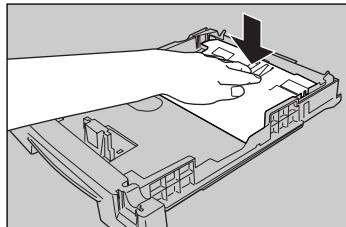
To load paper into the paper feed unit

You can load either A4 or Letter size paper into the paper feed unit. Refer to page 19 for details on how to change the positions of the paper guides inside of the tray to match the type of paper you are using.

- 1 Pull out the paper tray and remove it from the paper feed unit.



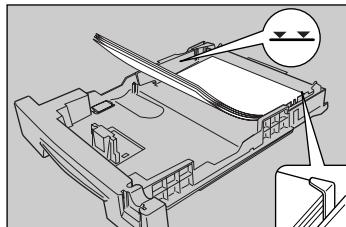
- 2 Press down on the metal plate in the bottom of the paper tray until the plate locks into place with a "click".



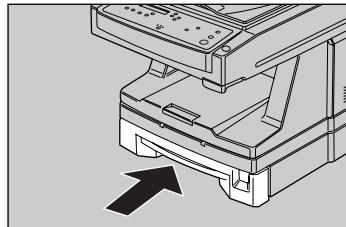
- 3 Up to 250 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m² or 20 lb) can be inserted into the paper tray as shown in the illustration. Make sure that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark on the side fence.



Note
Make sure the leading corners of the paper fit under the corner guides.



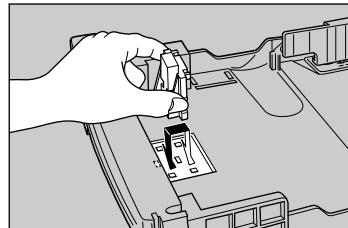
- 4 Slide the paper tray back into the paper feed unit until it locks into place.



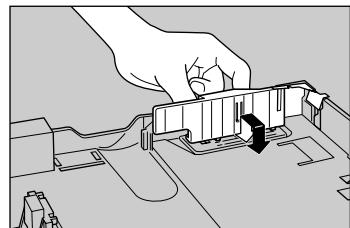
To change the paper size

Use the following procedure to set the positions of the paper guides inside the paper tray for either A4 or Letter paper.

- 1 Squeezing in on both sides of the front guide, slide it to the correct position for the desired paper size.



- 2 Squeezing in on both sides of the side guide, slide it to the correct position for the desired paper size.



Important!

Whenever you change the paper size, be sure to also specify the paper size using the operation panel.

To specify the paper size

After you install the paper feed unit (option), you can select between the upper paper tray and the paper feed unit as the paper source, and specify the size of paper in the paper feed unit.

- 1 Press the  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

- 2 Press  ►.

1 Tray Pap. Size ►

3 Press **OK**.

Lower Tray?

OK

**Note**

The actual message that appears on the machine's display depends on the paper source you last used. If "Upper Tray?" appears, press **Zoom** $\textcircled{+}\blacktriangleright$ or $\textcircled{-}\blacktriangleleft$ **Zoom** to display the "Lower Tray?" message before proceeding with step **4**.

4 After pressing **OK**, press **Zoom** $\textcircled{+}\blacktriangleright$ or $\textcircled{-}\blacktriangleleft$ **Zoom** until the desired size appears.

Letter (8 $\frac{1}{2}$ × 11)? \blacktriangleright

5 When the correct size is on the display, press **OK**.

Registered

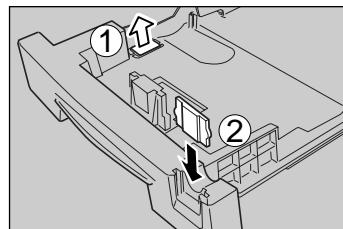


Do not carry out any operations while "Registered" appears on the display.

100% L 01

To install the paper size indicator

1 Break off the paper size indicator (①). Positioning the indicator so the side that shows the paper size you are using (A4 or Letter) is facing outwards, insert it into the front of the paper tray (②).



To select the paper source

1 Press **Paper Select** \textcircled{O} until the desired paper source appears.

100% U 01

The upper paper tray is selected when "U" is on the display, and the paper feed unit is selected when "L" is on the display.

100% L 01



Refer to page 10 for details on using the upper paper tray.

Upgrading Memory

You can install Single Inline Memory Module (SIMM) to upgrade the on-board memory of the machine.

The machine is shipped from the factory with a 4MB SIMM, which can be replaced with an 8MB, 16MB or 32MB SIMM.

Use the following procedure to install 8MB, 16MB or 32MB SIMM.

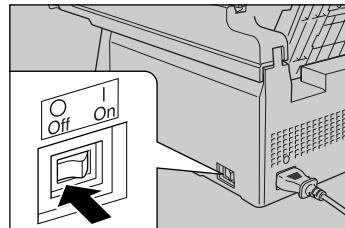


*The following are the required specifications for a SIMM used with this machine:
72-pin, 60ns, Extend Date Out (EDO), parity/non-parity.*

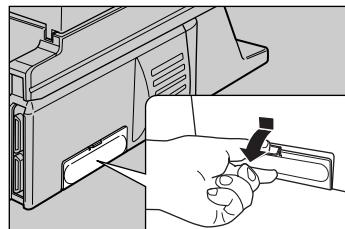


Make sure you touch some grounded metal object with your hand to discharge any electrostatic charge from your body before handling the SIMM.

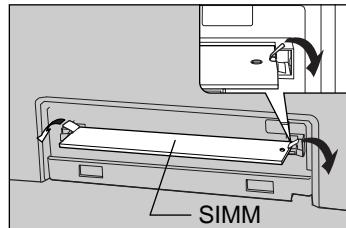
1 Turn off the machine.



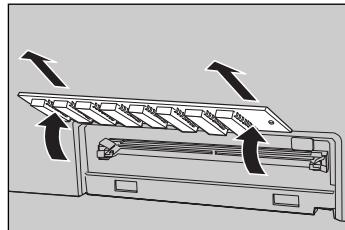
2 Remove the SIMM cover located on the left side of the machine.



3 Pull apart the hooks on the both sides of the SIMM board that hold it in place.



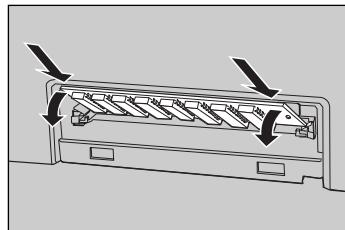
4 Carefully lift out the SIMM board currently installed on your printer.



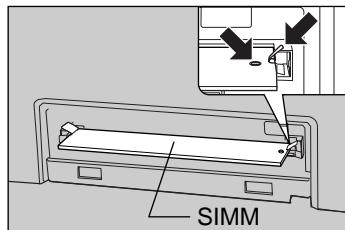
5 Angle the new SIMM board as shown in the illustration, and insert it down into the slot. Gently rock it back and forth until you hear it snap into place.

Important!

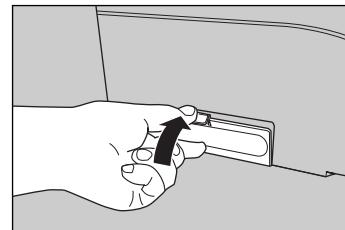
Make sure the SIMM board is oriented correctly when you insert it into the slot.



6 Make sure the hooks on the sides of the SIMM board snap securely into place.



7 Replace the cover by inserting its tabs into the holes provided, as shown in the illustration.



3. PRINTING AND SCANNING

When connected to a compatible PC, you can use this machine as a high performance laser printer and black and white scanner.

Important!

- Make sure that your PC parallel port is set to ECP. If it is not, please consult your PC manual on how to change it.

Note

- For information on PC hardware and software requirements, please read the *README* file on the CD.
- Printer drivers are provided for both Windows® 95/98 and Windows® 3.1, but the scanning feature requires Windows® 95/98.

Setting up

Before you can start printing and scanning you need to the following if you have not done so already:

- Connect the machine to your PC
- Install the software drivers on your PC

Installing the Software Drivers

Follow the steps below to install the printer/scanner drivers on your PC.

1 Make sure the machine is connected to your PC and paper is loaded in the upper paper tray.

- ☞ *Connecting to a computer, See page 7*
- ☞ *Loading Paper, See page 10*

2 Switch the machine on.

3 Insert the provided software CD into your CD-ROM drive.

4 Do one of the following according to your operating system:

- **Windows® 95/98**

Run the setup application. For example, if your CD-ROM is assigned to D, run “D:\Scan-in\Setup.exe”.

- **Windows® 3.1**

First copy the disk images under the directory named “3.1” on the CD-ROM to floppy disks. Then insert the first floppy disk into your floppy disk drive and run “install.exe”.



Note

- *You cannot install from CD-ROM under Windows 3.1.*
- *Only the printer driver will be installed under Windows 3.1.*

5 Follow the instructions that appear on the display.

For detailed information on how to print and scan from your PC, please refer to the online help provided.

Features You Can Access From the Printer Driver

Printer Driver Contents

■ Paper Defaults

Paper size : Size, Measurement Unit
 Page orientation : Portrait, Landscape
 Output : Copies, Print in reverse order
 Paper source : Source
 About

■ N-Up Printing

Select a Layout Option : Normal, Reduce for N-up printing
 (Print page borders ; 2 pages up/sheet ; 4 pages up/sheet)

■ Document

Document Type Settings

| | Automatic | Photo (Grayscale) | Desktop Publishing | High Speed Draft | Business Graphics |
|----------------------|-----------|-------------------|--------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| Graphics Mode | Raster | Raster | GL/2 | Raster | Raster |
| Font Resolution(dpi) | 600 | 600 | 600 | 300 | 600 |
| Graphics Resolution | High | High | High | High | High |
| Halftone | Screening | Screening | Screening | Screening | Dithering |

Job Settings : True Type Mode, Name

■ Configuration

Device Configuration : Feeder ; Toner Save Mode ; Time-out

■ Fonts

Font Manager (To add printer fonts)

■ Overlays

Overlay Assignments : None, All pages, Odd/Even pages, First/Other pages

Cover/Divider page Overlays

Create New Overlay

Manage Overlays : Get files from other sources to use as overlays, Send created overlays to other sources, Rename overlays, Remove overlays

Important!

After printing a large number of pages, wait a few minutes before turning off the machine.

Note

Be sure to use online help and Read me file of the printer driver to get the most out of all the printer features and functions.

Using the Second Printer (Additional Printer)

Use the following procedure to switch between this machine and a second printer when a second printer is connected.

Important!

If the second printer has a bi-directional mode, make sure you turn it off.

Note

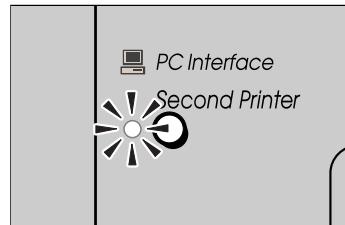
 *Connecting a second printer, see page 15.*

To print to the second printer

1 Press  ^{Second Printer}. The Second Printer indicator lights.

Important!

Whenever you change printers, be sure to also change to the appropriate printer driver on your computer.



Note

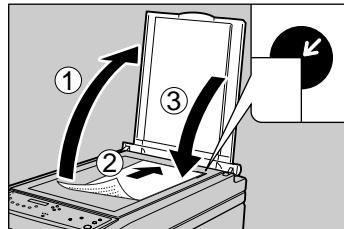
While the Second Printer Indicator is lit, print data from your computer passes through the machine to the second printer.

2 Perform the required print operation with the application you are using.

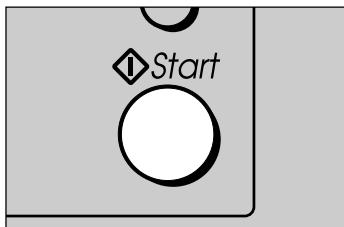
4. COPYING

Making a Copy

1 Lift the platen cover (①). Place the original face down at the arrow mark on the scale (②). Close the platen cover (③).



2 Press  to perform the copy operation.



Important!

After copying a large number of pages, wait a couple of minutes before attempting to turn off the machine.

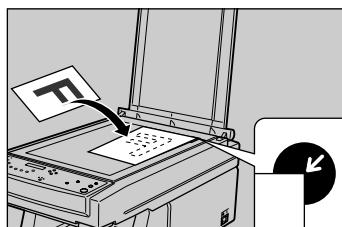
Note

When printing to label paper, envelopes, transparencies, or thin paper (60 g/m² or 16 lb), remove each printout as it comes out of the machine. If you don't, printed output can fall out of the output tray, and become curled.

Alignment of Originals

Align the original with the scale of the exposure glass.

- When the original is a standard size such as A4 or Letter, align it to the indexes on the scale.
- When your original is not standard size, align the upper left edge of the original to the arrow mark on the scale.



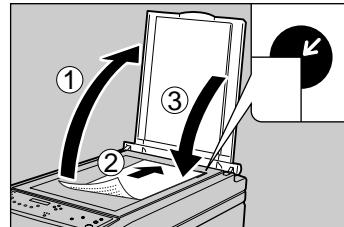
For Type 2 Users

- When the original is smaller than the paper you are copying to, place a second sheet of paper that is larger than the paper you are copying to on top of the original when you place the original onto the exposure glass.

Making Multiple Copies

You can specify the number of copies to be printed by pressing  (to increase the number) or  (to reduce the number).

- 1 Lift the platen cover (①). Place the original face down at the arrow mark on the scale (②). Close the platen cover (③).



- 2 Press  or  until the desired number of copies appears.

 **Note**

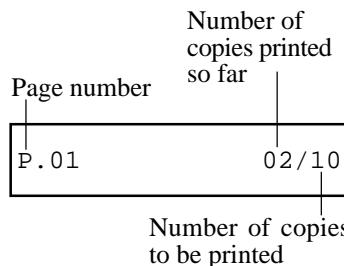
You can specify the number of copies in the range of 01 to 99.

| | |
|------|----|
| 100% | 10 |
|------|----|

- 3 Press  to perform the copy operation.

 **Note**

During the copy operation, the display shows the number of copies printed so far and that to be printed. For example, 02/10 appears while the second copy of a run of 10 copies is being printed.



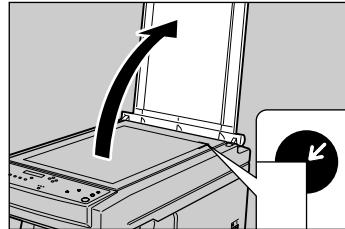
 **Tips**

- Press  to clear the setting after the copying has been finished.
-  (Type 1) or  (Type 2) produces copies at a faster speed, but it can also result in a loss of printout quality.
- With a Type 2 machine, using  also activates the Sort feature automatically.

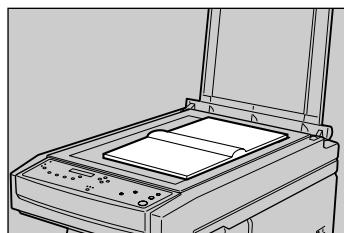
Making a Book Copy

When copying from a book, the thickness of the book should be no more than 30mm (1.18").

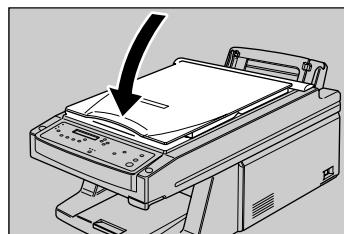
- 1 Lift the platen cover.



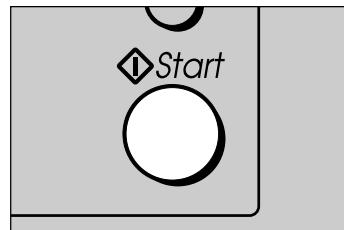
- 2 Open to the page you want to copy and lay the page face down on the exposure glass. Be sure to align one of the corners of the page with the arrow mark on the scale.



- 3 Lower the platen cover.



- 4 Press  to perform the copy operation.

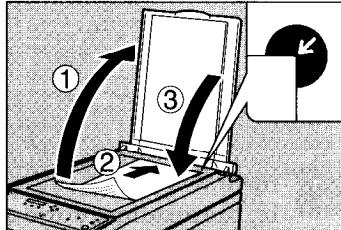


Reduction and Enlargement

Press  or  to select preset reduction or enlargement factors for the copy operation.

To set the reduction factor

- 1 Lift the platen cover (①). Place the original face down at the arrow mark on the scale (②). Close the platen cover (③).



- 2 Press  until the desired size ratio appears. The sizes change in the following order.

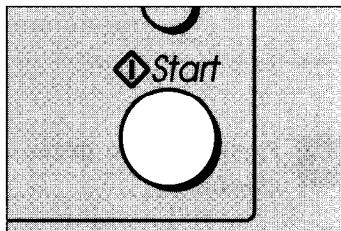
100% → 93% → 77% → 65%



- 3 Press  to perform the copy operation.

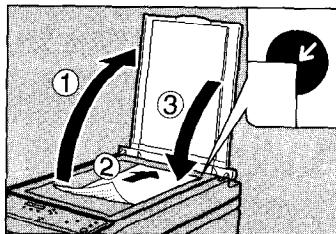


Note
Press  to clear the setting after copying.



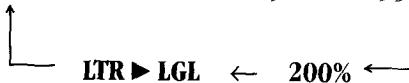
To set the enlargement factor

1 Lift the platen cover (①). Place the original face down at the arrow mark on the scale (②). Close the platen cover (③).



2 Press  until the desired size ratio appears. The sizes change in the following order.

100% → 121% → 129% → 155%

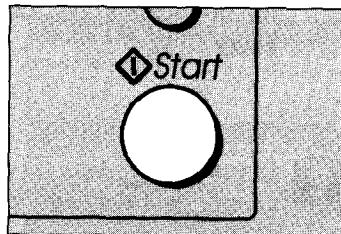


| | |
|------|----|
| 100% | 01 |
|------|----|

3 Press  to perform the copy operation.

 **Note**

Press  to clear the setting after copying.

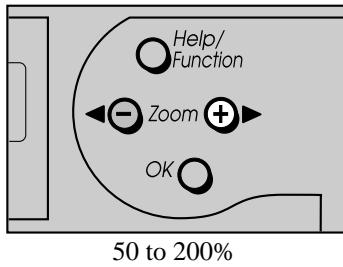
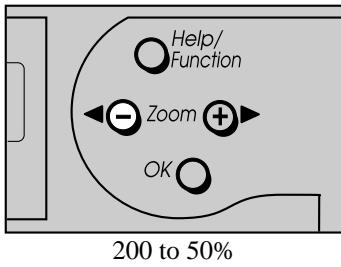


Zoom (In 1% Increments)

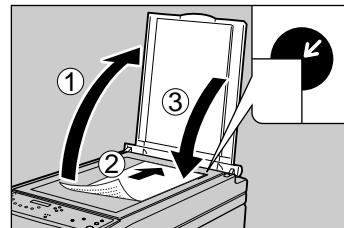
Zoom allows you to tune the preset reduction and enlargement factors to exactly the value you want. You can change the zoom factor in increments of 1%.

To use zoom

Setting Range



1 Lift the platen cover (①). Place the original face down at the arrow mark on the scale (②). Close the platen cover (③).



2 Press \leftarrow (decrease) or \rightarrow (increase) until the desired size ratio appears.

| | |
|------|----|
| 100% | 01 |
|------|----|

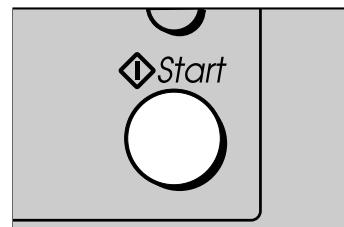
| | |
|-----|----|
| 99% | 01 |
|-----|----|

3 Press \diamond Start to perform the copy operation.



Note

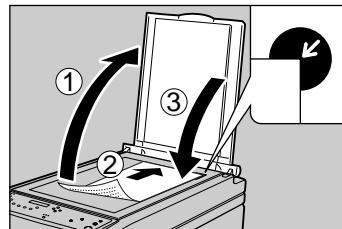
Press \diamond Clear Modes to clear the setting after copying.



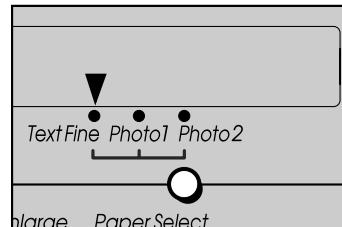
Adjusting the Copy Image

To select the resolution/photo setting

1 Lift the platen cover (①). Place the original face down at the arrow mark on the scale (②). Close the platen cover (③).



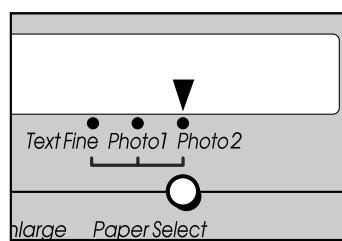
2 Press the Copy Mode key to specify the resolution or halftoning method for the copy operation.



3 A pointer (▼) moves on the display to indicate the current setting.

The following describes when you should use each setting.

| Setting | Use for: |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| [Text Fine] | Copying text |
| [Photo1] | Copying photographs |
| [Photo2] | Copying mixed text and photographs |



Note

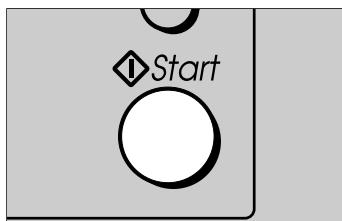
If the memory size of your machine is 4MB, the machine automatically switches from Photo2 to Photo1 in the following cases.

- ♦ when the  (Type 1) or  (Type 2) key is on
- ♦ when you make multiple copies using the ADF (Type 2 only)

4 Press  to perform the copy operation.

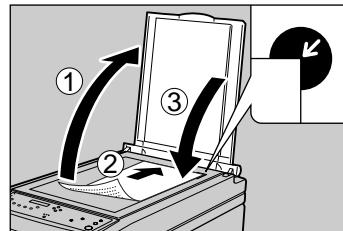
Note

Press  to clear the setting after copying.

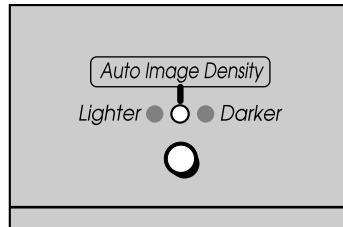


To adjust the image density

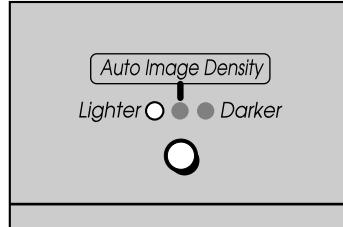
1 Lift the platen cover (①). Place the original face down at the arrow mark on the scale (②). Close the platen cover (③).



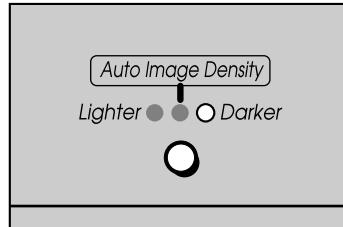
2 Press the Density key to select the image density.



- Select [Lighter] to make the image lighter.



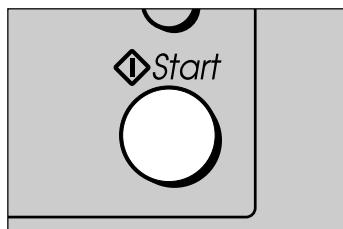
- Select [Darker] to make the image darker.



3 Press  to perform the copy operation.



Note
Press  to clear the setting after copying.

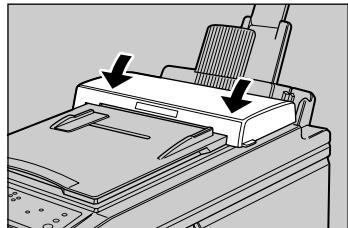


Setting an Original on the ADF (Type 2 only)

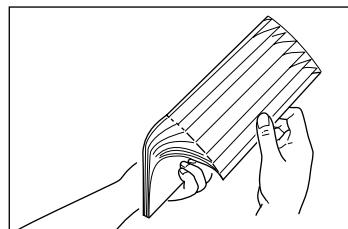
You can load up to 10 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m² or 20 lb) at a time into the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF).

Important!

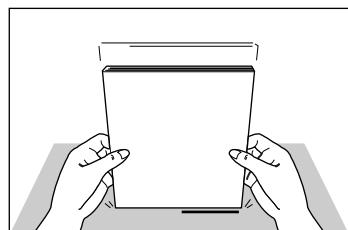
Check to make sure that the ADF cover is securely closed before using it.



- 1 Fan the stack of originals. Never try to place more than 10 sheets of plain paper onto the ADF.



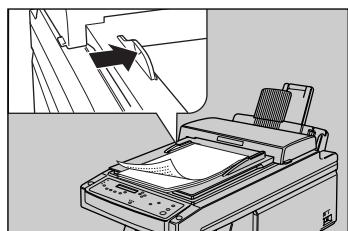
- 2 Straighten up all four sides of the stack, by tapping them on a desk or table top.



- 3 Place the stack of originals face down on the ADF and slide the document guide against the side of the stack.

Note

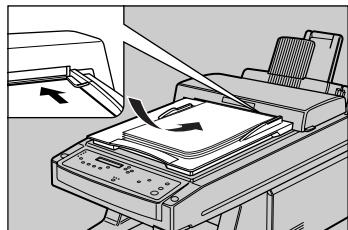
The side of the original to be copied should be face down.



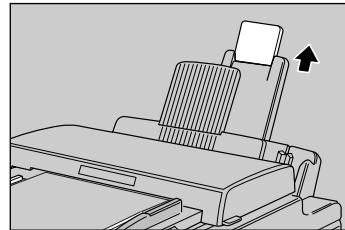
- 4 Insert the stack of originals along the document guide into the ADF.

Note

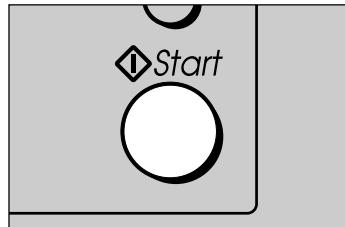
Insert your stack of originals into the ADF until it stops. If you do not push it right in, the machine will not detect the stack.



5 Stretch the extend tray that supports the originals.



6 Press  to perform the copy operation.



 **Note**

- If an original becomes misfed during feeding by the ADF, press  to stop the operation. Refer to "Clearing a Paper Misfeed" on page 47.
- We recommend you use text mode when copying with the ADF.
- We recommend you copy photo originals from the exposure glass for best results.

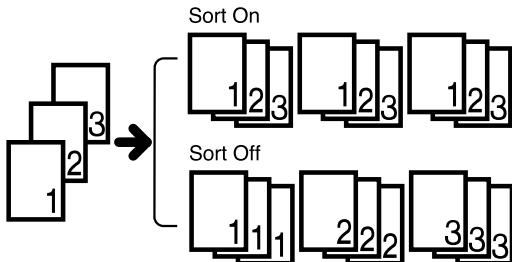
Originals that do not meet the following requirements can cause paper misfeeds, and even damage the machine.

■ Requirements

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| • Thickness | 0.05mm to 0.2mm (0.002" to 0.08") |
| • Weight | 60 to 90 g/m ² (16lb to 24lb) |
| • Clear markings | Markings on the originals must be clear to be read correctly. |
| • Uniform page size | All pages should be the same size. |
| • Page condition | Avoid using originals that are bent, curled, damaged, or stapled, and originals printed on coated paper, carbon paper, or photographic paper. |

Sorting Output (Type 2 only)

The following example shows how output is affected by turning sorting on and off.



Important!

The sort operation requires scanning of all your originals into memory before starting the copy operation. The number of originals that can be scanned at one time depends on how much memory you have installed.

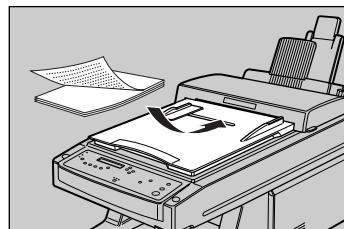
→ Upgrading Memory, see page 21

To turn sorting on and off

1 Set the originals on the ADE

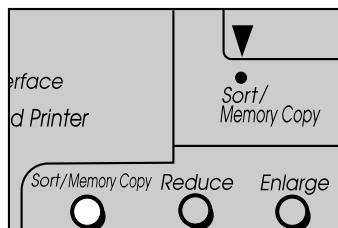
Note

→ Setting an originals on the ADF, see page 35.



2 Sorting is activated when the ▼ pointer is visible on the display above Sort/Memory

Copy. Press  to select sorting on and off (no pointer).



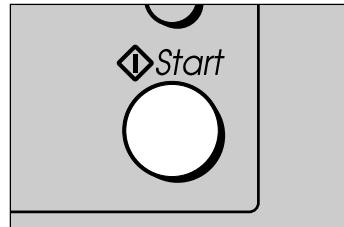
3 When you press  to start the copy

operation, all of the originals on the ADF are scanned into memory before they are printed.



Note

Press  to clear the setting after copying.



5. TROUBLESHOOTING

General

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|--|---|--|------|
| Nothing happens when the machine is turned on. | Power cord is not connected. | Correctly connect the power cord to the machine and plug it into a outlet. | p.8 |
| | SIMM is not installed correctly | Install the SIMM correctly. | p.21 |
| | SIMM does not meet the required specifications. | Use a SIMM with the required specifications. | p.21 |
| Paper misfeeds when the machine is turned on for the first time after the installation. | Paper was loaded in the machine before the machine was turned on. | Remove the paper, turn the machine off and then back on. After machine initialization is complete, load the paper back into the machine. | p.8 |
| After installing a SIMM board, the memory value that appears on the machine's display does not match the amount of memory installed. | SIMM does not meet the required specifications. | Use a SIMM with the required specifications. | P.21 |

Printing and Copying (1/2)

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|--------------------------|---|--|------------|
| Frequent paper misfeeds. | The upper paper tray is not set correctly | Set the upper paper tray correctly. | p.4 |
| | Improper paper. | Use paper of the correct size and thickness. | p.9 |
| | Paper is not set correctly in the upper paper tray. | Realign the paper with the paper guide, and if necessary, fan the paper stack. | p.10 |
| | Paper is curled or damp. | Uncurl the paper. | p.10,12,18 |
| | | Insert paper into the upper paper tray from the least-curved side. | p.10,12 |
| | | Set paper face down if necessary. | p.10,12,18 |
| | | Avoid using damp paper. | — |
| | Too much paper is loaded in the machine. | Remove some of the paper. | p.10,14 |
| | Paper is loaded incorrectly. | Check the paper and realign it if necessary. | p.10,18 |

Printing and Copying (2/2)

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|---|---|--|---------|
| Frequent paper mis-feeds. | Attempting to print on both sides of the paper. | Print on only one side. Two-side printing is not supported by this machine. | p.10,18 |
| | Printing onto loosely stacked envelopes | Flatten the envelopes to expel all air. | p.14 |
| | Misfeeding of the envelope flap. | Make sure that envelope flaps are closed (folded down). | p.14 |
| Part of the image is unclear. | Toner is distributed unevenly in the toner cassette. | Remove the toner cassette, gently rock it left and right a few times, and replace it into the machine. | p.52 |
| Black lines on the printout. | Heat damage to the toner cassette caused by turning off the machine too soon after copying a large number of pages. | Replace the toner cassette. | p.52 |
| Dark areas along the sides of the printout. | Turning off the machine too soon after printing or copying a large number of pages. | Replace the toner cassette. | p.52 |

Printing

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|--|--|---|------|
| Abnormal or unexpected printing results. | Use of wrong cable. | Use the cable that comes with this machine. | p.7 |
| | Wrong printer driver settings. | Change to the correct printer driver settings. | p.23 |
| | Attempting to print from a DOS application at 600 dpi. | Change to 300 dpi. | p.58 |
| Parts of the image are not printed out. | The correct paper size is not specified. | Specify the paper size using the operation panel. | p.19 |
| Cannot print from a second printer. | Second printer is not connected correctly. | Check connections and make corrections, if necessary. | p.15 |
| | Second printer is not selected. | Press  so the indicator above it is lit. | p.26 |
| | Incorrect settings of the second printer driver. | Use the printer driver of the second printer to turn off bi-directional printing. | p.26 |

Copying

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|---|--|---|--------------|
| "Error 90" appears on the display and the copy operation is aborted when copying from the exposure glass. | Locked scanner. | Unlock the scanner lock, turn the machine off and then back on. | p.3 |
| Frequent original mis-feeds with ADE | Original is not set correctly. | Set the original correctly. | p.35 |
| | Curled original(s). | Straighten out the original(s). | p.35 |
| | Incorrect original specifications. | Insert the original(s) from the least-curved side. Use originals of the correct size, thickness, and quantity. | p.35 p.36 |
| Original is not fed from the ADE | ADF cover is open. | Close the ADF cover. | p.35 |
| Original is not fed out properly. | The document output tray is not set correctly. | Set the document output tray and the small pieces of plastic film correctly. | p.6 |
| Periodic black marks on printed output. | Cleaning pad is not installed. | Correctly install the cleaning pad. | p.51 |
| Black lines and marks on printed output when copying from the exposure glass. | Copying to small-size paper with the Type 2 machine. | Place a sheet of the same size as the paper you are printing onto behind the original. | p.27 |
| | Different size original and copy paper. | Adjust the print density. | |
| | Non-white original background. | Clean the platen cover and exposure glass. | p.34 |
| Black and white lines on printed output when using the ADF. | Dirty ADF transport path. | Clean the ADF transport path. | p.51 |
| Output too light. | Low contrast original. | Adjust the print density. | p.34 |
| Unclear photographic images. | Copying in Text Fine Mode. | Use the Copy Mode key to select the Photo1 or Photo2 Mode. | p.33 |
| Parts of the original image are not copied. | The correct paper size is not specified | Specify the paper size using the operation panel. | p.19 |

Scanning

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|---|---|---|------|
| PC scanning does not function properly. | The PC parallel port is not set to ECP. | Consult your PC manual on how to set your parallel port to ECP. | p.23 |

Error Messages (1/2)

The table below explains the error messages that may appear on the display and the appropriate action to take.

| Message | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|---|--|--|---------|
| “Close cover” | Top unit is open. | Close the top unit. If a copy job is in progress, set the copy quantity again. | p.3 |
| “Add paper” | Machine is out of paper. | Load paper. If a copy job is in progress, set the copy quantity again. | p.10,18 |
| “Toner near end” | Machine is almost out of toner. | Prepare a toner cassette for replacement. | — |
| “Add Toner” | Toner cassette is not loaded correctly. | Correctly load the toner cassette into the machine. | p.2 |
| | Machine is out of toner. | Replace the toner cassette, and set the copy quantity again during a copy job. | p.52 |
| “Clear paper” | Paper misfeed, or paper will not feed at all. | Remove the misfed paper. If a copy job is in progress, set the copy quantity again. If paper persistently misfeeds, carry out the procedure on page 49. | p.44,49 |
| “Memory overflow” | Not enough memory capacity (PC printing only). | Either lower the printer driver's "Resolution" setting or increase memory capacity by installing a larger SIMM. Press any operation panel key to clear the error message from the display. | p.21,25 |
| “Remove original” (when original is set in ADF) | Original misfeed, or paper will not feed at all. | Remove the original from the ADF and set the copy quantity again. | p.48 |
| “Original left” and “on glass” | An original may be under the platen cover. | Remove the original. If there is no original, open the platen cover and close it again. | — |
| “Memory full” and “Press Stop” | Too much sort copy data. | Press  ^{Stop} to cancel sort copy and perform the copy operation without sorting. If you need to print big sort copy jobs, increase memory capacity. | p.21,37 |

Error Messages (2/2)

| Message | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------|---|----------|
| “Memory full” and “Press Start” | Too many sort copy pages. | Press  to print pages already stored in memory to cancel the job, press  . If you need to print big sort copy jobs, increase memory capacity. | p.21, 37 |
| “Error 90” | Locked scanner. | Unlock the scanner lock, turn the machine off and then back on. | p.3 |
| “Error XX” | Possible machine defect. | Turn power off and then back on again. | p.8 |

If you have a problem with the machine and you can not resolve it by referring to the information in this chapter, contact your service representative.

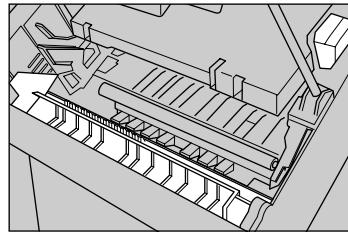
In case of “Error XX” messages, be sure to turn off the machine before calling.

Clearing a Paper Misfeed

This section describes how to clear a paper misfeed when one occurs.

CAUTION

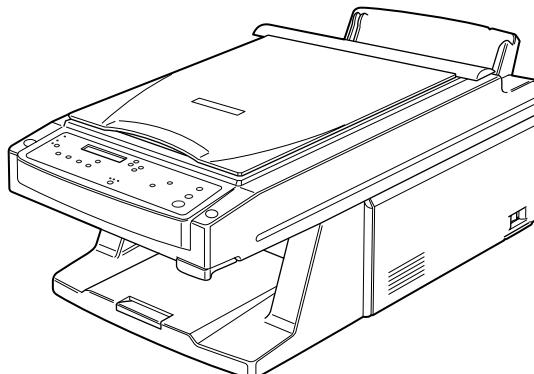
When removing misfed paper, do not touch the fusing section because it could be very hot.



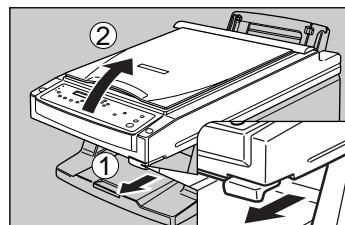
Important!

Hold a misfed sheet with both hands and slowly pull it out. Do not use a tool, such as a screwdriver or tweezers, as this may damage the unit.

Type 1



- 1 Pull the top release lever (①) and open the top unit (②).

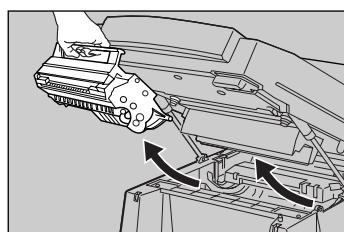


- 2 Pull out the toner cassette.

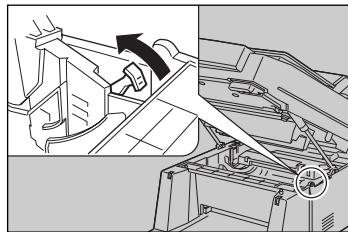


Note

- Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.
- Keep the toner cassette horizontal to avoid spilling the toner.



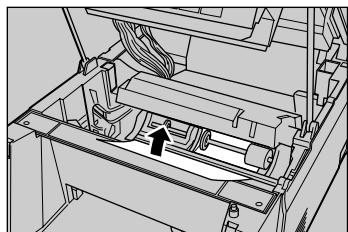
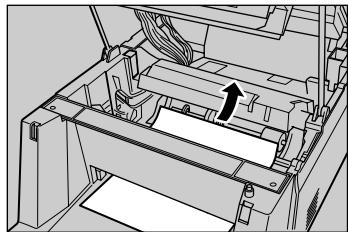
3 Pressing down on the paper release lever (blue) on the right side, pull out the misfed paper.



4 Pull out the misfed paper in the directions indicated by the arrows in the illustrations.

Note

- If you are using the paper feed unit (option) and cannot clear the misfeed using this procedure, use the procedure on page 47 instead.
- Sometimes toner may get on your hands.

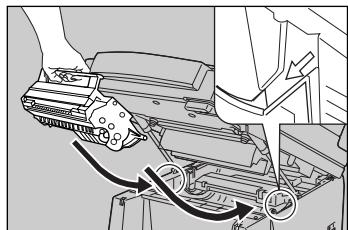


5 Install the toner cassette into the machine.

Note

- Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.
- Keep the toner cassette horizontal to avoid spilling the toner.

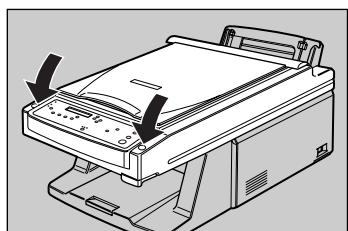
☞ Install the starter toner cassette, see page 2.



6 Close the top unit.

Note

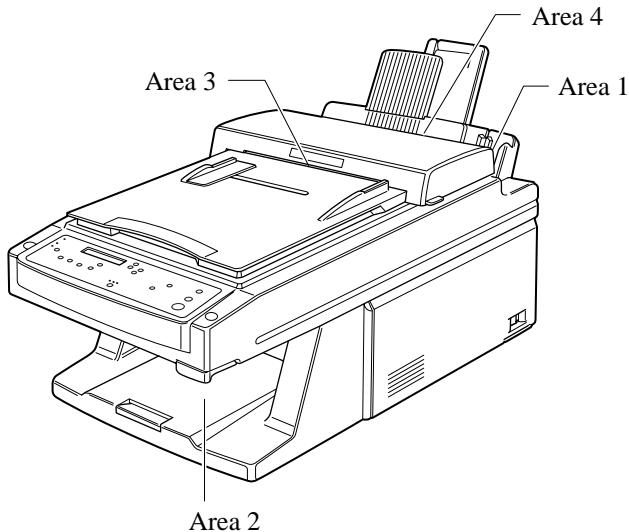
- If "Clear Paper" is still displayed after you clear the jam, there may be paper jammed in another part of the machine. Check all areas described in this section.



Important!

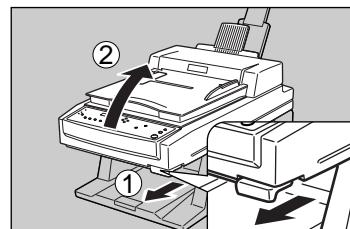
If a paper misfeed occurs during a copy job, be sure to specify the desired copy quantity again.

Type 2



Area 1 or 2

- 1 Pull the top release lever (①) and open the top unit (②).

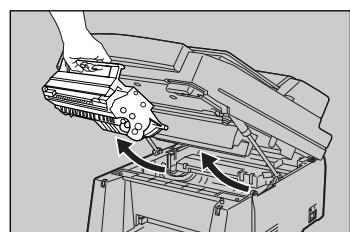


- 2 Pull out the toner cassette.



Note

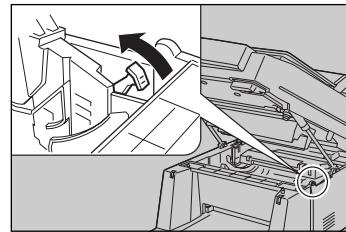
- Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.
- Keep the toner cassette horizontal to avoid spilling the toner.



3 Push back the blue paper release lever located on the right.

 **Note**

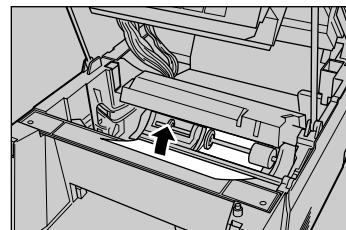
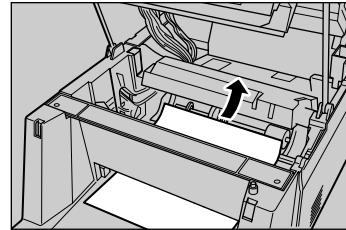
The lever releases pressure on the paper. If you do not push it back, you could damage the machine when removing paper.



4 Pull out the misfed paper in the directions indicated by the arrows in the illustrations.

 **Note**

- If you are using the paper feed unit (option) and cannot clear the misfeed using this procedure, use the procedure on page 47 instead.
- Sometimes toner may get on your hands.

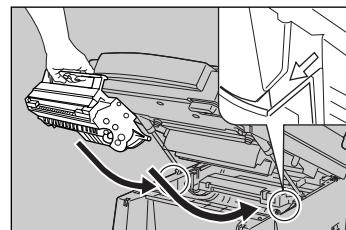


5 Install the toner cassette into the machine.

 **Note**

- Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.
- Keep the toner cassette horizontal to avoid spilling the toner.

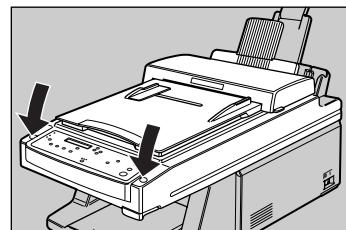
☞ *Install the starter toner cassette, see page 2.*



6 Close the top unit.

 **Note**

- If “Clear Paper” is still displayed after you clear the jam, there may be paper jammed in another part of the machine. Check all areas described in this section.



 **Important!**

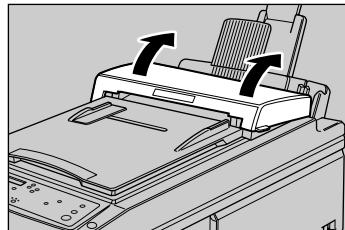
If a paper misfeed occurs during a copy job, make sure to specify the desired copy quantity again.

Area 3 or 4

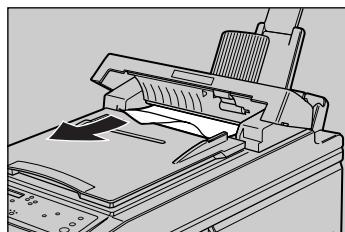
1 Open the ADF cover.



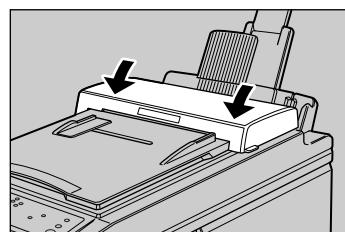
Be sure to open the ADF cover before pulling out the misfed original. Failure to do so can result in damage to the original.



2 Pull out the misfed original.



3 Close the ADF cover, and make sure it locks securely into place.

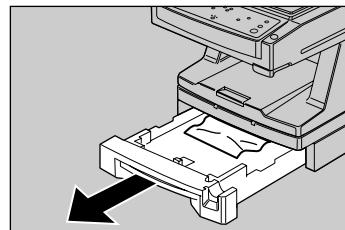


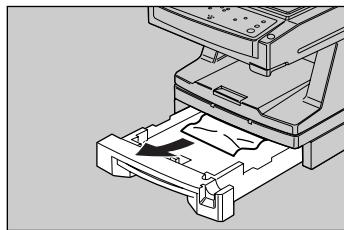
If copying was in progress, be sure to specify the desired copy quantity again.

Paper feed unit

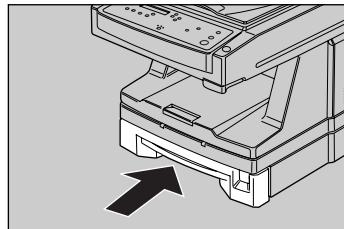
Use the following procedure when the misfed paper cannot be removed using the procedure on page 43 (for Type 1) or page 45 (for Type 2).

1 Pull out the paper tray.



2 Pull out the misfed paper.**3** Slide the paper tray back into the paper feed unit until it locks into place.

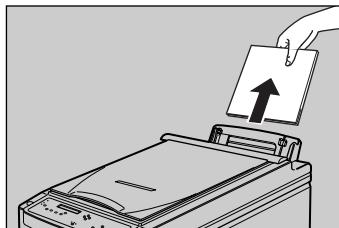
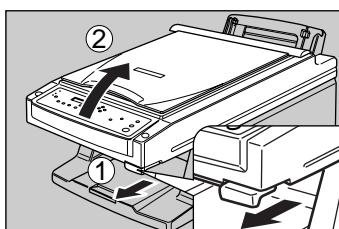
For how to set paper in the optional paper feed unit, see page 16.

**Tip**

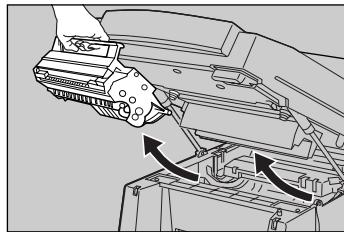
If you cannot find a remedy for unexpected printout results here, check the printer driver's online help for other useful information.

When paper will not feed

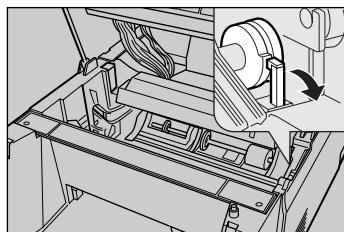
If paper has completely stopped feeding, check using the following procedure. Please keep this sheet in a secure place together with the Operation Manual.

1 Remove all paper.**2** Pull the top release lever ① and open the top unit ②.

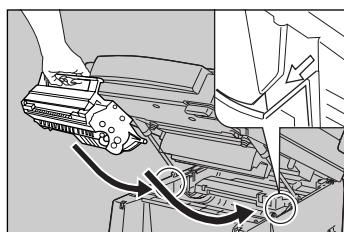
3 Pull out the toner cassette.



4 Pull the blue key-shaped pawl located deep inside on the right where the toner cassette was set forward.

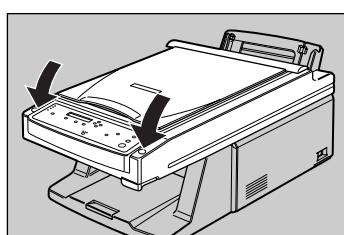


5 Install the toner cassette into the machine.



6 Close the top unit.

When the top unit is closed, the motor will start running. When the sound of the motor stops, set paper in the original position and continue with normal operation.



6. USER MAINTENANCE

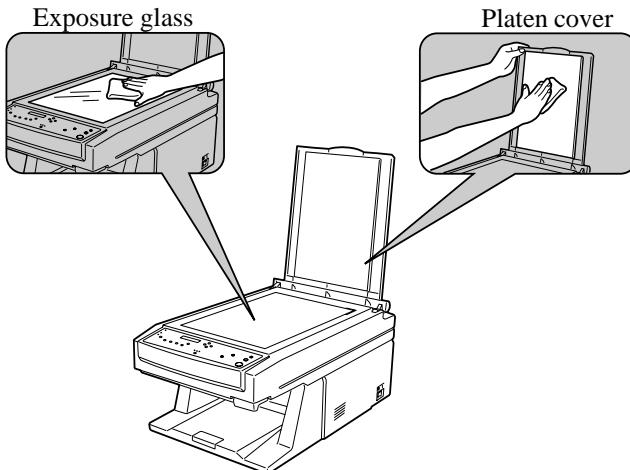
Daily Maintenance

Clean with a damp cloth and wipe dry.



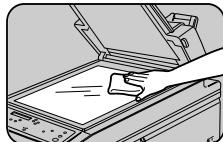
Turn off the machine before cleaning

(Type 1)

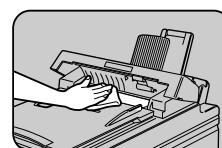


(Type 2)

Exposure glass



ADF



Platen cover



Platen



Replacing the Toner Cassette And the Cleaning Pad

Printing on A4 size paper under the recommended temperature and humidity conditions noted in the table under “Environment” on page 1, you can expect a toner cassette to print approximately 3,000 pages when you are printing typical business letters that have text covering 5% of the total surface. The starter cassette that comes with the machine can print approximately 1,000 pages. Pages that contain graphics use more toner and shorten the life of a toner cassette.

⚠ WARNING



Do not incinerate used toner or toner containers. Toner dust might ignite when exposed to an open flame. Dispose of the used toner cassettes according to local regulations for plastics.

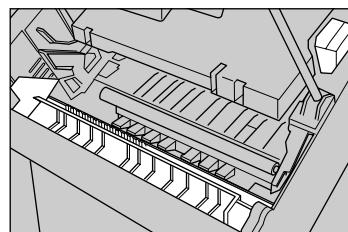


This machine has been tested for safety using this supplier's parts and consumables. We recommend you only use these specified supplies.

⚠ CAUTION



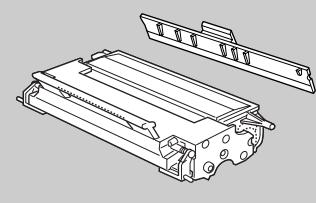
When replacing the toner cassette and cleaning pad, do not touch the fusing section because it could be very hot.



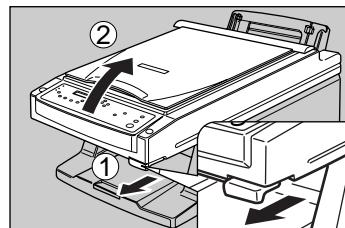
- 1 Open the box of the new toner cassette and check to make sure it contains a toner cassette and cleaning pad.



Note
Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.



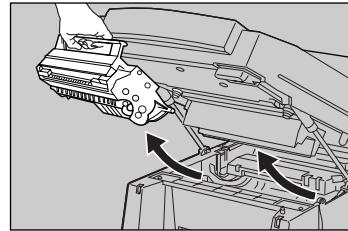
- 2 Pull the top release lever (①) and open the top unit (②).



3 Hold the toner cassette by its handle and pull it out.



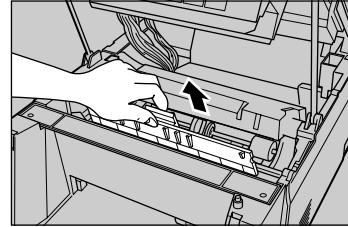
Note
Keep the toner cassette horizontal to avoid spilling the toner.



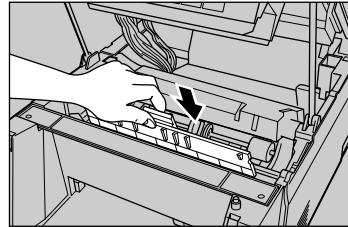
4 Remove the old cleaning pad.



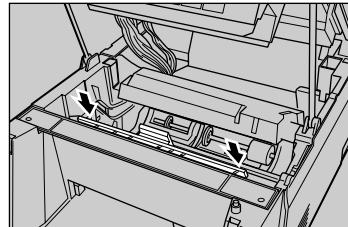
Note
Be sure to grasp the green handle when removing the cleaning pad.



5 Insert the new cleaning pad into place by grasping the green handle.



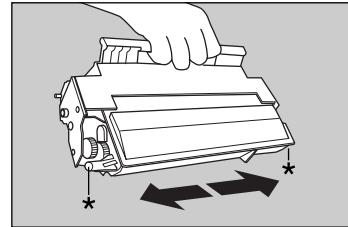
6 Press down gently but firmly on both sides of the pad to make sure that it is inserted as far as it can go.
Do not forget to install the cleaning pad whenever you install a new toner cassette.



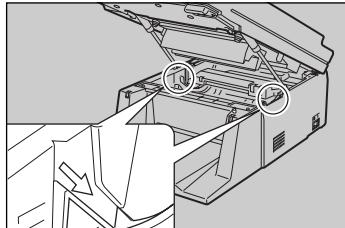
7 Prepare the new toner cassette. Holding the toner cassette by its handle, gently shake it side to side 5 or 6 times to evenly distribute the toner inside.



Note
Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.



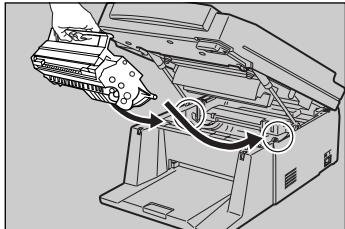
8 Look inside the machine and note the locations of the arrows that indicate the toner cassette guides on either side.



9 Make sure the plastic pins (marked with “*” in the illustration next to step above) on either side of the toner cassette slide along the guides inside the machine.



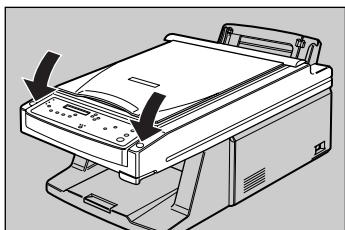
Note
Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.



10 To close the top unit, press down firmly but gently on both sides of it until the top unit closes and clicks securely into place.



Note
Background gray cast is sometimes evident just after installing a new toner cassette.



Storage

Paper

Paper should always be stored properly. Improperly stored paper might result in poor image reproduction, creased copies, or paper misfeeds. Generally, avoid paper curling and absorption of moisture.

- Avoid storing paper in humid areas. In high-temperature and high-humidity, or low-temperature and low-humidity conditions, store paper in a vinyl bag.
- Do not store paper where it will be exposed to heat.
- Store on a flat surface.
- Use older stock first.
- Do not lay heavy objects on paper.
- Keep open reams of paper in the package, and store as you would unopened paper.

Toner Cassette

- Keep the toner cassette inside the packaging that it comes packed in whenever it is removed from the machine.
- Store horizontally in a cool, dark place.
- Never store a toner cassette where it will be exposed to heat.
- Do not lay heavy objects on the toner cassette.

CAUTION

Keep toner cassettes out of children's reach.

7. TECHNICAL REFERENCE

Printing the Help List

You can print out the help list.

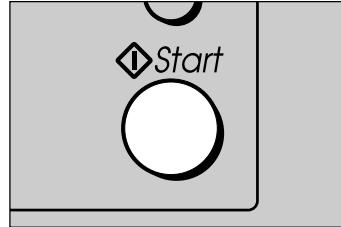
- 1 While the machine is not performing any other operation, press  ^{Help/}Function. The message "Prt Help List" appears.

Prt Help List 

- 2 Press .

Press Start

- 3 Press  to print the Help List.



Note

Print on A4, Letter, or Legal paper.

Selecting the Language

The language for the display can be selected from the following:

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function.</sup>

Prt Help List 

2 Press  or  until "2 Language" appears.

2 Language 

3 Press  and press  or  until the desired language appears.

4 Press .

Registered



Note

- Do not carry out any operations while "Registered" appears on the display.
- The setting is not registered, if  is not pressed.

100%  01

Selecting 300 dpi or 600 dpi

Set the printer to 300 dpi if the designated output is not obtained when printing using a DOS application compatible with the 300 dpi PCL printer.

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List 

2 Press  or  until “3 User Param.” appears. The messages change in the following order.

3 User Param. 

3 Press  and press  to move the flashing block cursor until it appears in the position shown in the illustration to the right.

02:0010  000 

4 Press  to change the setting to 1 or 0, as desired.

| Display | Heater status |
|--------------|---------------------------|
| 02:0010 0000 | 600 dpi (default setting) |
| 02:0010 1000 | 300 dpi |

Note

The bits other than the one highlighted in the illustration are unrelated to this setting.

5 Press . **Note**

- To cancel this change, press  or  instead of . “Please wait” and “Not Registered” appear on the display.
- Do not carry out any operations while “Registered” appears on the display.

Please wait

Registered

100%

01

Economy Mode

The Economy mode can be selected to save power. If no operation is performed for 5 minutes, the display becomes blank and all the indicators go out. If no operation is performed in the next 10 minutes or 235 minutes (according to the setting), the heater turns off.

The economy mode is on as the default setting.

| | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|--|
| Economy mode | Operation panel off | Heater off |
| ON (default setting) | 5 minutes | 15 minutes (including time when operation panel is off) |
| OFF | 5 minutes | 240 minutes (including time when operation panel is off) |

Note

- During the Economy Mode, the heater turns back on in the following cases.
 - ◆ when any key on the operation panel is pressed
 - ◆ when the platen cover is opened
 - ◆ when paper is set in or removed from the upper paper tray (Type 2)
 - ◆ when the tray of the paper feed unit (option) is pulled out or pushed back into the machine
 - ◆ When the top unit is opened.
 - ◆ When an original is set in or removed from the ADF.
 - ◆ On initiation of PC printing.
- When a key on the operation panel is pressed to turn the heater on, the key does not perform its normal function.
- After the heater is turned back on, the previous %, quantity, and Sort On settings are cleared.

Changing the Economy Mode

Hold down the Clear modes key for approximately 1 second until the Economy mode indicator lights or goes out, as required.

Economy Mode ON



Economy Mode OFF



Selecting Toner Saving Mode

The toner saving mode status has two settings.

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> “Prt Help List” appears.

Prt Help List 

2 Press  or  until “3 User Param.” appears. The messages change in the following order.

3 User param. 

3 Press  and press  to move the flashing block cursor until it appears in one of the positions shown in the illustration to the right.

02:0010 0■00 



The bits other than the one highlighted in the illustration are unrelated to this setting.

4 Press  ^{Up}  to change the bit setting to 1 or 0, as desired.

| Display | Heater status |
|--------------|------------------------------|
| 02:0010 0000 | Off (Default) |
| 02:0010 0100 | On (Density will be lighter) |

5 Press .

Please wait



- To cancel this change, press  or  instead of . “Please wait” and “Not Registered” appear on the display.
- Do not carry out any operations while “Registered” appears on the display.

Registered

100% 

8. SPECIFICATIONS

General Specifications

| Type 1 | Type 1, Type 2 |
|--|--|
| Paper Capacity Upper tray plain paper (80 g/m ² : 20 lb.) 100 sheets Option paper unit plain paper (80 g/m ² : 20 lb.) 250 sheets Output tray Capacity plain paper (80 g/m ² : 20 lb.) 50 sheets | Power Supply AC 120 V 60 Hz Power Consumption Max 480 W Printing (Average) 215 W Copying (Average) 240 W Stand-by (Average) 75 W PC-Scan (Average) 75 W Economy Mode 15 W |
| Memory 4 MB (Expandable to 8 MB, 16 MB or 32 MB) EDO SIMM, 60 ns, 72 pin | Operating Environment Temperature /Humidity 10°C (50°F) to 35°C (95°F) 15% to 80% |
| Dimensions 249mm × 352mm × 576mm (H×W×D) 9.81" × 13.87" × 22.69" (H×W×D) | Machine Life 30,000 sheets/5 years |
| Weight 15.0 kg (33.08 lb) | Printer Duty 6,000 sheets/1 month |
| Type 2 | Scanner Duty 2,000 sheets/1 month |
| Paper Capacity Upper tray plain paper (80 g/m ² : 20 lb.) 100 sheets Option paper unit plain paper (80 g/m ² : 20 lb.) 250 sheets ADF (Auto Document Feeder) Capacity plain paper: A4, IT-LG (80 g/m ² : 20 lb) 10 sheets Output tray Capacity plain paper (80 g/m ² : 20 lb.) 50 sheets | Paper Sizes Plain paper Letter (LT) = 8 1/2" × 11" Legal (LG) = 8 1/2" × 14" Half Letter = 5 1/2" × 8 1/2" A4 = 210 mm × 297 mm A5 = 148 mm × 210 mm F4 = 8 1/4" × 13" |
| Memory 4 MB (Expandable to 8 MB, 16MB or 32MB) EDO SIMM, 60 ns, 72 pin | Envelopes Executive = 7 1/4" × 10 1/2" Com 10 = 4 1/8" × 9 1/2" Monarch = 3 8/7" × 7 1/2" |
| Dimensions 297mm × 352mm × 576mm (H×W×D) 11.70" × 13.87" × 22.69" (H×W×D) | Other Transparencies Label Paper |
| Weight 15.5 kg (34.18 lb) | |

Printing Specifications

| | |
|---|---|
| Printer Language PCL 5e compatible | Resident Font |
| Print Resolution 600 dpi × 600 dpi 1200 dpi × 600 dpi (enhanced) | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dutch 801 SWC Dutch 801 Italic SWC Dutch 801 Bold SWC Dutch 801 Bold Italic SWC Swiss 742 SWC Swiss 742 Italic SWC Swiss 742 Bold SWC Swiss 742 Bold Italic SWC Swiss 742 Condensed SWC Swiss 742 Condensed Italic SWC Swiss 742 Condensed Bold SWC Swiss 742 Condensed Bold Italic SWC Incised 901 SWC Incised 901 Italic SWC Incised 901 Bold SWC Fixed Pitch 810 Courier Roman SWC Fixed Pitch 810 Courier Bold SWC Fixed Pitch 810 Courier Italic SWC Fixed Pitch 810 Courier Bold Italic SWC Fixed Pitch 850 Letter Gothic 12 pitch/text SWC Fixed Pitch 850 Letter Gothic Bold 12 pitch/text SWC Fixed Pitch 850 Letter Gothic Italic 12 pitch/text SWC Flareserif 821 SWC Flareserif 821 Extra Bold SWC Ribbon 131 SWC Wingbats SWM |
| Print Speed 6 ppm (pages per minute) | |
| Paper/Media Types Plain paper Envelopes Transparencies Label paper | |
| Paper Weight 60 to 90 g/m ² (16 to 24 lb) | |
| Interface IEEE 1284 | |

Scanner Specifications

| | |
|--|---|
| Configuration Flatbed / ADF | Grey scale 256 levels (8-bit) |
| Document Size LG, IT, HIT, A4, A5, B5 | Interface IEEE 1284 ECP mode |
| Optical Resolution 300dpi | Compatibility TWAIN |
| Scanning Resolution 1bit 100 × 100, 150 × 150, 200 × 200, 300 × 300, 400 × 400, 600 × 600 dpi | ADF Up to 10 pages of 80g /m ² (20lb), Plain paper |
| 8bit 300 × 300 dpi | Maximum scanning size 212 × 351.6 mm |
| | OS Windows 95/98 only |

Copying Specifications

| | |
|---|---|
| Copy Speed 6 cpm (copy per minute) | Paper Weight 60 to 90 g/m ² (16 to 24 lb) |
| Warm-up Time 30 seconds or less | Original Types Exposure glass (Type 1/Type 2) Sheet/Book |
| First copy 17 seconds or less | ADF (Type 2) Up to 10 pages of 80 g/m ² (20 lb), Plain paper |
| Multiple Copies Up to 99 copies | Maximum Original Size Legal (LG) = 8 1/2 " × 14" |
| Copy Reduction and Enlargement 50%, 65%, 77%, 93%, LGL ▶ ITR 121%, 129%, 155%, 200%, ITR ▶ LGL | Copy Resolution 600 dpi × 600 dpi |
| Paper/Media Types Plain paper Envelopes Transparencies Label paper | |

INDEX

①

1 to 1 Copy 27

A

Additional Printer 15
 Auto image density 34
 Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) ix
 Setting an original 35

B

Book Copy 29

C

Check Display x
 Clearing a Paper Misfeed 43
 cleaning pad 52
 Computer port viii, ix
 Connecting a Second Printer
 (Additional Printer) 15
 Connecting to a computer 7
 Connector 16
 Copy Mode key xi
 Corner guides 16, 18

D

Daily Maintenance 51
 Density key x
 Display xi
 Document guides ix
 Document output tray ix
 Installing 6

E

Economy Mode 60
 Economy Mode/Clear Modes key xi
 Enlarge x
 Enlargement 30
 envelopes 14
 Exposure glass viii, ix
 Extend tray viii, ix

F

Front guide 16, 19
 Front paper support 16

H

Help List 56
 Help/Function xi

I

image density 34
 Installing
 Document output tray 6
 Toner cassette 2
 Upper paper Tray 4

L

label paper 14
 Language 57
 Limit mark 10, 16, 18
 Loading Paper 10
 Loading
 plain paper 10
 small size paper 12
 other media 14
 Location 1

M

Memory Copy (Type 1 only) xi, 28
 Metal plate 10, 16, 18
 Multiple Copies 28

O

OK xi
 Operation Panel viii, ix, x
 Original
 Setting (Exposure glass) 27
 Setting (ADF) 35
 Requirements (ADF) 36
 Original Guide ix
 Output tray viii, ix

P

| | |
|-----------------------------|----------|
| Paper and Other Media | 9 |
| Paper Select | x |
| paper size | |
| Changing | 19 |
| Specifying (upper) | 11, 13 |
| Specifying (lower) | 19 |
| Paper size indicator | 16, 19 |
| Paper Feed Unit | 16 |
| PC Interface | x |
| Photo1 | 33 |
| Photo2 | 33 |
| Platen cover | viii, ix |
| Power socket | viii, ix |
| Power switch | viii, ix |
| printer driver | |
| Windows 95 | 23 |
| Windows 3.1 | 24 |

Q

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| Quantity keys | x |
|---------------------|---|

R

| | |
|--------------------------------|----|
| Reduce | x |
| Reduction | 30 |
| Replacing | |
| Toner cassette | 52 |
| cleaning pad | 52 |
| resolution/photo setting | 33 |

S

| | |
|---|----------|
| Safety Information | i |
| Scanner lock | viii, ix |
| Unlocking | 3 |
| Second Printer (Additional Printer) port | viii, ix |

Second Printer (Additional Printer)

| | |
|--|------------|
| Connecting | 15 |
| Using | 26 |
| Side guide | 16, 19 |
| SIMM cover | viii, ix |
| SIMM | 21 |
| Small size paper feed access panel | viii, ix |
| small size paper | 12 |
| sort | 37 |
| Sort/Memory Copy (Type 2 only) | xi, 28, 33 |
| SPECIFICATIONS | 62 |
| Start | x |
| Stop | xi |
| Storage | 55 |

T

| | |
|-------------------------|----------|
| Text Fine | 33 |
| Toner cassette | |
| Installing | 2 |
| Replacing | 52 |
| Top release lever | viii, ix |
| Top unit | viii, ix |
| transparencies | 14 |
| TROUBLESHOOTING | 39 |
| Type 1 | viii |
| Type 2 | ix |

U

| | |
|--|-----------------|
| Upgrading Memory | 21 |
| Upper paper tray | viii, ix, 4, 10 |
| User Parameter | 58, 61 |
| Using the Second Printer (Additional Printer) .. | 26 |

Z

| | |
|------------|--------|
| Zoom | xi, 32 |
|------------|--------|



Overseas Affiliates

U.S.A.

RICOH CORPORATION
5 Dedrick Place
West Caldwell, New Jersey
07006
Phone: +1-973-882-2000

Spain

RICOH ESPAÑA S.A.
Avda. Litoral Mar, 12-14,
08005 Barcelona
Phone: +34-(0)93-295-7600

The Netherlands

RICOH EUROPE B.V.
Groenelaan 3, 1186 AA,
Amstelveen
Phone: +31-(0)20-5474111

Italy

RICOH ITALIA SpA
Via della Metallurgia 12,
37139 Verona
Phone: +39-(0)45-8181500

United Kingdom

RICOH UK LTD.
Ricoh House,
1 Plane Tree Crescent,
Feltham,
Middlesex, TW13 7HG
Phone: +44-(0)181-261-4000

Hong Kong

RICOH HONG KONG LTD.
23/F., China Overseas
Building,
139, Hennessy Road,
Wan Chai, Hong Kong
Phone: +852-2862-2888

Germany

RICOH DEUTSCHLAND
GmbH
Mergenthalerallee 38-40,
65760 Eschborn
Phone: +49-(0)6196-9060

Singapore

RICOH ASIA PACIFIC
PTE.LTD.
260 Orchard Road,
#15-01/02 The Heeren,
Singapore 238855
Phone: +65-830-5888

France

RICOH FRANCE S.A.
383, Avenue du Général
de Gaulle
BP 307-92143 Clamart
Cedex
Phone: +33-(0)1-40-94-38-38

SUPPLIES MODEL NAME

The correct model name of supplies for
your Bizworks is:
RICOH TONER CASSETTE TYPE 1120D BLACK

RICOH CO., LTD.

15-5, 1 chome, Minami-Aoyama, Minato-ku, Tokyo
Phone: Tokyo 3479-3111

Printed in The Netherlands

EE G027-8600

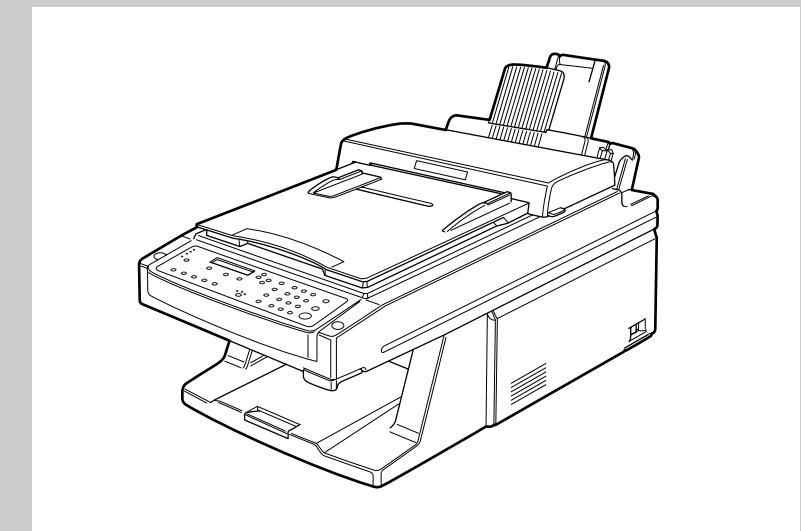


Operation Manual



Operation Manual

Read this manual carefully before you use this product and keep
it handy for future reference. For safety, please follow the
instructions in this manual.



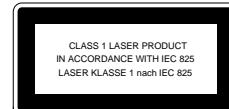
Introduction

This manual contains detailed instructions on the operation and maintenance of this machine. To get maximum versatility from this machine, all operators should carefully read and follow the instructions in this manual. Please keep this manual in a handy place near the machine. Please read the safety information on pages i - iii of this manual. It contains Important Information related to user safety and preventing equipment problems.

Operator Safety:

This machine is considered a class 1 laser device, safe for office/ EDP use. The machine contains a 5-milliwatt, 765 - 805 nanometer wavelength, GaAlAs laser diodes. Direct (or indirect reflected) eye contact with the laser beam might cause serious eye damage. Safety precautions and interlock mechanisms have been designed to prevent any possible laser beam exposure to the operator.

The following label is attached on the machine.
This label can be found when opening the bypass tray.



Laser Safety:

The optical housing unit can only be repaired in a factory or at a location with the requisite equipment. The laser subsystem is replaceable in the field by a qualified Customer Engineer. The laser chassis is not repairable in the field. Customer engineers are therefore directed to return all chassis and laser subsystems to the factory or service depot when replacement of the optical subsystem is required.

Notes:

- Model names for the machines do not appear in the following pages. Check the type of your machine before reading this manual.
- Bizworks 706**
- Some illustrations may be slightly different from your machine.
- Certain types may not be available in some countries. For details, contact your local dealer.

Two kinds of size notation are employed in this manual. With this machine refer to the metric version.

For good print quality, Ricoh recommends that you use genuine Ricoh toner.

Ricoh shall not be responsible for any damage or expense that may result from the use of parts other than genuine Ricoh parts in your Ricoh office product.

Power Source: 220 ~ 240 V, 50/60 Hz, 2.2 A

Please make sure to connect the power cord to a power source as above. For details about power connection, refer to page 8.

Trademarks

Microsoft®, Windows®, and MS-DOS® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights in those marks.



Declaration of Conformity

"The Product complies with the requirements of the EMC Directive 89/336/EEC and the Low Voltage Directive 73/23/EEC."

In accordance IEC 60417 this machine uses the following symbols for the main switch:

means POWER ON.
 means POWER OFF.

Safety Information

When using your machine, the following safety precautions should always be followed.

Types of warnings used in this manual



WARNING

Ignoring this warning could cause serious injury or even death.



CAUTION

Ignoring this caution could cause injury or damage to property.

Symbol examples



The \triangle symbol means a situation that requires you take care.



The \otimes symbol means you MUST NOT carry out this operation.
This example means “Do not take apart.”



The \bullet symbol means you MUST perform this operation.
This example means “You must remove the wall plug.”

Microsoft[®], Windows[®], and MS-DOS[®] are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Other product names used here in are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights in those marks.

⚠️ **WARNING:**

| | |
|---|---|
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Use of controls or adjustment or performance of procedures other than those specified in this manual may result in hazardous radiation exposure. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Only connect the machine to the power source described on the inside of the front cover.Avoid multi-wiring.Do not damage, break or make any modifications to the power cord. Do not place heavy objects on it, pull it hard or bend it more than necessary. These actions could cause an electric shock or fire.Do not plug or unplug the power cord with your hands wet. Otherwise, an electric shock might occur. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Make sure the wall outlet is near the machine and freely accessible so that in event of an emergency it can be unplugged easily. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Do not remove any covers or screws other than those specified in this manual. Some parts of the machine are at a high voltage and could give you an electric shock. Also, reflected eye contact with the laser beam may cause serious eye damage. When the machine needs to be checked, adjusted, or repaired, contact your service representative.Do not take apart or attempt any modifications to this machine. There is a risk of fire, electric shock, explosion or loss of sight. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">If the machine looks damaged or breaks down, smoke is coming out, there is a strange smell or anything looks unusual, immediately turn off the power switch then unplug the power cord from the wall. Do not continue using the machine in this condition. Contact your service representative.If metal, liquid or foreign matter falls into the machine, turn off the power switch, and unplug the power cord. Contact your service representative. Do not keep using the machine with a fault or defect. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Do not put any metal objects or containers holding water (e.g. vases, flower-pots, glasses) on the machine. If the contents fall inside the machine, a fire or electric shock could occur. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">Do not incinerate used toner or toner cassettes. Toner dust might ignite when exposed to an open flame. Dispose of the used toner cassettes according to local regulations for plastics. |

⚠ CAUTION:

| | |
|--|--|
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Keep the machine away from humidity and dust. A fire or an electric shock might occur.• Do not place the machine on an unstable or tilted surface. If it topples over, it could cause injury. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• When you move the machine, unplug the power cord from the wall outlet to avoid fire or electric shock.• When the machine is not be used for a long time, unplug the power cord. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• When you pull out the plug from the socket, grip the plug to avoid damaging the cord and causing fire or electric shock. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• If you use the machine in a confined space, make sure there is a continuous air turnover. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Do not reuse stapled paper. Do not use aluminium foil, paper containing carbon or any other conductive paper. Otherwise, a fire might occur. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• When removing misfed paper, or replacing the toner cassette and the cleaning pad, do not touch the fusing section because it could be very hot. |
|  | <ul style="list-style-type: none">• This machine has been tested for safety using this supplier's parts and consumables. We recommend you only use these specified supplies. |

Energy Star program



As an Energy Star partner, we have determined that this machine model meets the Energy Star Guidelines for energy efficiency.

The Energy Star Guidelines intend to establish an international energy-saving system for developing and introducing energy-efficient office equipment to deal with environmental issues, such as global warming.

When a product meets the Energy Star Guidelines for energy efficiency, the Partner shall place the Energy Star logo onto the machine model.

This product was designed to reduce the environmental impact associated with printing equipment by means of energy-saving features such as Low Power mode.

- **Low Power Mode**

This machine automatically lowers its power consumption 15 minutes after the last printing job has been completed. To exit Low Power mode, press any key on the operation panel.

The machine returns to the ready condition in about 22 seconds. To change the low Power delay, see page 108.

Specification

| | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------|---------|
| Low Power Mode (Economy Mode) | Power consumption | 15 W |
| | Default delay | 15 min. |
| | Recovery time | 22 sec. |

Recycled paper

Please contact your sales or service representative for recommended recycled paper types that may be used in this machine.

Contents

| | |
|---------------------------|-----|
| Safety Information | i |
| Energy Star program | iv |
| Part Names | x |
| Operation Panel | xii |

1. SETTING UP

| | |
|---|---|
| Package Contents | 1 |
| Location | 1 |
| Installing the Starter Toner Cassette | 2 |
| Installing Other Hardware | 4 |
| Unlocking the Scanner | 4 |
| Removing the Protective Sheet | 4 |
| Installing the Document Output Tray | 5 |
| Installing the Upper Paper Tray | 6 |
| Preparing the Output Tray | 6 |
| Connecting to a Computer | 7 |
| Connecting the Telephone Line and Optional Telephone Handset | 8 |
| Turning On the Machine | 9 |

2. GETTING ACQUAINTED

| | |
|---|----|
| Paper and Other Media | 10 |
| Loading Paper | 11 |
| Loading Plain Paper into the Upper Paper Tray | 11 |
| Loading Small Size Paper | 13 |
| Loading Other Media | 15 |
| Loading Envelopes | 15 |
| Loading Transparencies | 15 |
| Loading Label Paper | 15 |
| Second (Additional) Printer | 16 |
| Connecting to a Second Printer | 16 |
| Paper Feed Unit (Option) | 17 |
| Paper Feed Unit Part Names | 17 |
| Installing the Paper Feed Unit | 17 |
| Loading Paper into the Paper Feed Unit | 19 |
| Changing the Paper Size | 20 |

| | |
|---|----|
| Specifying the Paper Size | 20 |
| Installing the Paper Size Indicator | 21 |
| Selecting the Paper Source | 22 |
| Upgrading Memory | 23 |

3. PRINTING AND SCANNING

| | |
|---|----|
| Setting up | 25 |
| Installing the Software Drivers | 25 |
| Features You Can Access From the Printer Driver | 27 |
| Using the Second Printer (Additional Printer) | 28 |
| Printing to the Second Printer | 28 |

4. FAXING

| | |
|---|----|
| Switching between Fax Operation and Copy Operation Mode | 29 |
| Entering Characters on the Operation Panel | 30 |
| Entering Numbers | 30 |
| Entering Letters, Symbols and Spaces | 30 |
| Deleting Characters and Moving the Cursor | 31 |
| Setting up | 32 |
| Please Read This First | 32 |
| Connecting to the Telephone Line | 32 |
| Storing your Own Name/TTI | 33 |
| Setting the Dial Mode | 34 |
| Storing your Own Fax Number | 36 |
| Setting the Date and Time | 38 |
| Turning Summer Time (Daylight Saving Time) on/off | 39 |
| Sending Faxes | 40 |
| How to Send a Fax | 40 |
| Entering Pauses and Tones in Fax Numbers | 43 |
| Entering Pauses | 43 |
| Entering Tones | 44 |
| Redialling a Number | 44 |
| Automatic Redial | 45 |
| Cancelling Automatic Redial | 45 |
| Cancelling Transmission of a Fax | 45 |
| Receiving Faxes | 46 |

| | |
|--|----|
| Choosing a Reception Mode | 46 |
| FAX Model | 46 |
| TEL Model | 46 |
| Switcing between FAX Mode and TEL Mode | 47 |
| Receiving calls in TEL Mode | 47 |
| Screening out Unwanted Faxes with Authorized Reception | 48 |
| Turning Authorized Reception on/off | 49 |
| Cancelling Reception of a Fax | 49 |
| Making Telephone Calls | 50 |
| Faxing During a Telephone Call | 50 |
| Sending a Fax During a Telephone call | 51 |
| Receiving a Fax During a Telephone call | 51 |
| Monitoring the Line while Dialling with On Hook | 52 |
| Remote Change | 52 |
| Storing Fax and Telephone Numbers | 54 |
| Quick Dials | 54 |
| Storing Quick Dials | 55 |
| Editing Quick Dials | 56 |
| Clearing Quick Dials | 58 |
| Name Dials | 59 |
| Storing Name Dials | 59 |
| Deleting Name Dials | 61 |
| Dialling with Name Dials | 62 |
| Reports and Lists | 63 |
| Printing the Journal | 63 |
| Printing the Dial List | 64 |
| Transmission Result Report | 64 |
| Error Report | 65 |
| Power Failure Report | 65 |
| Unauthorized Call Report | 65 |
| Advanced Features | 66 |
| Making Machine Sounds Louder or Quieter | 66 |
| Sending Faxes Over Unreliable Lines-Slow (4800bps) | 67 |
| RDS | 68 |
| Page Header | 68 |
| Changing On/Off Settings | 68 |

5. COPYING

| | |
|--|----|
| Making a Copy | 70 |
| Making Multiple Copies | 71 |
| Making a Book Copy | 72 |
| Reduction and Enlargement | 73 |
| To Set the Reduction Factor | 73 |
| To Set the Enlargement Factor | 74 |
| Zoom (In 1% Increments) | 75 |
| To Use Zoom | 75 |
| Adjusting the Copy Image | 76 |
| To Select the Resolution/Photo Setting | 76 |
| To Adjust the Image Density | 77 |
| Setting an Original on the ADF | 78 |
| Sorting Output | 80 |
| Sorting Copying | 80 |

6. TROUBLESHOOTING

| | |
|--|----|
| General | 82 |
| Printing and Copying | 82 |
| Printing | 83 |
| Copying and Faxing | 84 |
| Scanning | 86 |
| Error Messages | 86 |
| When the Receive File Indicator is Lit | 90 |
| Clearing a Paper Misfeed | 91 |
| Clearing a Feed in the Main Unit | 91 |
| Clearing a Misfeed in the ADF | 93 |
| Clearing a Misfeed in the Optional Paper Feed Unit | 93 |
| When Paper Will Not Feed | 94 |

7. USER MAINTENANCE

| | |
|---|-----|
| Daily Maintenance | 96 |
| Replacing the Toner Cassette and the Cleaning Pad | 97 |
| Storage | 100 |
| Paper | 100 |
| Toner Cassette | 100 |

8. TECHNICAL REFERENCE

| | |
|---|-----|
| Printing the Help List | 101 |
| Customising Default Settings with the User Parameters | 102 |
| Changing the User Parameters | 102 |
| User Parameter Switch Summary | 103 |
| Function List..... | 106 |
| Selecting the Language | 107 |
| Economy Mode | 108 |
| Changing the Economy Mode | 108 |

9. SPECIFICATIONS 109

| | |
|--------------------|-----|
| Index | 112 |
|--------------------|-----|

Part Names

Automatic Document Feeder (ADF)

Holds up to 10 sheets of paper for automatic feeding. Place originals face down.

Document guides

Slide the left guide to fit the size of the paper you are feeding.

Exposure glass

Place originals on this glass face down.

Operation panel

Key panel for controlling the machine.

Output tray extension

Pull out to support paper output from the machine.

Top release lever

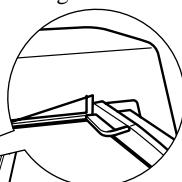
Pull to release the top unit and open it.

Upper paper tray

Holds up to 100 sheets of plain paper.

Original guide

Guides the original correctly into the machine. Make sure your original fits under this guide.



Top unit

Power switch

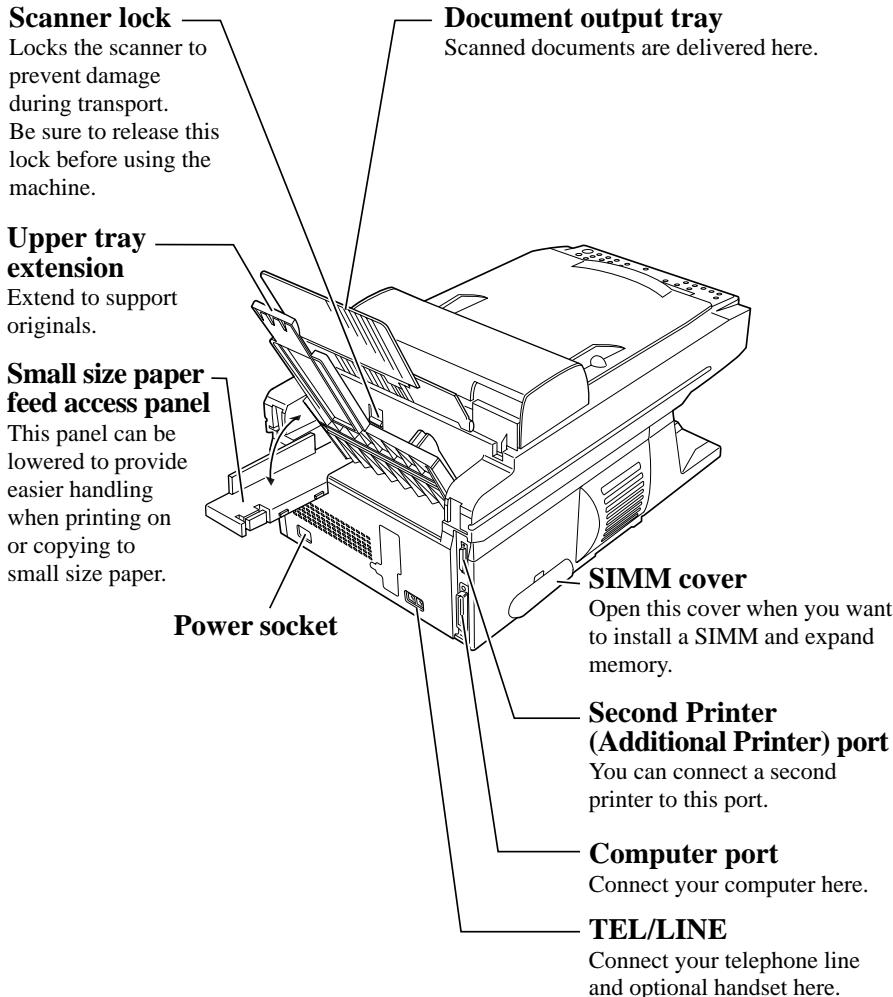
Turns the machine on and off.

Platen cover

Lift this cover to access the exposure glass when you want to scan a page from a book, magazine, or any other original that cannot be fed using the ADF.

Output tray

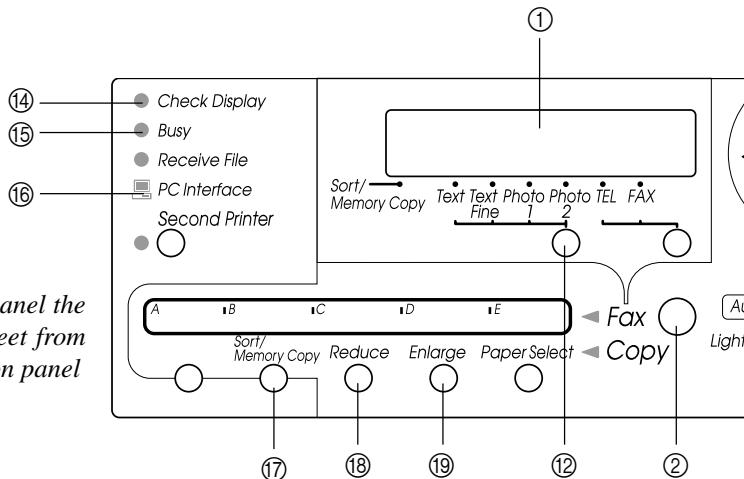
Prints are delivered here. This tray can hold up to 50 sheets.



Operation Panel

Note

Be sure to panel the protective sheet from the operation panel



<General>

① Display

Messages and prompts appear here.

② Fax/Copy key

Press to switch between fax operation mode and copy operation mode. The indicators to the left of this key show which mode the machine is currently in.

③ Numeric keypad

Use these keys to enter the number of copies, dial a fax number or specify values.

④ Clear key

Press to delete the character to the left of the display cursor. When the cursor is located at the far left position, pressing this key deletes all of the input characters (when programming functions only).

⑤ Start key

Press to start copying or begin sending or receiving a fax.

⑥ Stop key

Press this key to interrupt the current operation and return the machine to the standby state. To reset printer mode, hold down this key for at least 3 seconds.

⑦ Economy Mode/Clear Modes key

Pressing this key clears any selected settings to their defaults and cancels the ongoing operation. Hold down this key for more than about 3 seconds to turn Economy mode on or off.

☞ *Economy Mode, see page 108.*

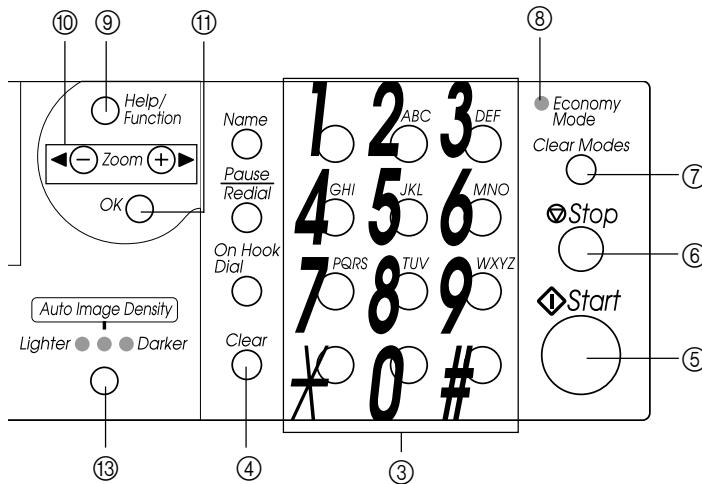
⑧ Economy Mode indicator

Lights when Economy mode is turned on.

⑨ Help/Function key

Use to print the Help List. Press once and enter a number for access to various function settings.

☞ *Printing the Help List, see page 101.*



⑩ Zoom keys

In copy mode, press these keys to fine-tune the preset reduction and enlargement ratios. Also use to select function settings and navigate the function menus.

⑪ OK key

Press to enter values or execute an operation when prompted by a message on the display.

⑫ Original Type Select key

Press to select a setting that best matches your copy original or fax document.

☞ *Image Type, see page 76.*

⑬ Density key

Press to make copies/faxes lighter or darker. Select Auto Image Density to let the machine choose a suitable setting.

⑭ Check Display indicator

Blinks to alert you to read a message on the display.

⑮ Busy indicator

Lights during a fax operation and when making telephone calls.

⑯ PC Interface indicator

Lights while the machine is receiving data from a connected computer.

<Copying>

⑰ Sort/Memory Copy key

Press to change order in which your copy sets are delivered.

☞ *Sorting Output, see page 80.*

⑱ Reduce key

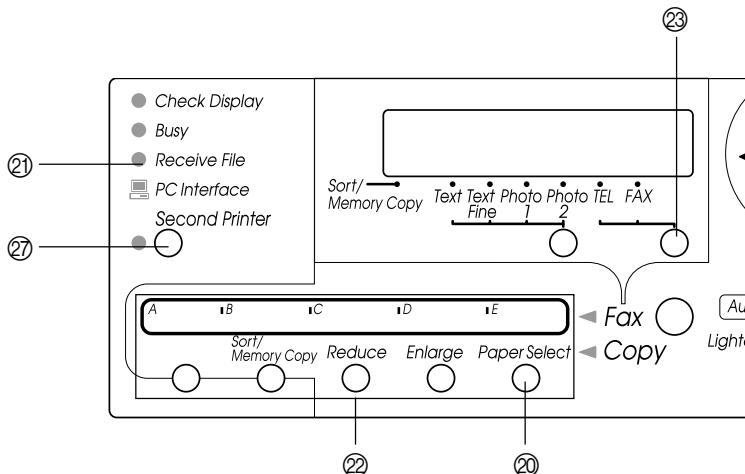
Press to reduce the size of an image when copying.

☞ *To Set the Enlargement Factor, see page 73.*

⑲ Enlarge key

Press to enlarge the size of an image when copying.

☞ *To Set the Reduction Factor, see page 74.*



㉑ Paper Select key

Press to select the copy paper size. When the optional paper feed unit is installed, press to switch between paper sources.

<Faxing>

㉒ Receive File indicator

Lights to let you know there is received fax data in memory that could not be printed for some reason.

☞ *Substitute Reception, page 46.*

㉓ Quick Dial keys

In fax operation mode, press one of these keys once to recall a fax or telephone number you have stored beforehand. In copy operation mode, these keys have different uses.

☞ *Quick Dials, see page 54.*

㉔ Reception Mode key

Press to choose whether the machine should answer all calls automatically.

☞ *Choosing the Reception Mode, see page 46.*

㉕ Name key

Press to recall a fax or telephone number stored in a Name Dial.

☞ *Name Dials, see page 59.*

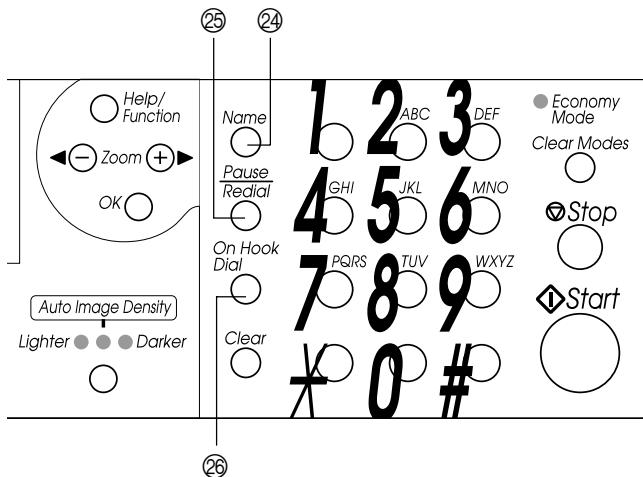
㉖ Pause/Redial key

Press this key in fax standby mode to recall the last number dialled. While entering a fax number, press this key to enter a pause (shown on the display as a hyphen).

㉗ On Hook Dial key

Press this key to establish a connection with the telephone line connected to the machine for dialing.

☞ *On Hook, see page 52.*



<Printing>

㉗ Second Printer key

Press this key to select between printing to this machine (indicator off), and printing to a second printer connected to the machine (indicator on).

This page is intentionally blank

1. SETTING UP

Package Contents

Make sure that all of the items shown in the Package Contents sheet that comes with the machine are included.

⚠ WARNING

- ⚠ Make sure the wall outlet is near the machine and freely accessible so that in event of an emergency it can be unplugged easily.
- ⚠ Do not put any metal objects or containers holding water (e.g. vases, flowerpots, glasses) on the machine. If the contents fall inside the machine, a fire or electric shock could occur.

⚠ CAUTION

- ⚠ Keep the machine away from humidity and dust. A fire or an electric shock might occur.
- ⚠ Do not place the machine on an unstable or tilted surface. If it topples over, it could cause injury.
- ⚠ If you use the machine in a confined space, make sure there is a continuous air turnover.

Location

Environment

| | Acceptable | Recommended |
|-------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| Temperature | 10 to 35°C (50 to 95°F) | 15 to 25°C (59 to 77°F) |
| Humidity | 15 to 80% | 30 to 70% |

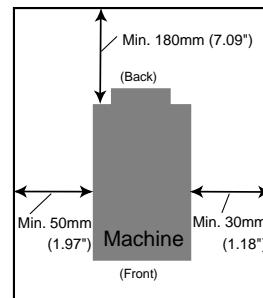
- The machine must be level within 3mm (0.11") both front to rear and left to right.

Locations to Avoid

- Areas exposed to direct sunlight or strong light (more than 2000 lux).
- Areas exposed to cool or heated air (from air conditioners, heaters etc.). Sudden temperature changes can cause condensation to form inside the machine.
- Areas where the machine might be subjected to frequent strong vibration.
- Areas higher than 2500m (8,221 feet) above sea level.

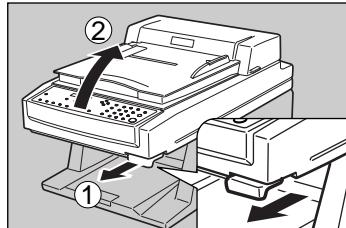
Machine Clearance

Place the machine near the wall outlet, providing minimum clearance as shown.



Installing the Starter Toner Cassette

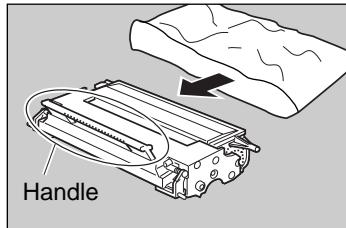
1 Pull the top release lever (①) and open the top unit (②).



2 Hold the starter toner cassette by its handle, and remove it from its vinyl bag.

⚠ CAUTION

Keep all plastic bags out of the reach of children.



⚠ Important!

Be sure to hold the starter toner cassette by its handle.

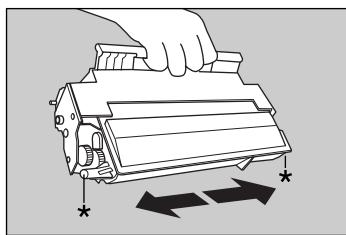
>Note

Keep the vinyl bag for later repackaging when necessary.

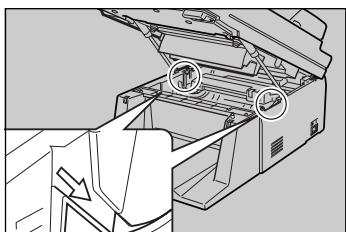
3 Holding the starter toner cassette by its handle, gently shake it side to side 5 or 6 times to evenly distribute the toner inside.

⚠ Important!

Be sure to hold the starter toner cassette by its handle.



4 Look inside the machine and note the locations of the arrows that indicate the toner cassette guides on either side.

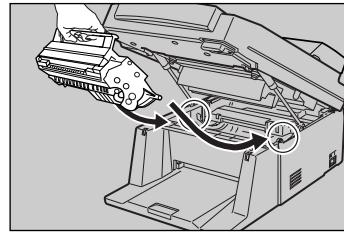


5 Make sure the plastic pins (marked with “*” in the illustration next to step 3) on either side of the starter toner cassette slide along the guides inside the machine.



Note

Be sure to hold the starter toner cassette by its handle.

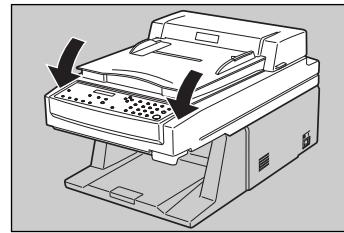


6 To close the top unit, press down firmly but gently on both sides of it until the top unit closes and clicks securely into place.



Note

Background gray cast is sometimes evident just after installing a new toner cassette.



Installing Other Hardware

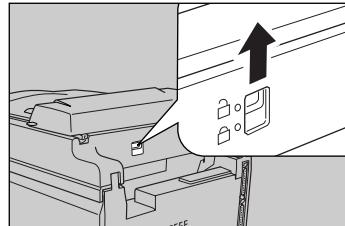
Unlocking the Scanner

Important

Be sure to unlock the scanner before using the machine.

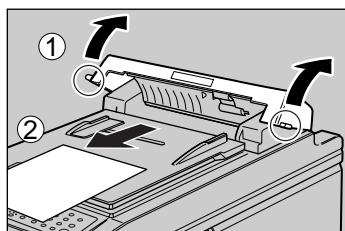
The machine will not operate correctly if the scanner is locked.

- 1 **Unlock the scanner by pulling the lever located at the back of the machine.**

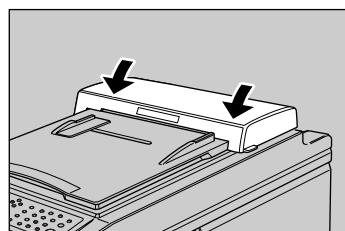


Removing the Protective Sheet

- 1 **Open the ADF cover (①) and then remove the protective sheet (②).**

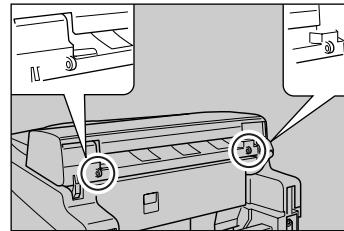


- 2 **Close the ADF cover and make sure it locks securely into place.**

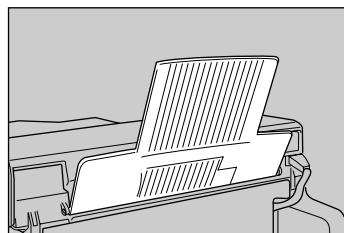


Installing the Document Output Tray

1 Look at the rear of the machine to confirm where the document output tray should fit.



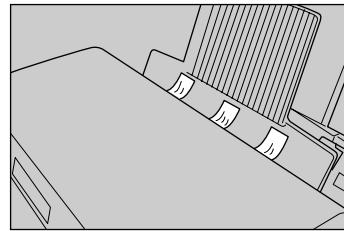
2 Insert one end of the document output tray into the slot provided. Then gently bend the tray so the other end fits into the second slot.



3 Make sure the small pieces of plastic film curl upwards as shown.

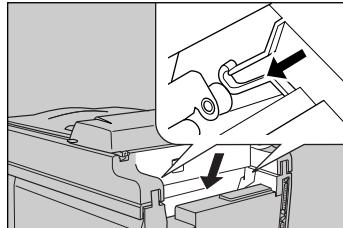
Important!

Documents will not be delivered properly unless the pieces of film are set as shown.



Installing the Upper Paper Tray

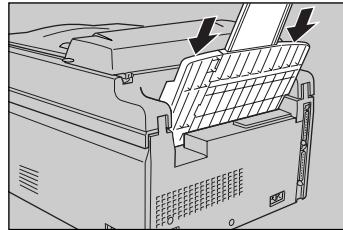
- 1 Look at the rear of the machine and note the locations of the slots for insertion of the upper paper tray on both sides.



- 2 To install the upper paper tray, press down on both sides of the tray, making sure that it is inserted as far as it will go.

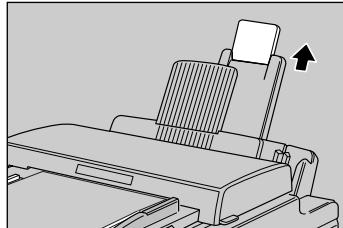
 *Note*

Paper will not be fed correctly into the machine if the upper paper tray is not inserted all the way in.



Preparing the Output Tray

- 1 Pull out the output tray extension as shown.



Connecting to a Computer

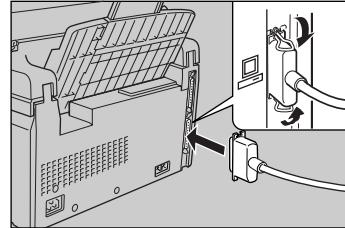
! Important!

Make sure that the power of both the machine and your computer is turned off before making the connection.

- 1** **Plug one end of the provided parallel cable into the lower port on the side of the machine, and secure it in place as shown in the illustration.**

>Note

- *The machine must be connected to a computer for printing.*
- *Use the cable that comes with the machine to connect to your computer.*

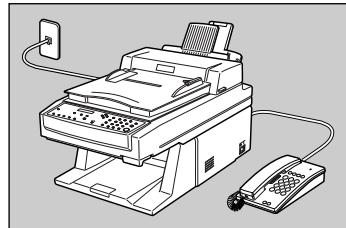


- 2** **Connect the other end of the parallel cable to your computer's parallel printer port.**

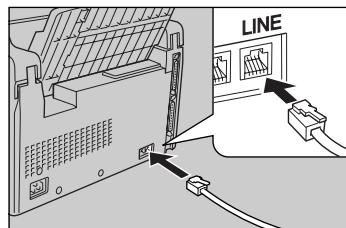
Connecting the Telephone Line and Optional Telephone Handset

There are two similar sockets located at the rear of the machine.

- LINE – the telephone line connection
- TEL – for an optional handset when sharing the line with a telephone



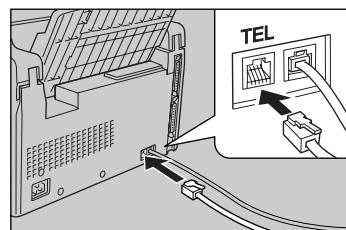
1 Plug the line cable into the LINE socket at the rear of the machine.



2 Connect the other end of the line cable to your telephone line wall socket.

If you have the optional telephone handset, now do the following:

3 Plug the telephone handset cable into the TEL socket at the rear of the machine.

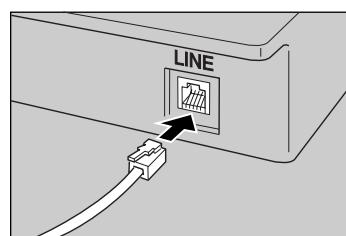


4 Connect the other end of the telephone handset cable to your telephone.

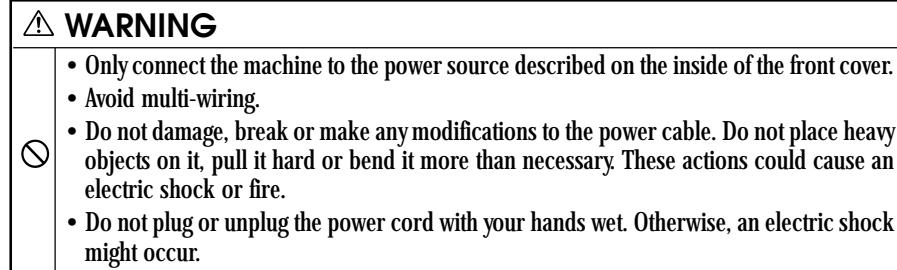
Note

If you wish to also be able to receive incoming telephone calls, you must set the Reception mode to Telephone.

☞ Choosing a Reception Mode, see page 46



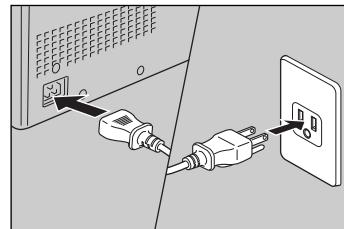
Turning On the Machine



⚠ Important!

Whenever you turn on the machine, make sure that no paper is loaded beforehand.

1 Attach the power cable to the machine and plug the other end into an outlet.

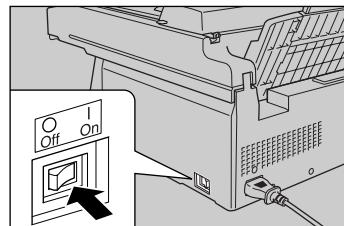


2 Turn on the machine.

>Note

You can select your preferred language used on the operation panel and on reports.

☞ Selecting the Language, see page 107.



2. GETTING ACQUAINTED



Important!

☞ The default display language is English. For how to change to your preferred language, see page 107

Paper and Other Media

The machine supports printing on the following types of paper/media from the upper paper tray.

Refer to the following pages for details.

| | Paper/Media type (Paper size) | Display | Page |
|-------------|--|---|----------|
| Plain paper | A4 (210mm × 297mm) | A4 | p.11 |
| | A5 (148mm × 210mm) | A5 | p.11 |
| | F4 (8 ¹ / ₄ " × 13") | 8 ¹ / ₄ × 13 | p.11 |
| | Letter (8 ¹ / ₂ " × 11") | Letter (8 ¹ / ₂ × 11) | p.11 |
| | Legal (8 ¹ / ₂ " × 14") | Legal (8 ¹ / ₂ × 14) | p.11 |
| Envelopes | C5 Envelope (162mm × 229mm) | C5 Env | p.13, 15 |
| | C6 Envelope (114mm × 162mm) | C6 Env | p.13, 15 |
| | DL Envelope (110mm × 162mm) | DL Env | p.13, 15 |
| | Transparencies | | p.15 |
| | Label paper | | p.15 |



Note

Do not attempt to use the following types of paper: wrinkled or creased paper, curled or rolled paper, paper containing carbon, carbon-backed paper, coated paper, onion skin or other very thin paper.



CAUTION



Do not reuse stapled paper. Do not use aluminium foil, paper containing carbon or other conductive paper. Otherwise, a fire might occur.

Loading Paper

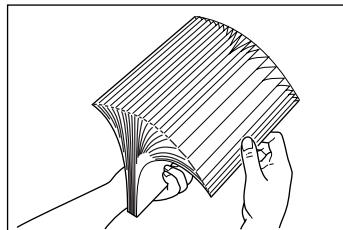
After you have set up the machine you need to load paper then specify the paper size using the procedure below.

Important!

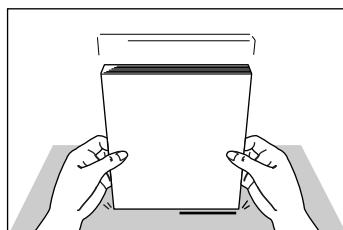
When loading paper into the upper paper tray, do not load more than 100 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m² or 20 lb). Overloading the upper paper tray can cause misfeeds.

Loading Plain Paper into the Upper Paper Tray

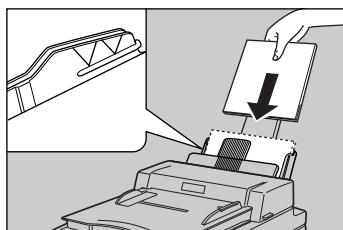
1 Fan the stack of paper to make sure that all pages are free and are not sticking together. The upper paper tray holds up to 100 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m² or 20 lb).



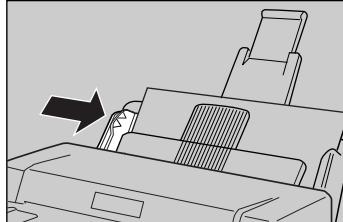
2 Straighten up all four sides of the stack by tapping them on a desk or tabletop.



3 Set paper into the upper paper tray. Make sure that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark on the tray guide.



4 Squeeze the tray guide and slide it against the edge of the stack.



5 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

6 Press  ▶.

Function no. : __

7 Press  .

61 Tray Pap.Size



If the paper feed unit (option) is installed, refer to page 19 for details on how to specify the paper size.

8 Press .

Tray guide OK? 

9 Press . Then press  ▶ or  ▲ until the correct paper size appears.

A4 ? ►

10 When the correct paper size is on the display, press . If the paper feed unit (option) (page 17) is installed, you can also select its paper size at this time.

Registered



Do not carry out any operations while "Registered" appears on the display.

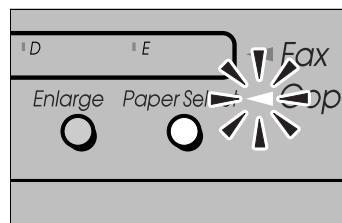
6 Others 

11 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> to return to the standby display.



Tip

If the paper feed unit (option) is not installed and the machine is in copy operation mode, you can press  in place of  in step **5. Next, skip step **6** and **7**, and jump directly to step **8**.**



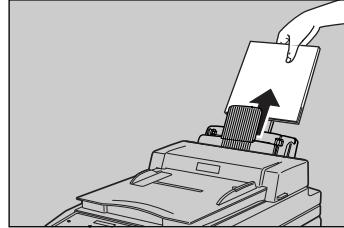
Loading Small Size Paper



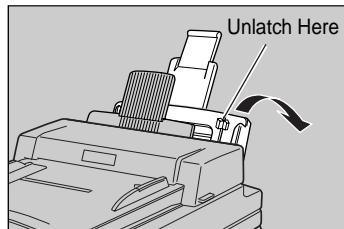
Note

We recommend that you always feed small size paper vertically with the shorter edge feeding into the machine first.

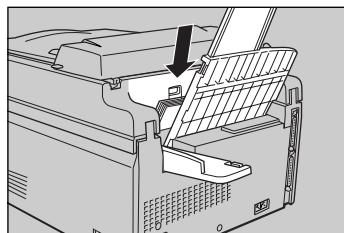
- 1 Remove all paper before loading small size paper in the upper paper tray.



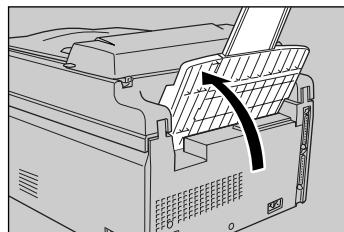
- 2 Open the small size paper feed access panel on the back of the machine by unlatching it as shown in the illustration. Opening the small panel makes it easy to handle small size paper.



- 3 Set paper into the upper paper tray. Make sure that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark on the tray guide.



- 4 After setting the paper into the tray, raise the small panel until it snaps securely into place.



5 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List 

6 Press  .

Function no. :

7 Press  .

61 Tray Pap.Size



If the paper feed unit (option) is installed, refer to page 19 for details on how to specify the paper size.

8 Press .

Tray guide OK? 

9 Press . Then press   or   until the correct paper size appears.

A5  

10 When the correct paper size is on the display, press .

Registered 



Do not carry out any operations while "Registered" appears on the display.

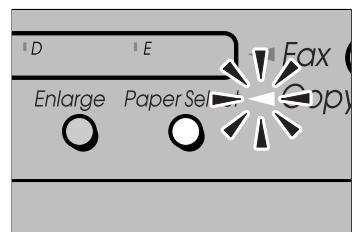
6 Others 

11 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> to return to the standby display.



Tip

**If the paper feed unit (option) is not installed and the machine is in copy operation mode, you can press  in place of  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> in step **5**. Next, skip step **6** and **7**, and jump directly to step **8**.**



Important!

Be sure to specify the paper size again before copying, printing or receiving faxes onto A4 or Letter size paper. If you do not, you will not be able to receive faxes.

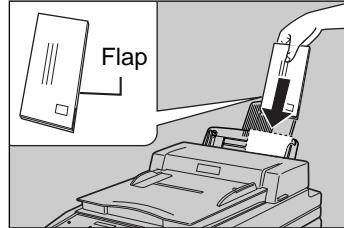
Loading Other Media

Use the following procedures to load envelopes, transparencies, and label paper.

Loading Envelopes

Load up to 5 envelopes at a time using the same procedure for loading small size paper on page 13.

- Insert envelopes print side up with the stamp position as shown.



- Envelope flaps should be securely folded down, so the envelope is “closed”. This is especially important when printing on envelopes with adhesive on the flaps because heat generated during the printing process can cause the adhesive to melt and get on rollers.

Note

- ☞ Paper select operation, see page 14.

Loading Transparencies

Load only one transparency at a time using the plain paper loading procedure on page 10 for large transparencies, and the small paper loading procedure on page 13 for small transparencies.

Note

- ☞ Refer to the paper select operation on page 12 for large transparencies or page 14 for small ones.

Loading Label Paper

Load only 10 sheets of label paper at a time using the plain paper loading procedure on page 11.

Note

- ☞ Paper select operation, see page 12.

Second (Additional) Printer

This machine features a port for connecting a second printer. When connected, press the *Second Printer* key to switch between the two printers.

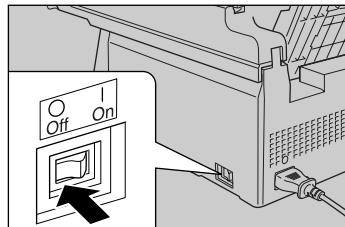


Note

Make sure that the power of your computer is turned off before making the connection.

Connecting to a Second Printer

- 1 Turn off both the machine and your second printer.



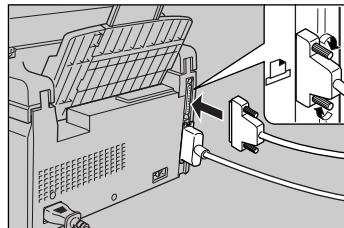
- 2 Connect one end of a parallel interface cable to your second printer.
- 3 Connect the other end of the cable to the second printer port, securing it in place with the screws.



Note

- Only use a standard IEEE 1284 compliant 36-pin parallel cable.

☞ Using the second printer, see page 28.



Paper Feed Unit (Option)

This section describes how to install the paper feed unit (option) and how to load paper in it. Addition of a paper feed unit provides you with a second paper source that holds up to 250 sheets of A4 or Letter size paper.

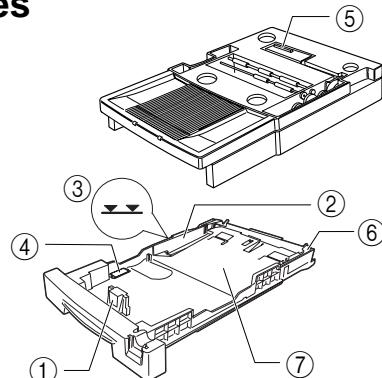


Important!

Make sure that machine power is turned off and that the power cord is unplugged from the power socket before installing the paper feed unit.

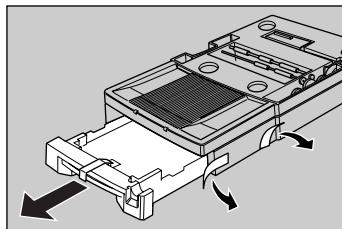
Paper Feed Unit Part Names

- ① Front guide
- ② Side guide
- ③ Limit mark
- ④ Paper size indicator
- ⑤ Connector
- ⑥ Corner guides
- ⑦ Metal plate



Installing the Paper Feed Unit

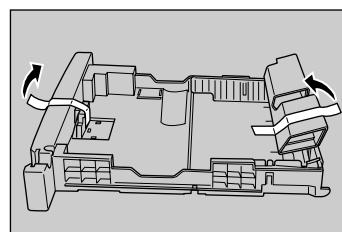
- 1 Remove all the packing tapes from the paper feed unit and pull the paper tray out of the unit.



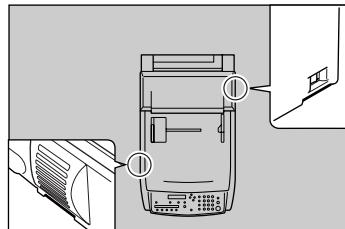
- 2 After removing all tapes and cardboard from inside of the paper tray, insert the tray back into the machine until it locks into place. Locate the paper feed unit where you plan to use the machine.



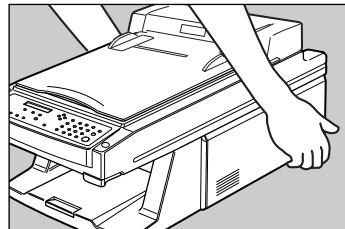
Be sure to place the paper feed unit on a level surface.



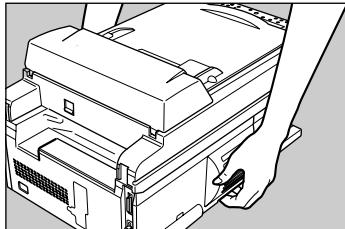
3 The machine has handholds at the locations shown in the illustration. Note that the illustration shows the machine as viewed from above.



- This illustration shows the handheld location on the right side of the machine.



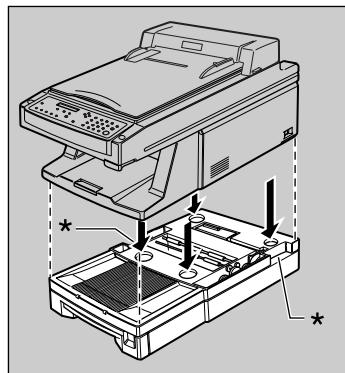
- This is the handheld location on the left side of the machine.



4 Carefully lower the machine onto the paper feed unit, making sure that the dowels on the paper feed unit fit into holes in the bottom of the machine properly.

⚠ CAUTION

When lifting the machine, make sure your hands are at the locations indicated by “*” in the illustration. This protects against pinching your fingers between the machine and paper feed unit.



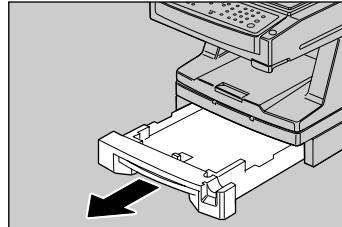
Note

After the above installation, attach the power cord to the machine and plug the other end into an outlet. Refer to page 8 for details.

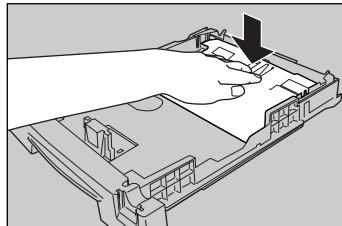
Loading Paper into the Paper Feed Unit

You can load either A4 or Letter size paper into the paper feed unit. Refer to page 20 for details on how to change the positions of the paper guides inside of the tray to match the type of paper you are using.

- 1 Pull out the paper tray and remove it from the paper feed unit.



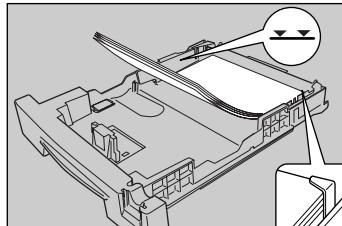
- 2 Press down on the metal plate in the bottom of the paper tray until the plate locks into place with a "click".



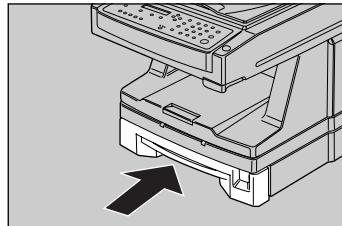
- 3 Up to 250 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m² or 20 lb) can be inserted into the paper tray as shown in the illustration. Make sure that the top of the stack is not higher than the limit mark on the side fence.



Make sure the leading corners of the paper fit under the corner guides.



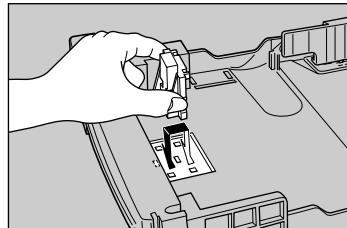
- 4 Slide the paper tray back into the paper feed unit until it locks into place.



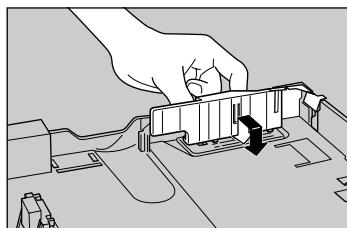
Changing the Paper Size

Use the following procedure to set the positions of the paper guides inside the paper tray for either A4 or Letter paper.

- 1 Squeezing in on both sides of the front guide, slide it to the correct position for the desired paper size.



- 2 Squeezing in on both sides of the side guide, slide it to the correct position for the desired paper size.



Important!

Whenever you change the paper size, be sure to also specify the paper size using the procedure below.

Specifying the Paper Size

After you install the paper feed unit (option), you can select between the upper paper tray and the paper feed unit as the paper source, and specify the size of paper in the paper feed unit.

- 1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

- 2 Press  ^{Zoom} .

Function no.: --

- 3 Press  ^{MNO} .

61 Tray Pap.Size

4 Press **OK**.

Lower Tray?

OK

Note

The actual message that appears on the machine's display depends on the paper source you last used. If "Upper Tray?" appears, press **Zoom** $\textcircled{+}\blacktriangleright$ or $\blacktriangleleft\textcircled{-}\textcircled{+}$ **Zoom** to display the "Lower Tray?" message before proceeding with step **4**.

5 Press **OK**. Then press **Zoom** $\textcircled{+}\blacktriangleright$ or $\blacktriangleleft\textcircled{-}\textcircled{+}$ **Zoom** until the correct paper size appears.

A4 ?

▶

6 When the correct size is on the display, press **OK**.

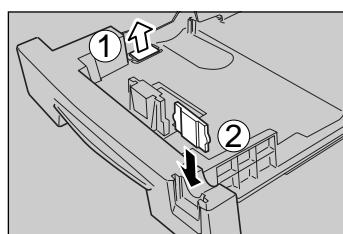
Registered

Note

Do not carry out any operations while "Registered" appears on the display.

6 Others

OK

7 Press **OK**<sup>Help/
Function</sup> to return to the standby display.**Installing the Paper Size Indicator****1** Remove the paper size indicator (①). Positioning the indicator so the side that shows the paper size you are using (A4 or Letter) is facing outwards, insert it into the front of the paper tray (②).

Selecting the Paper Source

1 Press  until the desired paper source appears.

The upper paper tray is selected when "U" is on the display, and the paper feed unit is selected when "L" is on the display.

100%

U 01

100%

L 01

Upgrading Memory

You can install a Single Inline Memory Module (SIMM) to upgrade the on-board memory of the machine.

The machine is shipped from the factory with a 4MB SIMM which can be replaced with an 8MB, 16MB or 32MB SIMM.

Use the following procedure to install an 8MB, 16MB or 32MB SIMM.



Note

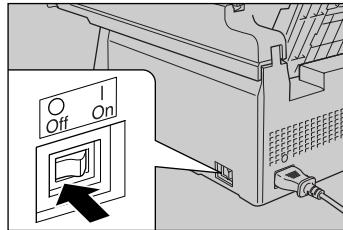
*The following are the required specifications for a SIMM used with this machine:
72-pin, 60ns, Extend Date Out (EDO), parity/non-parity.*



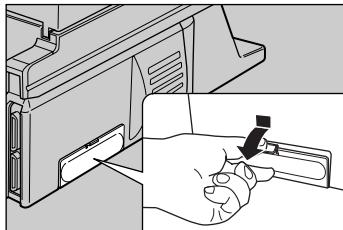
Important!

Make sure you touch some grounded metal object with your hand to discharge any electrostatic charge from your body before handling the SIMM.

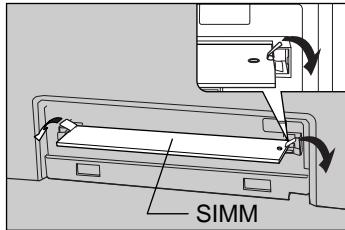
- 1 Turn off the machine.



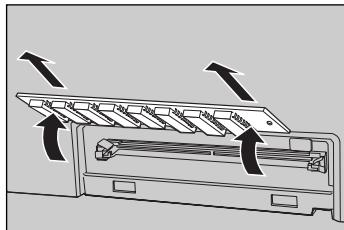
- 2 Remove the SIMM cover located on the left side of the machine.



- 3 Pull apart the hooks on the both sides of the SIMM board that hold it in place.



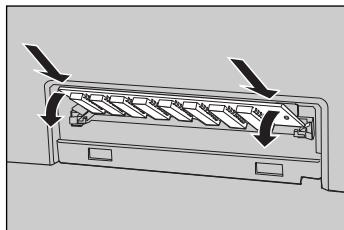
4 Carefully lift out the currently installed SIMM board.



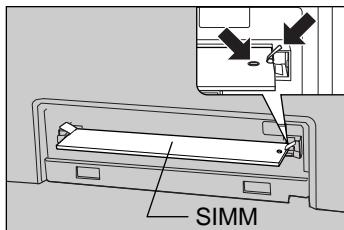
5 Angle the new SIMM board as shown in the illustration, and insert it down into the slot. Gently rock it back and forth until you hear it snap into place.

Important!

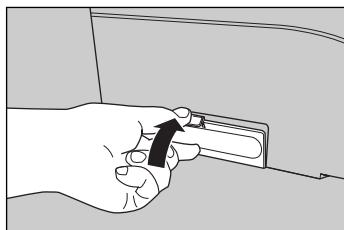
Make sure the SIMM board is oriented correctly when you insert it into the slot.



6 Make sure the hooks on the sides of the SIMM board snap securely into place.



7 Replace the cover by inserting its tabs into the holes provided, as shown in the illustration.



3. PRINTING AND SCANNING

When connected to a compatible PC, you can use this machine as a high performance laser printer and black and white scanner.



Important!

- Make sure that your PC parallel port is set to ECP. If it is not, please consult your PC manual on how to change it.



Note

- For information on PC hardware and software requirements, please read the *README* file on the CD.
- Printer drivers are provided for both Windows® 95/98 and Windows® 3.1, but the scanning feature requires Windows® 95/98.

Setting up

Before you can start printing and scanning you need to the following if you have not done so already:

- Connect the machine to your PC
- Install the software drivers on your PC

Installing the Software Drivers

Follow the steps below to install the printer/scanner drivers on your PC.

1 Switch the machine on.

2 Make sure the machine is connected to your PC and paper is loaded in the upper paper tray.

☞ Connecting to a computer, see page 7

☞ Loading Paper, see page 11

3 Insert the provided software CD into your CD-ROM drive.

4 Do one of the following according to your operating system:

• **Windows® 95/98**

Run the setup application. For example, if your CD-ROM is assigned to D, run “D:\Scan-in\Setup.exe”.

• **Windows® 3.1**

First copy the disk images under the directory named “3.1” on the CD-ROM to floppy disks.

Then insert the first floppy disk into your floppy disk drive and run “install.exe”.



Note

You cannot install from CD-ROM under Windows 3.1.

Only the printer driver will be installed under Windows 3.1.

5 Follow the instructions that appear on the display.

For detailed information on how to print and scan from your PC, please refer to the online help provided.

Features You Can Access From the Printer Driver

Printer Driver Contents

■ Paper Defaults

Paper size : Size, Measurement Unit
 Page orientation : Portrait, Landscape
 Output : Copies, Print in reverse order
 Paper source : Source
 About

■ N-Up Printing

Select a Layout Option : Normal, Reduce for N-up printing
 (Print page borders ; 2 pages up/sheet ; 4 pages up/sheet)

■ Document

Document Type Settings

| | Automatic | Photo (Grayscale) | Desktop Publishing | High Speed Draft | Business Graphics |
|----------------------|-----------|-------------------|--------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| Graphics Mode | Raster | Raster | GL/2 | Raster | Raster |
| Font Resolution(dpi) | 600 | 600 | 600 | 300 | 600 |
| Graphics Resolution | High | High | High | High | High |
| Halftone | Screening | Screening | Screening | Screening | Dithering |

Job Settings : True Type Mode, Name

■ Configuration

Device Configuration : Feeder ; Toner Save Mode ; Time-out

■ Fonts

Font Manager (To add printer fonts)

■ Overlays

Overlay Assignments : None, All pages, Odd/Even pages, First/Other pages

Cover/Divider page Overlays

Create New Overlay

Manage Overlays : Get files from other sources to use as overlays, Send created overlays to other sources, Rename overlays, Remove overlays

Important!

After printing a large number of pages, wait a few minutes before turning off the machine.

Note

Be sure to use online help and Read me file of the printer driver to get the most out of all the printer features and functions.

Using the Second Printer (Additional Printer)

Use the following procedure to switch between this machine and a second printer when a second printer is connected.

Important!

If the second printer has a bi-directional mode, make sure you turn it off.

Note

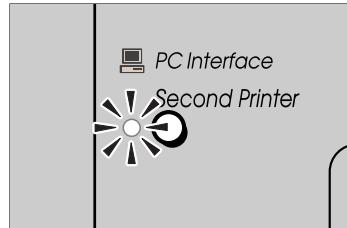
Refer to page 16 for details on connecting a second printer.

Printing to the Second Printer

1 Press  ^{Second Printer}. The Second Printer indicator lights.

Important!

Whenever you change printers, be sure to also change to the appropriate printer driver on your computer.



Note

While the Second Printer Indicator is lit, print data from your computer passes through the machine to the second printer.

2 Perform the required print operation with the application you are using.

4. FAXING

Your machine is furnished with superior faxing capabilities and wide a range of powerful fax features. Here are some of the things you can do:

- Send and receive fax messages
- Store fax numbers you often use and recall them with a single key press
- Redial the previous fax number
- Share your fax line with a telephone
- Keep track of machine usage through printed reports
- Customise default settings to suit your requirements

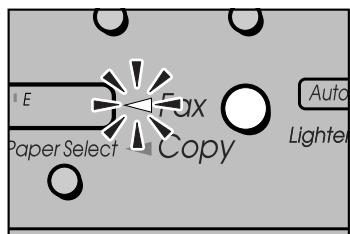
Note

Please read the Setup section before you start. It explains how to set up the fax feature to suit your needs.

Switching between Fax Operation and Copy Operation Mode

This machine has two modes: fax operation mode and copy operation mode. You can still receive fax messages when the machine is in copy operation mode, but if you wish to send a fax you must make sure the machine is in fax operation mode.

To switch back and forth between copy operation mode and fax operation mode, press   .



The Fax and Copy indicators indicate which mode the machine is currently in.

Note

When the machine automatically switches to Economy Mode, all indicators turn off. Press any key to exit Economy mode.

- ☞ *Economy Mode, see page 108.*
- ☞ *You can select the default mode the machine starts in. See User Parameters on page 102.*

Entering Characters on the Operation Panel

Entering Numbers

Enter digits when dialling inputting or fax numbers, specifying function codes, or registering various information, such as your own fax number.

To enter digits 0^{PDT} - 9^{PDT} , press the appropriate key on the numeric keypad.

E.g. to enter the number 12345678, press 

12345678

☞ *Entering Pauses and Tones in Fax Numbers, see page 43.*

Entering Letters, Symbols and Spaces

When the display asks you enter a name, you can use the numeric keypad to enter characters and symbols.

To enter a character, press the appropriate key on the numeric keypad until the character appears. Then press the $\text{Zoom} \oplus \blacktriangleright$ key to move the cursor forward.

| Press this key repeatedly | To enter these characters: |
|---------------------------|---|
| | 1 |
| | A B C 2 a b c Ä ä |
| | D E F 3 d e f |
| | G H I 4 g h i |
| | J K L 5 j k l |
| | M N O 6 m n o Ñ Ö ñ ö |
| | P Q R S 7 p q r s |
| | T U V 8 t u v Ü ü |
| | W X Y Z 9 w x y z |
| | * |
| | [Space] . - 0 + ? / : * % & ! () [] " |
| | # |

 **Note**

Some special characters in lower case appear identical in upper case on the display due to space limitations. These characters are printed correctly on lists and reports.

Deleting Characters and Moving the Cursor

When entering names and storing numbers:

- To delete the character to the left of the cursor, press .

 **Note**

If the cursor is at the far left of the display, pressing  deletes the whole name and number.

- To move the cursor left, press the  Zoom key.
- To move the cursor right, press the Zoom  key.

Setting up

Please Read This First

Before you can send or receive faxes you must connect the machine to a telephone line and store the following settings:

- ☛ *Own Name/TTI, see page 33.*
- ☛ *Dial Mode, see page 34.*
- ☛ *Own Fax Number, see page 36.*
- ☛ *Date and Time, see page 38.*

In addition, you may wish to adjust the following:

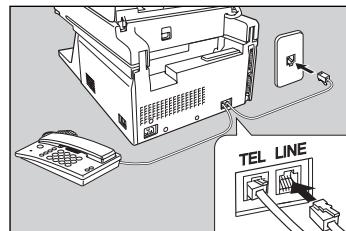
- ☛ *Selecting the Language, see page 107.*
- ☛ *Summer Time (Daylight Saving Time), see page 39.*
- ☛ *The volume of sounds the machine makes, see page 66.*

If you wish to share the line with a telephone handset, you may need to change the reception mode.

- ☛ *Choosing a Reception Mode, see page 46.*

Connecting to the Telephone Line

There are two similar sockets located at the rear of the machine.



- LINE—the telephone line connection
- TEL—for an optional handset when sharing the line with a telephone

1 Insert the line cable into the LINE socket at the rear of the machine.

2 Connect the other end of the line cable to your telephone line.

Storing your Own Name/TTI

Store your name or name of your organisation. When you send a fax, this identification appears at the top of the page when printed at the other end. It is also shown on the other party's display during communication. It can be up to 32 characters long.

- ☞ *Entering Characters on the Operation Panel, see page xii, 30.*
- ☞ *If you do not want this identification printed on faxes you send, see Page Header on page 68.*

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> •

Prt Help List ►

2 Press  ►.

Function no.: __

3 Press  .

16 Own name/TTI ^O _K

4 Press .

■

5 Enter your name or name of your organisation.

E.g. press   Zoom  ►   

XYZ CO. ■

Zoom  ►     Zoom  ► 

Zoom  ►    Zoom  ►   

Zoom  ►   Zoom  ►



To clear the entire setting, make sure the cursor is at the far left position then press .

Press  to clear the setting, or press  to cancel this operation

XYZ CO.

Delete?

^O _K

6 Press . The display opposite will flash briefly on the display and then the function menu will reappear.

Registered



Do not carry out any operations while "Registered" appears on the display.

1 Set up



7 Do one of the following:

- Enter another function number.
- Press  to return to standby mode.

Setting the Dial Mode

Specify the type of telephone line you are using (tone or pulse dial). If you are unsure of what this should be, please consult your line provider.

If your machine is behind a PABX, you should also provide the following details:

- The PABX number that gives you an outside dial tone—You can enter 0, or a value between 01 and 99 (00 is not possible).
- The PSTN access method. This will depend on your locale and the PABX system you are using.

The machine will not function correctly if these settings are not correct. Consult your systems administrator if you are unsure.

1 Press .

Prt Help List ►

2 Press  ►.

Function no.: _ _

3 Press   .

12 Dial Mode 

4 Press .

Mode: Tone? 

5 Press  Zoom or Zoom  to select Pulse or Tone.

Mode: Pulse? 

6 Press .

- If the display opposite does not appear, press to finish.

Mode: PABX? No? 

7 Press  Zoom or Zoom  to select whether your fax machine is behind a PABX.

Mode: PABX? Yes 

8 Press .

- If you chose "No" in step **7**, proceed to step **12**.
- If you chose "Yes", proceed to step **9**.

1 Set up 

Postline by:

9 Enter the digit or digits that give you an outside dial tone on the numeric keypad, e.g. enter 0.

You can enter 0, or a value between 01 and 99 (00 is not possible).



When changing an existing setting, press  to clear it, then enter the new number.

10 Press .

Postline by: 0 

11 Press  Zoom or Zoom  to select the PSTN access method.

Three methods are available.

<number>: Access the outside line by dialling the number you entered in step **9**

Ground: Ground Start

Flash: Flash Start

Method: 0? 

Method: Flash? 

12 Press **OK**. The display opposite will flash briefly on the display and then the function menu will reappear.

Registered



Do not carry out any operations while “Registered” appears on the display.

1 Set up

OK

13 Do one of the following:

- Enter another function number.
- Press Help/Function to return to standby mode.

Storing your Own Fax Number

Store the telephone number of the line your machine is connected to. This will appear on the other party's display during communication and be printed on their and your own reports.



In some locales you cannot store your own fax number.

If the other party is using Authorized Reception or a similar feature to handle messages from certain senders differently, they should specify this information when registering Specified Senders on their machine.

To increase the legibility of your number, you can insert a “+” character and spaces. To enter a “+”, press **#**. To enter a space, press **+**.



The fax number can be up to 20 digits long.

☞ *Entering Numbers, see page 30.*

1 Press **OK**<sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press **Zoom** **+** ►.

Function no.: __

3 Press  .

17 Own Fax No. 

4 Press .



5 Enter your own fax number on the numeric keypad.

E.g. press #      

+12 3 456 



To clear the entire setting, make sure the cursor is at the far left position then press . The display opposite will appear.

Delete? 

Press  to clear the setting, or press  to cancel this operation.

6 Press .

Registered



Do not carry out any operations while “Registered” appears on the display.

7 Do one of the following:

1 Set up 

Setting the Date and Time

This is printed on reports to help you keep track of machine usage.

- If you make a mistake when entering a value, press the \blacktriangleleft  and \triangleright  keys to position the cursor and enter the value again.

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List \triangleright

2 Press  \triangleright .

Function no.: _ _

3 Press .

11 Date/Time

- Enter another function number.
- Press Help/Function to return to standby mode.

Time: 01:13 $^{\circ}$ _K

4 Press .

Year: 99 $^{\circ}$ _K

5 Press .

Year: 00 $^{\circ}$ _K

6 Enter the year on the numeric keypad.

E.g. to enter the year 2000, press  .

Month: 02 $^{\circ}$ _K

7 Press .

Month: 05 $^{\circ}$ _K

8 Enter the month on the numeric keypad.

E.g. press  .

Day: 01 $^{\circ}$ _K

9 Press .

Day:

23

10 Enter the date on the numeric keypad.

E.g. press  2 3.

Registered

11 Press . The display opposite will flash briefly on the display and then the function menu will reappear.

1 Set up





Do not carry out any operations while “Registered” appears on the display.

12 Do one of the following:

- Enter another function number.
- Press  ^{Help/}_{Function} to return to standby mode.

Turning Summer Time (Daylight Saving Time) on/off

This feature is useful if local custom requires advancing or setting the clock back.

One minute after you turn Summer Time on, the clock advances by an hour. Similarly, one minute after you turn Summer Time off, the clock is put back an hour.

☞ For how to switch this feature on or off, see *Changing On/Off Settings* on page 68.

Sending Faxes

How to Send a Fax

This is the basic procedure for sending a fax message. For detailed information and explanations of the advanced features available, see the following pages:

- ☛ *Economy Mode, see page 108.*
- ☛ *Setting Documents For Faxing, see page 40.*
- ☛ *Adjusting Scan Settings, see page 41.*
- ☛ *Quick Dials, see page 54.*
- ☛ *Name Dials, see page 59.*
- ☛ *Redialling a Number, see page 44.*
- ☛ *Entering Pauses and Tones in Fax Numbers, see page 43.*

Set documents you wish to fax in the same way as when setting originals for copying. There are two methods:

- On the exposure glass—set documents face-down one page at a time
- In the ADF—insert a stack of up to 10 pages face-down

- ☛ *For how to set a document on the exposure glass, see Making a Copy, see page 27*
- ☛ *For the ADF, see Setting an Original on the ADF, see pages 35-36*

1 Check that the standby display is shown.

- If the display is blank, press any key to exit Economy mode.

100%

01

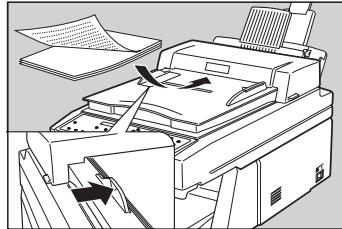
2 If necessary, press to switch to fax operation mode.

Dial/Set orig.

3 Set your document in one of the following ways:

- In the ADF

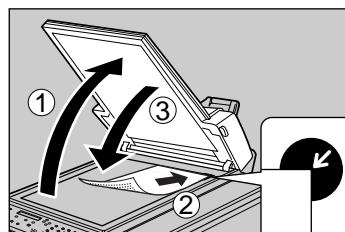
Carefully insert the document stack face-down into the ADF until the display changes to "Dial number".



Dial number

- Make sure this message appears. If it does not, your document will not be scanned from the ADF

- Lift the platen cover ① then place the first page of your document face-down on the exposure glass aligning it with the arrow mark on the scale ②. Then close the platen cover ③.

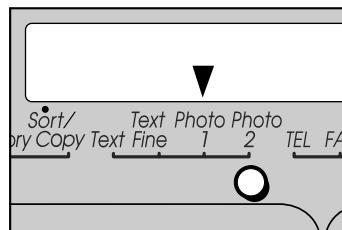


Dial/Set orig.

4 Adjust the scan settings if necessary.

- E.g. if your document is a photograph, press the Original Type Select key twice to select Photo 1.

| Setting | Use for: |
|-------------|----------------------------|
| [Text] | Standard text |
| [Text Fine] | Detail text |
| [Photo1] | Photographs |
| [Photo2] | Mixed text and photographs |



☞ To select the Resolution/Photo setting, see page 76.

5 Dial the fax number in one of the following ways:

- On the numeric keypad.

E.g. press

- Press a Quick Dial key with a number stored in it.

E.g. press

- Press  then enter the first letter of a previously stored Name Dial.

E.g. press  then press

12345678_

B: XYZ CO.

ABC CO.

6 Press .

If you set your document in the ADF, the machine dials the fax number and sends your fax message.

Dialing...

If you set your document on the exposure glass in step **7**, you now need to do the following steps:

7 To select the length of your document, press  or  until a suitable length appears.

 Vert.: A4? ►

8 Press  or .

The machine dials the fax number.

When the connection is established, if the other party has registered it, their CSI will be displayed. If no CSI is registered, "Transmitting" will appear instead.

After the machine has scanned your document, the displays opposite will appear:

Dialing...

9 Do one of the following:

- If all pages of your document have been scanned in, go to step **10**.
- If your document contains more than one page, remove the page from the exposure glass and set the next page before the counter on the display reaches zero. Then press **OK**  or . Wait until the displays opposite appear and repeat this step for all pages in your document.

Set next OK? 

To finish = # 06



You have 16 seconds to set the next page. If you do not set another page, the machine automatically finishes the transmission.

Set next OK? 

To finish = # 14

10 Press # on the numeric keypad to finish sending your fax message.**Entering Pauses and Tones in Fax Numbers**

You can enter pauses and tones when dialling, or store them in Quick Dial and Name Dial numbers.

☞ *Quick Dials, see page 54.*

☞ *Name Dials, see page 59.*

●Entering Pauses

In some situations, you may need to insert a pause in fax numbers. For example:

- If your telephone line is behind a PABX (you have to dial an access code to access outside numbers), insert a pause between the access code and the telephone number.
- For international numbers, enter a pause after the country code.

To enter a pause in a fax number, press  .

The pause is shown on the display as a “-” character.

001-

●Entering Tones

Some organisations offer you special services by telephone which you can access using Touch Tone or DTMF tones.

To enter a tone, press the  or  keys.

☞ *Setting the Dial Mode, see page 34.*

Redialling a Number

The machine remembers the last fax or telephone number dialled with the numeric keys, a Quick Dial or a Name Dial. To redial a fax number, follow the procedure below.

Note

- If you dialled the last number with a Quick Dial or Name Dial, the number will be displayed instead of the stored label.
- You cannot redial a number dialled with the handset keypad.

1 Make sure the machine is in fax operation mode.

2 Set your document.

3 Press  .

4 Press  .

5 Continue the standard procedure for sending a fax.

Automatic Redial

If the machine cannot connect to the other party for some reason (e.g. the line is busy) when sending a document from the ADF, it will wait a while and then attempt to dial again. This will be repeated until the connection is made, or the redial count maximum is reached.

Redial in:1'29"



The redial interval and count maximum vary according to your locale.

● Cancelling Automatic Redial

To cancel redialling, remove your document from the ADF.

Cancelling Transmission of a Fax

To cancel a fax transmission while dialling or during transmission, press the Stop key and remove your document.

Trans. canceled



Once a connection has been established and transmission has begun, you cannot cancel transmission of data already sent.

Receiving Faxes

Choosing a Reception Mode

This machine has two reception modes:

- FAX mode
- TEL mode

●FAX Mode

In this mode the machine automatically answers incoming calls. When a call is received, the machine rings a few times to alert you that a message is being sent, then starts receiving and printing the message.

FAX mode is ideal for a dedicated fax line.



Note

- *The machine cannot switch between FAX mode and TEL mode automatically.*

●TEL Mode

In this mode, the machine does not answer incoming calls automatically. The machine will continue ringing until you pick up the handset (option), or start fax reception manually.

This mode is useful if you are sharing the line with a telephone. If the caller is a person, you can answer the telephone normally, but if it is a fax machine you can still receive the message.



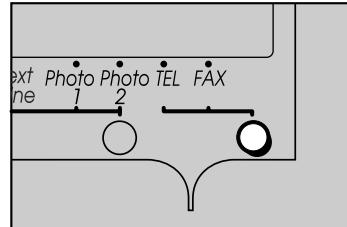
Note

- *On Hook dialling is not available in some locales.*
- *This mode requires someone to be near the machine to receive fax messages. If nobody answers the call, fax messages will not be received.*

☞ *Receiving Calls in TEL Mode, see page 47.*

●Switching between FAX Mode and TEL Mode

Press the Reception Mode key to switch between FAX mode and TEL mode.



●Receiving calls in TEL Mode

When the machine is switched to TEL mode, follow these steps to answer incoming calls.

1 When the machine rings remove all documents from the ADF then, press

On Hook
Dial



or lift the handset and listen.

Telephone call

- If you hear a voice and you lifted the handset, continue the conversation as normal and replace the handset when finished.
- If you hear another fax machine, make sure the machine is in fax operation mode (press Fax/Copy if necessary), then go to step 2.

2 Press then press or until the display opposite appears.

Mode: Recep.?

3 Press and replace the handset.

The machine will start receiving the message.

Connecting ...

Screening out Unwanted Faxes with Authorized Reception

This feature lets you screen out unwanted incoming fax messages. In this manual, the CSI of another machine which you wish to allow to send you fax messages is referred to as a Specified Sender. When Authorized Reception is turned on, your machine will only receive fax messages from Specified Senders—all other incoming messages will be rejected and not printed.

Note

If the other party has not registered their CSI or clears/changes it on their machine, you will not be able to receive any messages from them when Authorized Reception is turned on.

When a fax message comes in, the machine checks to see if the sender's CSI is stored in any of the Quick Dials or Name Dials. If it is found and you have used that Quick Dial or Name Dial to send at least one message to that destination, the message is accepted.

Note

You can store up to 30 Specified Senders (25 Name Dials and 5 Quick Dials).

To set up your machine for Authorized Reception, you need to:

- 1 Turn Authorized Reception on.**
- 2 Make sure all the Specified Sender CSIs are stored in Quick Dials or Name Dials.**
- 3 Make sure that you have sent at least one message to all the Specified Senders using their Name Dials or Quick Dials. After one message has been sent, the Specified Sender is enabled and you can receive fax messages from them.**

Note

If you turn Authorized Reception on and omit steps 2 and 3 above, the machine will not be able to receive any fax messages.

- ☞ *Storing, Editing and Deleting Quick Dials, see page 56.*
- ☞ *Storing and Deleting Name Dials, see page 61.*
- ☞ *Unauthorized Call Report, see page 65.*

●Turning Authorized Reception on/off

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press .

Function no.: _ _

3 Press  1.

21 Author. RX 

4 Press .

Mode: Off? 

5 Press  ^{Zoom} or  to adjust the setting.

Mode: On? 

6 Press . The display opposite will flash briefly on the display and then the function menu will reappear.

Registered

 **Note**

Do not carry out any operations while "Registered" appears on the display.

2 Communication 

7 Do one of the following

- Enter another function number.
- Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> to return to standby mode.

Cancelling Reception of a Fax

If for some reason you want to cancel reception of fax while it is being received, do the following.

1 Make sure the machine is in fax operation mode.

Recep. canceled

2 Press  ^{Stop}.

 **Note**

A portion of the fax message may still be printed.

Making Telephone Calls

If you connect an optional telephone handset, you can use the same line for both telephone calls and fax messages.



If you wish to be able to receive telephone calls, be sure to select TEL mode.

☛ *Choosing a Reception Mode, see page 46.*

1 Do one of the following:

- Pick up the telephone handset and dial with the handset keypad
- Make sure the machine is in fax operation mode, pick up the telephone handset and dial using the operation panel numeric keypad, a Quick Dial, a Name Dial or the Pause/Redial key
- Make sure the machine is in fax operation mode, press the On Hook key and dial using a Quick Dial, a Name Dial or the Pause/Redial key. When the other party answers, pick up the telephone handset.



• In some locales, On Hook dialling is not available and/or you cannot dial using a Quick Dial, Name Dial, the number keys or Redial key when the handset is lifted.

2 Continue your conversation as usual.

Faxing During a Telephone Call

You can also have the machine take over the line and send or receive a fax message at the end of your telephone call. This is useful when:

- The other party shares their line with a similar fax machine and you wish to send or receive a message after your conversation.
- You wish to check that the number is indeed a fax number before attempting to send your message.



The other party's machine must support this feature.

1 Do one of the following:

- Pick up the telephone handset and dial with the handset keypad
- Make sure the machine is in fax operation mode, pick up the telephone handset and dial using the operation panel numeric keypad, a Quick Dial, a Name Dial or the Pause/Redial key
- Make sure the machine is in fax operation mode, press the On Hook key and dial using a Quick Dial, a Name Dial or the Pause/Redial key. When the other party answers, pick up the telephone handset.



• In some locales, On Hook dialling is not available and/or you cannot dial using a Quick Dial, Name Dial, the number keys or Redial key when the handset is lifted.

2 Listen to the line.

- If a voice answers, continue your conversation as normal.
- When you wish to send a fax, listen for the fax tone of the other party, then continue from step **3** below.
- When you wish to receive a fax, listen for the fax tone of the other party, then continue from step **8** below.

● Sending a Fax during a Telephone Call**3 Make sure the machine is in fax operation mode, set your document and adjust any scan settings as required.**Mode: Trans. ? **4** Press .**5** If the display opposite is not shown, press   or  until it is.

Connecting...

6 Press  then replace the handset.**7** Press  then wait until the following display appears.

Replace the handset.

● Receiving a Fax during a Telephone Call**8 Make sure the machine is in fax operation mode and remove all documents from the ADF**Mode: Trans. ? **9** Press .Mode: Recep. ? **10** If the display opposite is not shown, press   or  until it is.**11** Press .

Connecting...

Replace the handset.

Monitoring the Line while Dialling with On Hook

This feature lets you dial a telephone number without lifting the optional external handset. You can listen to what is happening on the line through the machine's internal speaker.

1 If necessary, press  to switch to fax operation mode.

Dial/Set orig.

2 Press .

Dial number

3 Dial the telephone number using the numeric keypad, a Quick Dial, a Name Dial or the Pause/Redial key.

12345

4 If you hear a voice answer, pick up the external handset, press  again and continue your conversation.

- To cancel the call, press .

5 Replace the handset when you have finished the call.

Dial/Set orig.

Remote Change

If you have set the reception mode to TEL mode and turn this feature on, you can use the telephone handset numeric keypad to start fax reception when you hear another fax machine on the line.

When you hear a fax machine through the handset, press the Remote Change digit on the telephone handset twice to initiate fax reception, then replace the handset.

You need to specify the Remote Change digit using when you turn this feature on with the following procedure.

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press  ►.

Function no.: _____

3 Press  .

32 Remote Change

4 Press .

Mode: Off? 

5 Press   to turn Remote Change on or off.

Mode: On? 

6 Press  and do one of the following:

- If you turned Remote Change on, go to step **7**.
- If you turned Remote Change off, go to step **8**.

Change with 2 

7 Press a digit on the numeric keypad to select the Remote Change digit.

Change with 7 

E.g. press .

8 Press . The display opposite will flash briefly on the display and then the function menu will reappear.

Registered



Do not turn off the machine while “Please wait” or “Registered” is shown on the operation panel display.

3 Fax Switch 

9 Do one of the following.

- Enter another function number.
- Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> to return to standby mode.

Storing Fax and Telephone Numbers

This machine provides two useful methods for storing fax and telephone numbers:

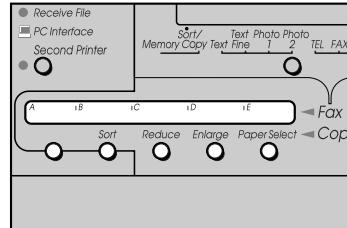
- Quick Dials
- Name Dials

Note

The maximum length of a fax number you can dial, or store in Quick Dials/Name Dials, is 40 digits.

Quick Dials

If you often dial certain numbers, you can save time and effort by storing them in Quick Dial keys. Once stored, instead of entering a fax number directly on the numeric keypad, just press the Quick Dial key the number is stored in.



If you store a number in a Quick Dial, you can also give it a name up to 10 characters long.

If you press a Quick Dial key when the display opposite is shown, the stored name will come up on the display so you can check it.

Dial/set orig.

B:XYZ CO.

You can store one fax number in each of the five Quick Dial keys labeled A-E. To check the fax numbers stored in Quick Dials, print out the Dial List.

- ☞ *Printing the Dial List, see page 64.*
- ☞ *Name Dials, see page 59.*
- ☞ *For how to dial with a Quick Dial, see page 55 step 5.*

●Storing Quick Dials

- Entering Characters on the Operation Panel, see page xiv.
- Entering Pauses and Tones in Fax Numbers, see page 43.

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press Zoom  ►.

Function no.: _ _

3 Press  .

13 Quick Dial 

4 Press .

Press Quick or



Print List ►

5 To select a Quick Dial, press a Quick Dial key.

E.g. press  <sup>Sort/
Memory Copy</sup> to select Quick dial (1_B).

B:■



To print a list of currently stored Quick Dials, press Zoom  ►.

Dial List



Press Start

Then press  ^{Start}.

Printing...

6 Enter or edit the fax number you wish to store with the numeric keypad.

E.g. press          .

123456789■

7 Press .

B:

8 Enter or edit the name for this Quick Dial.

B:XYZ CO.

E.g. press   Zoom   
 Zoom     Zoom  
 Zoom    Zoom   
 Zoom    Zoom 

9 Press .

Registered



Do not turn off the machine while “Please wait” or “Registered” is shown on the operation panel display.

Print List 



Press Quick or

10 Do one of the following:

- To store another Quick Dial, go back to step **5**.
- To return to standby mode, press  ^{Help/} twice.
- To access another function, press  ^{Help/} then enter a function number.

●Editing Quick Dials

1 Press  ^{Help/}.

Prt Help List 

2 Press .

Function no.:

3 Press  .

13 Quick Dial 

4 Press .

Print List ►



Press Quick or

5 Press the Quick Dial key you wish to edit.

1234567989

6 Press  twice then press .

12~~3~~456789



To clear the Leftmost digit, press .

Clear

Then press .

123456789

23456789

7 Press .

B:~~XYZ~~

8 Edit the name stored in this Quick Dial.

B:~~XYZ~~

E.g. Press .

- To move the cursor, press   or .

9 Press .

Registered



Do not turn off the machine while "Please wait" or "Registered" is shown on the operation panel display.

10 Do one of the following:

- To edit another Quick Dial, go to step **5**.
- To return to standby mode, press   twice.

Print List ►



Press Quick or

●Clearing Quick Dials

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press  ►.

Function no.: __

3 Press  .

13 Quick Dial  ^{o_K}

4 Press .

Print List ►



Press Quick or

5 Press the Quick Dial key you wish to delete

E.g. press  to select Quick dial (1B).

12345

6 Press .

Delete?



*If you do not wish to clear this Quick Dial, press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> twice to return to standby mode.*

7 Press .

Deleted

8 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> twice to return to standby mode.

B : ■

Name Dials

Name Dials are a handy way of storing fax numbers that you dial regularly in machine memory. When you store a number in a Name Dial, you must also give it a name up to 10 characters long. When dialling, you enter the first letter of this name to quickly find the Name Dial you require.

Office B

You can store multiple Name Dials with identical first letters and step through them to find the one you want when dialling.

You can store up to 25 Name Dials.



Note

You cannot store two Name Dials with the same name.

To check which Name Dials are currently stored, print out the Dial List.

☞ *Printing the Dial List, see page 64.*

☞ *Quick Dials, see page 54.*

● Storing Name Dials

☞ *Entering Characters on the Operation Panel, see page xiv,30.*

☞ *Entering Pauses and Tones in Fax Numbers, see page 43.*

1 Press  ^{Help/}Function.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press Zoom  ►.

Function no.: __

3 Press  4 ^{GH}.

14 Name Dial 

4 Press .

Register? 

5 Press .



6 Enter the fax number you wish to store with the numeric keypad.

E.g. press 

123456789 ■

7 Press .

Name : ■

8 Enter or edit the name for this Name Dial.

E.g. press 




Name : XYZ CO. ■

9 Press .

Registered

Register? 



Note

- Do not turn off the machine while “Registered” is shown on the operation panel display.
- If a Name Dial with the same name is already stored, “Name exists” will flash on the display. Enter a different name.

10 Do one of the following.

- To store another Name Dial, go back to step **4**.
- To return to standby mode, press  twice.
- To access another function, press  once and enter another function number.

● Deleting Name Dials

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press .

Function no.: __

3 Press  4^(GHI).

14 Name Dial 

4 Press  .

Delete? 

5 Press .

Select letter

6 Enter the first letter of the Name Dial label.

Marty

E.g. press  ^{MNO}.

- If Name Dial you are looking for does not appear, keep pressing the key until it does.

E.g. press  again



You can also search through Name Dials that begin the same initial letter with the   keys.

7 Press .

Delete?

8 Do one of the following.

- To delete the Name Dial, press  and go to step 9.

Deleted

- To cancel this operation, press  either enter another function number, or press

 <sup>Help/
Function</sup> to return to standby mode.

Delete? 

9 Do one of the following

- To delete another Name Dial, go to step **5**.
- To return to standby mode, press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> twice.
- To access another function, press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> once and enter another function number.

●Dialling with Name Dials

Instead of dialling the number on the numeric keypad, do the following in fax operation mode.

☞ How to Send a Fax, see page 40

1 Make sure the machine is in fax operation mode.

Dial/Set orig.

2 Press  ^{Name}.

Select letter

2 Enter the first letter of the Name Dial label.

Marty

E.g. press  ^{MNO}.

- If the Name Dial you are looking for does not appear, keep pressing the key until it does.

E.g. press  ^{MNO} again.

Main Off



You can also search through Name Dials that begin the same initial letter with the  keys.

Reports and Lists

Printing the Journal

The Journal is a record of fax messages that were recently sent or received by your machine. By default, it is printed automatically after every 35 communications.

You can print it out whenever you wish to check on machine usage, or to find out if a communication was successful or not.

The following items are included on the Journal:

- Own name—this machine's Own name/TTI identification
- Transmission—list of recent fax transmissions from this machine
- Reception—list of recent fax messages received by this machine
- Date and Time—when the communication took place
- Address—the fax number/identification of the other party
- Duration—how long the communication took
- Page—how many pages the message contained
- Result—whether the communication completed successfully

☞ For how to turn automatic printing of the Journal on/off, see *User Parameters*, see page 102.

1 Press  Help/
Function.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press  ►.

Function no.: __

3 Press  .

41 Journal

4 Press .

Press Start

5 Press .

Printing...

Printing the Dial List

Print this list to check on the names and numbers of Quick Dials and Name Dials stored in the machine.

You can print the Dial list using the procedure below, or when storing Quick Dials.

The following items are included on the Dial List:

- Own name—this machine's Own name/TTI identification
- Own fax number—this machine's fax number
- Quick Dial—list of Quick Dial labels and numbers
- Name Dial—list of Name Dial labels and numbers

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press .

Function no.: __

3 Press  .

42 Dial List 

4 Press .

Press Start

5 Press .

Printing...

Transmission Result Report

By default, this report is turned off. If you turn it on, this report will be printed after every fax you send.

The following information is listed:

- From (Owner)—this machine's fax number/identification
- To—the destination fax number/identification
- Page(s)—number of pages in document
- Date, Time—when the communication took place

- Duration—how long the communication lasted
- Result—whether the transmission was successful

☞ *To turn automatic printing of this report on or off, see Customising Default Settings with the User Parameters, see page 102.*

Error Report

By default, this report is printed automatically if a reception or transmission fails.

The following information is given:

- From (Owner)—the sender's fax number/identification
- To—the receiver's fax number/identification
- Date, Time—when the communication failure happened
- Duration—how long the communication lasted
- Reason for error

Power Failure Report

If power is lost while sending a message, receiving a message, or while a message has been stored in memory when the Receive File indicator is lit, this report will be printed out when power is restored.

☞ *When the Receive File Indicator is lit, see page 47.*

Unauthorized Call Report

If you have set up Authorized Reception, and turned this report on, a report is printed if an unauthorized sender tries to send you a message.

By default this report is turned off. Turn it on with the User Parameters.

☞ *Authorized Reception, see page 47.*

☞ *User Parameters, see page 102.*

The following items are recorded:

- From—the fax number/id of the sender
- Date, Time—when they tried to send the message

Advanced Features

Making Machine Sounds Louder or Quieter

This machine makes various sounds during operation. You can adjust the volume of these sounds, or turn them off completely according to your taste. You can change the following:

- TX—the sound of a fax being sent
- RX—the sound of a fax being received
- On Hook—sounds made when using the On Hook feature
- Dialling—tones you hear after pressing Start
- Buzzer—warning beep (e.g. when cover is opened) and the sound made every time you press a key on the operation panel
- Ring—ringing sound when a call comes in



On Hook is not available in some locales.

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press  ►.

Function no.:

3 Press  1.

31 Adjust Volume

4 Press .

TX: ■ OK

5 Press  ► or  ► to make the volume louder or quieter.

TX: ■■ OK

6 Press .

7 Repeat steps **5** and **6** for all adjustable volumes.

After adjusting the Ring volume and pressing  , the display opposite will appear. Now go to step **8**.



Do not carry out any operations while “Registered” appears on the display.

Registered

8 Do one of the following:

- Enter another function number.
- Press  ^{Help/} to return to standby mode.

3 FaxSwitch 

Sending Faxes Over Unreliable Lines-Slow (4800bps)

If you experience problems sending faxes due to bad telephone lines, you can reduce the speed at which your machine sends fax messages to 4800 bits per second.



This setting does not affect the speed at which your machine receives faxes.

Use the following procedure to turn this feature on/off.

1 Press  ^{Help/} .

Prt Help List ►

2 Press  ►.

Function no. : __

3 Press  .

22 Slow(4800bps)

4 Press .

4800bps : No? ►

5 Press  or  **Zoom** to adjust the setting.

4800bps: Yes? 

6 Press . The display opposite will flash briefly on the display and then the function menu will reappear.

Registered

 **Note**

Do not carry out any operations while “Registered” appears on the display.

2 Communication 

7 Do one of the following:

- Enter another function number.
- Press  ^{Help/}Function to return to standby mode.

RDS

RDS stands for Remote Diagnostic System.

If your machine has a problem, a service technician can perform various diagnostic tasks over the telephone line from the service station to try and find out what is wrong. The service technician can also use this feature to change some of your machine's settings if you request it.

For this feature to work, you must turn it on before the service technician starts the RDS operation on your machine.

☞ For how to switch this feature on or off, see *Changing On/Off Settings*, see page 69.

Page Header

By default, your TTI/Own Number appears on top of faxes you send when printed at the other end. If you wish, you can turn this feature off.

☞ For how to switch this feature on or off, see *Changing On/Off Settings*, see above.

☞ Storing your Own Name/TTI, see page 33.

Changing On/Off Settings

Use this procedure to turn the following features on or off:

☞ Page Header, see above.

☞ Turning Summer Time (Daylight Saving Time) on/off, see page 39.

☞ RDS, see above.

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press  .

Function no.: __

3 Press   1.

51 Select 

4 Press .

Page Header 

5 Press   or   until the setting you wish to change appears on the display.

Summer Time 

E.g. press   once.

6 Press .

Mode: Off? 

7 Press   or   to adjust the change.

Mode: On? 

8 Press . The display opposite will flash briefly on the display and then the function menu will reappear.

Registered



Do not carry out any operations while "Registered" appears on the display.

5 Select 

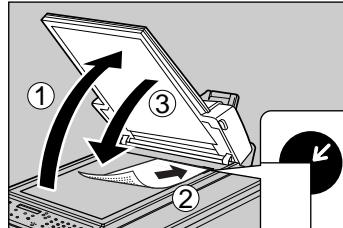
9 Do one of the following:

- Enter another function number.
- Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> to return to standby mode.

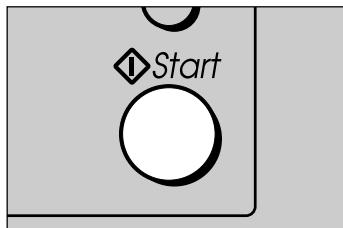
5. COPYING

Making a Copy

1 Lift the platen cover (①). Place the original face down at the arrow mark on the scale (②). Close the platen cover (③).



2 Press  to perform the copy operation.



Important!

After copying a large number of pages, wait a couple of minutes before attempting to turn off the machine.

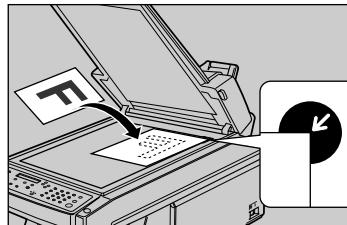
Note

When printing to label paper, envelopes, transparencies, or thin paper (60 g/m² or 16 lb), remove each printout as it comes out of the machine. If you don't, printed output can fall out of the output tray, and become curled.

Alignment of Originals

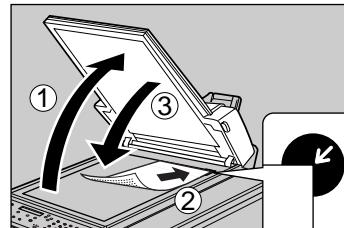
Align the original with the scale of the exposure glass.

- When the original is a standard size such as A4 or Letter, align it to the indexes on the scale.
- When your original is not standard size, align the upper left edge of the original to the arrow mark on the scale.



Making Multiple Copies

1 Lift the platen cover (①). Place the original face down at the arrow mark on the scale (②). Close the platen cover (③).



2 Enter the number of copies you wish to make using the numeric keypad.

100%

10

E.g. to make ten copies, press **1** **0**.

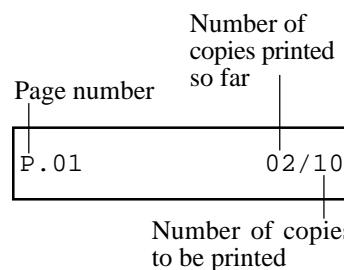
Note

If your document is not scanned in even when you press **Start**, there is a chance it is not set correctly in the ADF. Reset your document and try again. For how to set documents in the ADF, see page 78.

3 Press **Start** to perform the copy operation.

Note

During the copy operation, the display shows the number of copies printed so far and that to be printed. For example, 02/10 appears while the second copy of a run of 10 copies is being printed.



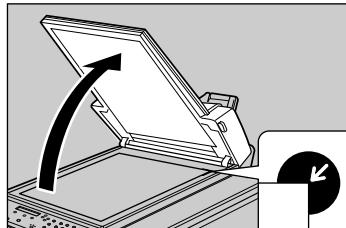
Tips

- After copying finishes, press **Clear Modes** to clear any settings.

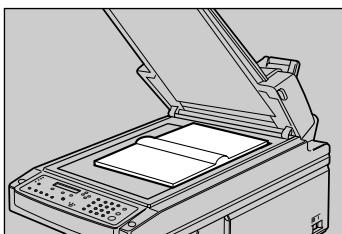
Making a Book Copy

When copying from a book, the thickness of the book should be no more than 30mm (1.18").

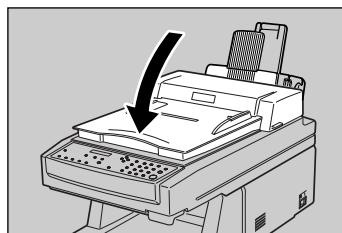
- 1 Lift the platen cover.



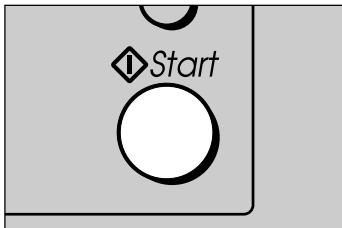
- 2 Open to the page you want to copy and lay the page face down on the exposure glass. Be sure to align one of the corners of the page with the arrow mark on the scale.



- 3 Lower the platen cover.



- 4 Press  to perform the copy operation.

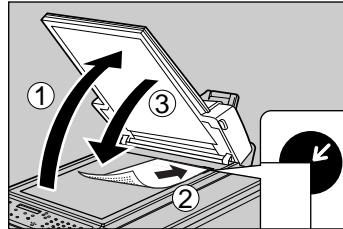


Reduction and Enlargement

Press  or  to select preset reduction or enlargement factors for the copy operation.

To Set the Reduction Factor

1 Lift the platen cover (①). Place the original face down at the arrow mark on the scale (②). Close the platen cover (③).



2 Press  until the desired size ratio appears. The sizes change in the following order.

100% → 93% → 87% → 82%
 ↑ ↓
 50% ← “71% A4 ▶ A5” ←

3 Press  to perform the copy operation.

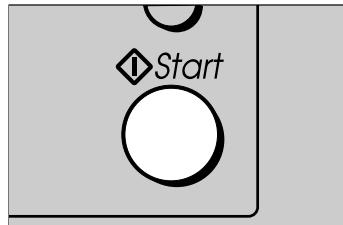


Note

After copying finishes, press  to clear any settings.

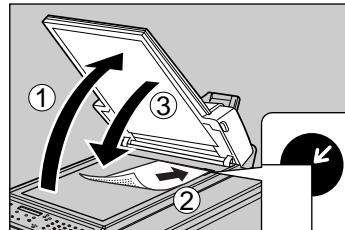
| | |
|------|----|
| 100% | 01 |
|------|----|

| Ratio (%) | Original→Paper size |
|-----------|---------------------|
| 93 | A little reduced. |
| 87 | A4 → B5 |
| 82 | B5 → A5 |
| 71 | A4 → A5 |
| 50 | Reduced by $1/4$. |



To Set the Enlargement Factor

1 Lift the platen cover (①). Place the original face down at the arrow mark on the scale (②). Close the platen cover (③).



2 Press  until the desired size ratio appears. The sizes change in the following order.

100% → 115% → 122%

↑
200% ← “141% A5 ▶ A4” ←

100%

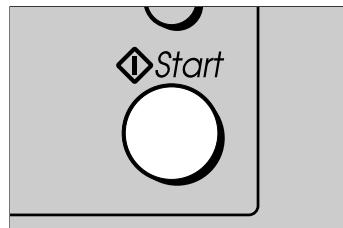
01

| Ratio (%) | Original → Paper size |
|-----------|-----------------------|
| 115 | B5 → A4, B6 → A5 |
| 122 | A5 → B5 |
| 141 | A5 → A4 |
| 200 | A6 → A4 |

3 Press  to perform the copy operation.



After copying finishes, press  to clear any settings.

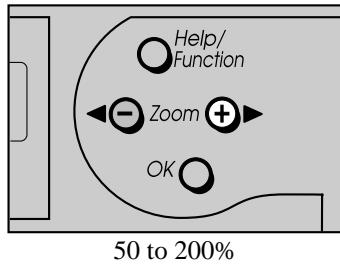
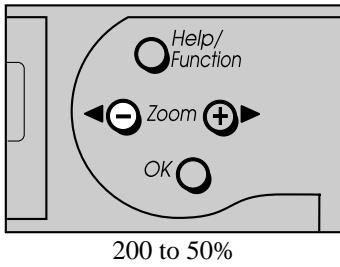


Zoom (In 1% Increments)

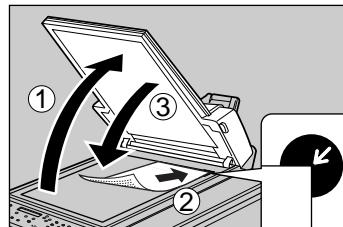
Zoom allows you to tune the preset reduction and enlargement factors to exactly the value you want. You can change the zoom factor in increments of 1%.

To Use Zoom

Setting Range



1 Lift the platen cover (①). Place the original face down at the arrow mark on the scale (②). Close the platen cover (③).



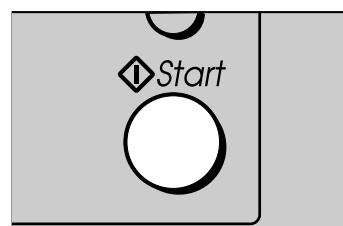
2 Press \blacktriangleleft Zoom (decrease) or Zoom \triangleright (increase) until the desired size ratio appears.

| | |
|------|----|
| 100% | 01 |
|------|----|

3 Press \diamond Start to perform the copy operation.

| | |
|-----|----|
| 99% | 01 |
|-----|----|

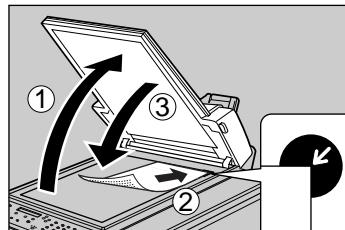
Note
After copying finishes, press \circlearrowleft Clear Modes to clear any settings.



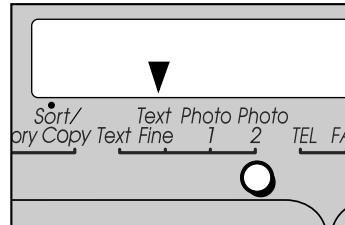
Adjusting the Copy Image

To Select the Resolution/Photo Setting

1 Lift the platen cover (①). Place the original face down at the arrow mark on the scale (②). Close the platen cover (③).

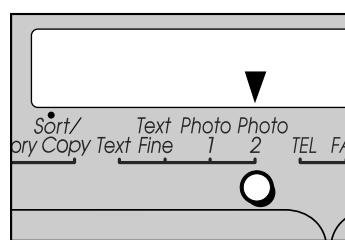


2 Press the Original Type Select key to specify the resolution or halftoning method for the copy operation.



3 A pointer (▼) moves on the display to indicate the current setting.
Choose a setting that matches your original:

| Setting | Use for: |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| [Text Fine] | Copying text |
| [Photo1] | Copying photographs |
| [Photo2] | Copying mixed text and photographs |



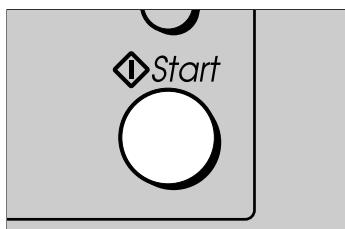
Note

If the memory size of your machine is 4MB, the machine automatically switches from Photo2 to Photo1 when you make multiple copies using the ADF.

4 Press  to perform the copy operation.

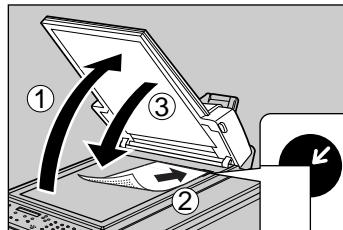
Note

After copying finishes, press  to clear any settings.

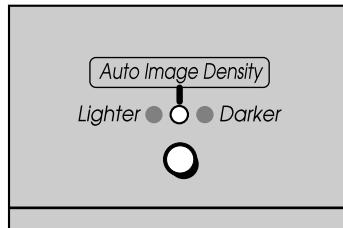


To Adjust the Image Density

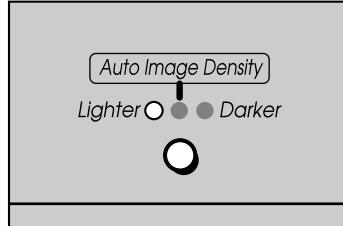
1 Lift the platen cover (①). Place the original face down at the arrow mark on the scale (②). Close the platen cover (③).



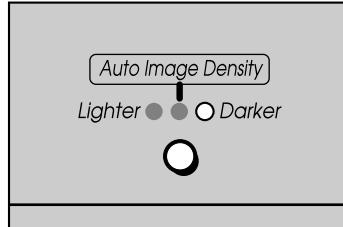
2 Press the Density key to select the image density.



- Select [Lighter] to make the image lighter.



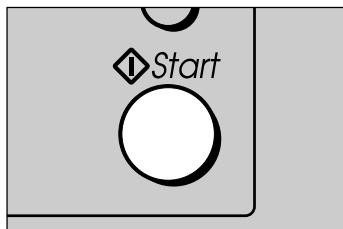
- Select [Darker] to make the image darker.



3 Press  to perform the copy operation.



Note
After copying finishes, press  to clear any settings.

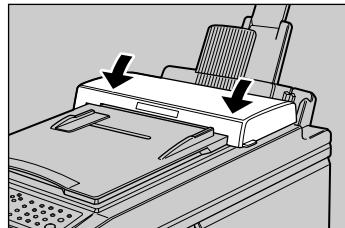


Setting an Original on the ADF

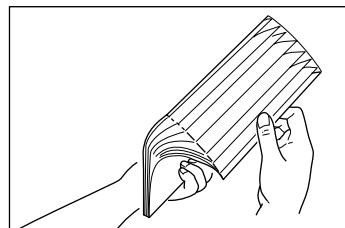
You can load up to 10 sheets of plain paper (80 g/m² or 20 lb) at a time into the Automatic Document Feeder (ADF).

! Important!

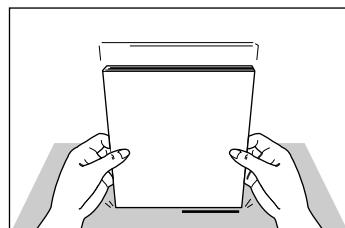
Check to make sure that the ADF cover is securely closed before using it.



- 1 Fan the stack of originals. Never try to place more than 10 sheets of plain paper onto the ADE.



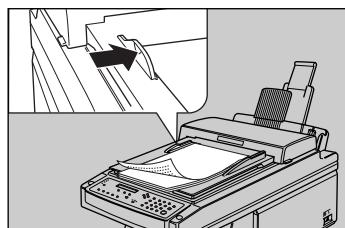
- 2 Straighten up all four sides of the stack, by tapping them on a desk or table top.



- 3 Place the stack of originals face down on the ADF and slide the document guide against the side of the stack.

! Note

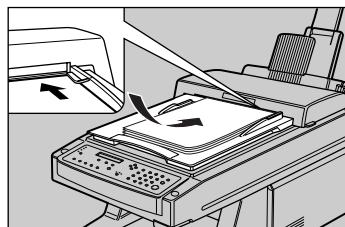
The side of the original to be copied should be face down.



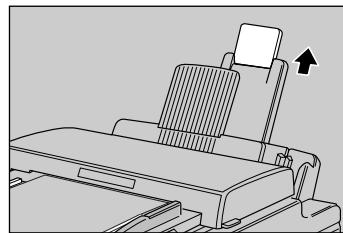
- 4 Insert the stack of originals along the document guide into the ADE.

! Note

Insert your stack of originals into the ADF until it stops. If you do not push it right in, the machine will not detect the stack.



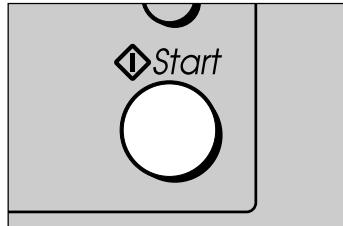
5 Make sure the upper tray extension is pulled out.



6 Press  to perform the copy operation.

 **Note**

- If your original jams while being fed into the ADF, press  to cancel the operation. See page 93 for how to clear the jam.
- We recommend you use Text mode when copying with the ADF.



 **Note**

We recommend you copy photo originals from the exposure glass for best results.

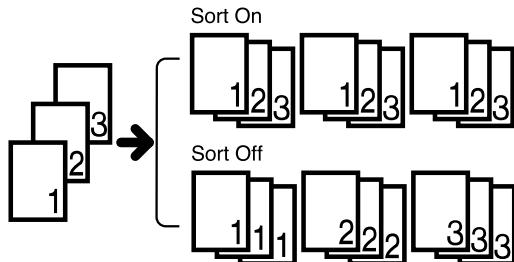
Originals that do not meet the following requirements can cause paper misfeeds, and even damage the machine.

■ Requirements

| | |
|---------------------|---|
| • Thickness | 0.05mm to 0.2mm (0.002" to 0.08") |
| • Weight | 60 to 90 g/m ² (16lb to 24lb) |
| • Clear markings | Markings on the originals must be clear to be read correctly. |
| • Uniform page size | All pages should be the same size. |
| • Page condition | Avoid using originals that are bent, curled, damaged, or stapled, and originals printed on coated paper, carbon paper, or photographic paper. |

Sorting Output

The following example shows how output is affected by turning sorting on and off.



Important!

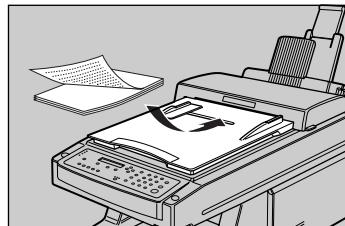
The sort operation requires scanning of all your originals into memory before starting the copy operation. The number of originals that can be scanned at one time depends on how much memory you have installed. Refer to page 23 for details on increasing memory capacity.

Sort Copying

1 Set the originals on the ADE

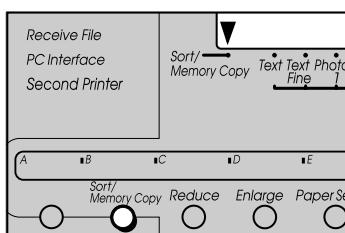
Note

Refer to page 78 for how to set originals.



2 Sorting is activated when the ▼ pointer is visible on the display above Sort/

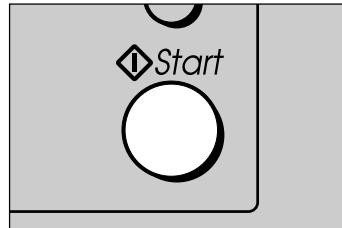
Memory Copy. Press  to turn sorting on.



3 When you press  to start the copy operation, all of the originals on the ADF are scanned into memory before they are printed.



Note
After copying finishes, press  to clear any settings.



6. TROUBLESHOOTING

General

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|--|---|--|------|
| Nothing happens when the machine is turned on. | Power cord is not connected. | Correctly connect the power cord to the machine and plug it into a outlet. | p.9 |
| | SIMM is not installed correctly | Install the SIMM correctly. | p.23 |
| | SIMM does not meet the required specifications. | Use a SIMM with the required specifications. | p.23 |
| Paper misfeeds when the machine is turned on for the first time after the installation. | Paper was loaded in the machine before the machine was turned on. | Remove the paper, turn the machine off and then back on. After machine initialization is complete, load the paper back into the machine. | p.9 |
| After installing a SIMM board, the memory value that appears on the machine's display does not match the amount of memory installed. | SIMM does not meet the required specifications. | Use a SIMM with the required specifications. | P.23 |

Printing and Copying (1/2)

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|--------------------------|---|--|------------|
| Frequent paper misfeeds. | The upper paper tray is not set correctly | Set the upper paper tray correctly. | p.6 |
| | Improper paper. | Use paper of the correct size and thickness. | p.10 |
| | Paper is not set correctly in the upper paper tray. | Realign the paper with the paper guide, and if necessary, fan the paper stack. | p.11 |
| | Paper is curled or damp. | Uncurl the paper. | p.11,13,19 |
| | | Insert paper into the upper paper tray from the least-curved side. | p.11,13 |
| | | Set paper face down if necessary. | p.11,13,19 |
| | | Avoid using damp paper. | — |
| | Too much paper is loaded in the machine. | Remove some of the paper. | p.11,15 |
| | Paper is loaded incorrectly. | Check the paper and realign it if necessary. | p.11,19 |

Printing and Copying (2/2)

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|---|---|--|---------|
| Frequent paper misfeeds. | Attempting to print on both sides of the paper. | Print on only one side. Two-side printing is not supported by this machine. | p.11,19 |
| | Printing onto loosely stacked envelopes. | Flatten the envelopes to expel all air. | p.15 |
| | Misfeeding of the envelope flap. | Make sure that envelope flaps are closed (folded down). | p.15 |
| Part of the image is unclear. | Toner is distributed unevenly in the toner cassette. | Remove the toner cassette, gently rock it left and right a few times, and replace it into the machine. | p.97 |
| Black lines on the printout. | Heat damage to the toner cassette caused by turning off the machine too soon after copying a large number of pages. | Replace the toner cassette. | p.97 |
| Dark areas along the sides of the printout. | Turning off the machine too soon after printing or copying a large number of pages. | Replace the toner cassette. | p.97 |

Printing

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|--|--|---|-------|
| Abnormal or unexpected printing results. | Use of wrong cable. | Use the cable that comes with this machine. | p.7 |
| | Wrong printer driver settings. | Change to the correct printer driver settings. | p.25 |
| | Attempting to print from a DOS application at 600 dpi. | Change to 300 dpi. | p.105 |
| Parts of the image are not printed out. | The correct paper size is not specified. | Specify the paper size using the operation panel. | p.20 |
| Cannot print from a second printer. | Second printer is not connected correctly. | Check connections and make corrections, if necessary. | p.16 |
| | Second printer is not selected. | Press  so the indicator above it is lit. | p.28 |
| | Incorrect settings of the second printer driver. | Use the printer driver of the second printer to turn off bi-directional printing. | p.28 |

Copying and Faxing (1/2)

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|--|--|--|---------|
| "Error 90" appears on the display, and the copy operation is aborted when copying from the exposure glass. | Locked scanner. | Unlock the scanner lock, turn the machine off and then back on. | p.3 |
| Frequent original mis-feeds with ADE | Original is not set correctly. | Set the original correctly. | p.41,78 |
| | Curled original(s). | Straighten out the original(s). Insert the original(s) from the least-curved side. | p.41,78 |
| | Incorrect original specifications. | Use originals of the correct size, thickness, and quantity. | p.79 |
| Original is not fed from the ADE | ADF cover is open. | Close the ADF cover. | p.78 |
| | Document is not set correctly in ADE. | Set the document properly. | p.41,78 |
| Original is not fed out properly. | The document output tray is not set correctly. | Set the document output tray and the small pieces of plastic film correctly. | p.5 |
| Periodic black marks on printed output. | Cleaning pad is not installed. | Correctly install the cleaning pad. | p.97 |
| Black lines and marks on printed output when copying from the exposure glass. | Copying to small-size paper. | Place a sheet of the same size as the paper you are printing onto behind the original. | p.70 |
| | Different size original and copy paper. | | |
| | Non-white original background. | Adjust the print density. | p.77 |
| | Dirty platen cover or exposure glass. | Clean the platen cover and exposure glass. | p.96 |
| Black and white lines on printed output when using the ADF. | Dirty ADF transport path. | Clean the ADF transport path. | p.96 |
| Output too light. | Low contrast original. | Adjust the print density. | p.77 |
| Unclear photographic images. | Copying in Text Fine Mode. | Use the Original Type Select key to select the Photo1 or Photo2 Mode. | p.76 |
| Parts of the original image are not copied. | The correct paper size is not specified. | Specify the paper size using the operation panel. | p.20 |

Copying and Faxing (2/2)

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|---|--|---|------|
| Cannot send or receive faxes. | The power is off. | Turn on the power. | p.9 |
| | The machine is not connected to the telephone line. | Check the line connection. Make sure that one end of the line cable is connected to the LINE socket at the rear of the machine and the other to your telephone line socket. | p.32 |
| | The Dial Mode settings are not correct. | Make sure you have selected the correct line type (pulse or tone). If behind a PABX, make sure the PABX settings are correct. | p.34 |
| Cannot send faxes. | The machine is in copy operation mode. | Press the Fax/Copy key to switch to fax operation mode. | p.29 |
| Cannot receive faxes | The machine is busy processing or printing a PC print job. | Fax reception is not possible while the machine is processing or printing PC print data. | |
| | The machine is busy making copies. | Fax reception is not possible while making copies. | |
| | The machine has run out of paper, or small size paper is loaded in the upper tray. | Load more paper. If small size paper is loaded, load A4 size paper so you can receive faxes. | p.11 |
| | Toner has run out. | Install a new toner cassette. | p.97 |
| | The machine is in TEL mode. | Press the Reception Mode key to switch to FAX mode, or read about how to receive faxes manually in TEL mode. | p.46 |
| | Paper is jammed. | Clear all jammed paper. | p.91 |
| | Top unit cover open. | Close all top unit. | p.3 |
| | The machine has been set up to only receive faxes from certain senders with the Authorized Reception feature. | Turn Authorized Reception off with function 21, or read how to configure this feature. | p.47 |
| Even when you press the Remote Change digit, Remote Change will not function. | Remote Change is not turned on. | Turn it on with function 32. | p.52 |
| | You are pressing the wrong Remote Change digit, have pressed a key on the operation panel or the machine is busy dialling. | The default Remote Change digit is 2. If pressing this digit on the handset keypad still does not work, try changing the Remote Change digit to another number. Do not press any key on the operation panel before pressing the Remote Change digit. If the machine is busy dialling, Remote Change is not available. | p.52 |

Scanning

| Status | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|---|---|---|------|
| PC scanning does not function properly. | The PC parallel port is not set to ECP. | Consult your PC manual on how to set your parallel port to ECP. | p.25 |

Error Messages (1/4)

The table below explains the error messages that may appear on the display and the appropriate action to take.

| Message | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|---|---|---|---------|
| “Close cover” | Top unit is open. | Close the top unit. If a copy job is in progress, set the copy quantity again. | P.3 |
| “Add paper” | Machine is out of paper. | Load paper. If a copy job is in progress, set the copy quantity again. | P.11,19 |
| “Toner near end” | Machine is almost out of toner. | Prepare a toner cassette for replacement. | — |
| “Add Toner” | Toner cassette is not loaded correctly | Correctly load the toner cassette into the machine. If a copy job is in progress, set the copy quantity again. | P.2 |
| | Machine is out of toner. | Replace the toner cassette. | P.97 |
| “Clear paper” | Paper misfeed or paper will not feed at all. | Remove the misfed paper. If a copy job is in progress, set the copy quantity again. If paper persistently misfeeds, carry out the procedure on page 89. | P.91 |
| “Memory overflow” | Not enough memory capacity. (PC printing only) | Either lower the printer driver Resolution setting, or increase memory capacity by installing a larger SIMM. Press any operation panel key to clear the error message from the display. | P.23 |
| “Remove original” (when original is set in ADF) | Original misfeed or paper will not feed at all. | Remove the original from the ADF. If a copy job is in progress, set the copy quantity again. | P.78 |
| “Original left” and “on glass” | An original may be left under the platen cover. | Open the platen cover, remove any original that remains, then lower the platen cover again. | — |

Error Messages (2/4)

| Message | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|---------------------------------|---|---|----------|
| “Memory full” and “Press Stop” | Too much sort copy data. | Press  to cancel sort copying. If you need to print big copy jobs, increase the memory capacity. | P.23, 80 |
| | Too many sort copy pages. | Press  to print pages already stored in memory. To cancel the job, press  . If you need to print big copy jobs, increase the memory capacity. | P. 23,80 |
| “Transm.error” and “Press Stop” | An error occurred during transmission, or the other line was busy. If power was lost during the dialing or connecting phases of transmission, or in fax transmission standby mode, this message will appear when you next turn the machine on. | Press  to clear the error message. | — |
| “Too many numbers” | Either the maximum number of Name Dials have been stored (25), or you tried to enter more than 40 digits for a destination fax number. | Delete some Name Dials or enter a shorter number. | P.59 |
| “No connection” | The line is busy while dialing, connection failed, you dialled the wrong number, or there is no answer. | When scanning from the ADF the machine will automatically enter redial mode. To cancel redialling, remove your document from the ADF. | P.52 |
| “No loop current” | The line current was not detected-the line may not be connected. | Check the line connection. | P.8 |
| “Printer in use” | The machine is busy printing. | Wait until it has finished and try again. | — |
| “Machine busy” | The machine is busy communicating. | Wait until the current operation has finished and try again. | — |

Error Messages (3/4)

| Message | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|----------------------------------|--|--|----------|
| “Name exists” | The name you input for this Name Dial already exists. | Either use a different name, or delete the other Name Dial and try again. | P.59 |
| “Unable” | The machine is unable to print the report or list because there is a problem with the printer. | Press  ^{Help/} _{Function} to exit function mode and rectify the problem indicated on the display. | — |
| “Check fax no.” and “Press Stop” | Multiple attempts at communication with this number failed. | <p>Press  ^{Stop}_{Stop} to cancel the transmission.</p> <p>In some locales, if this number was stored in a Name Dial, Quick Dial, or the redial memory, the number will be erased completely from the machine memory to comply with regulations.</p> <p>Check the number is correct and store it again if necessary.</p> | — |
| “No dial tone” | No dial tone was detected. | Check the line connection and if behind a PABX, the PABX settings. | P.34 |
| “Set A4 paper” | Small size paper is loaded in the upper tray (A4 size paper is required for receiving faxes) | Load A4 size paper in the upper tray and register the correct paper size setting. | p.11 |
| “Set paper size” | The actual length of the paper is less than the registered paper length. | Make sure the registered paper size matches the paper loaded and register the correct paper size setting. | p.20 |
| “Error” and “Press Stop” | An error occurred during reception. | <p>Press  ^{Stop}_{Stop} to clear the error message and inform the other party to send their fax again.</p> | — |
| “Not registered” | The Redial memory or pressed Quick Dial key is empty. | Print the Dial List to check on which Quick Dials have numbers stored in them. | p.54, 64 |
| “Name: No entry” | No name Dial exists with the initial letter you selected. | Make sure you selected the correct search letter for this Name Dial. You also can print the Dial List to see currently stored Name Dials. | p.54, 64 |

Error Messages (4/4)

| Message | Cause | Remedy | Page |
|------------|---|---|------|
| “Error 90” | Locked scanner. | Unlock the scanner lock, turn the machine off and then back on. | P.4 |
| “Error XX” | Possible machine defect. There is a problem with your machine. | Turn power off and then back on again. | P.9 |

If you have a problem with the machine and you cannot resolve it by referring to the information in this chapter, please contact your service representative.

If an “Error XX” message is displayed, be sure to turn off the machine before calling.

When the Receive File Indicator is Lit

This indicator lights to inform you that a page of an incoming fax message could not be printed for some reason (e.g. paper has run out) and that page has been stored in memory.



Important!

The machine cannot receive any more messages until you solve the problem. Turning off the power will erase any message stored in memory.

To print the page out, check the display and rectify the problem (e.g. paper has run out). When the problem is resolved, the page will automatically be printed out.



Note

If there is not enough memory, all or some parts of the message will not be stored or printed.

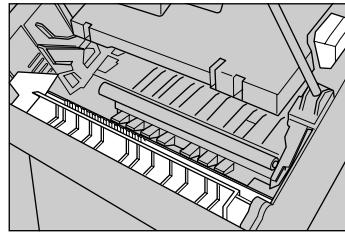
The machine will only store a page in memory if a problem occurs while reception is in process. The line will be disconnected immediately and following pages of the same message will not be received.

Clearing a Paper Misfeed

This section describes how to clear a paper misfeed when one occurs.

⚠ CAUTION

When removing misfed paper, do not touch the fusing section because it could be very hot.



Important!

Hold a misfed sheet with both hands and slowly pull it out. Do not use a tool, such as a screwdriver or tweezers as this may damage the unit.

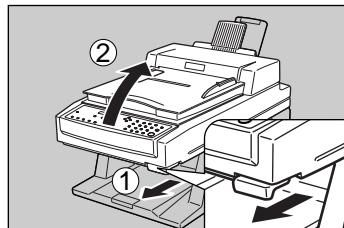


Note

If “Clear Paper” is still displayed after you clear the jam, there may be paper jammed in another part of the machine. Check all areas described in this section

Clearing a Feed in the Main Unit

- 1 Pull the top release lever (①) and open the top unit (②).

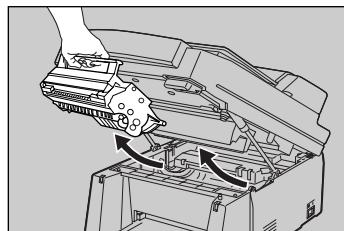


- 2 Pull out the toner cassette.



Note

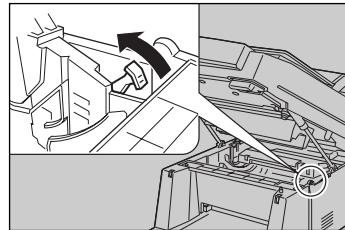
- Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.
- Keep the toner cassette horizontal to avoid spilling the toner.



3 Push back the blue paper release lever located on the right.

 **Note**

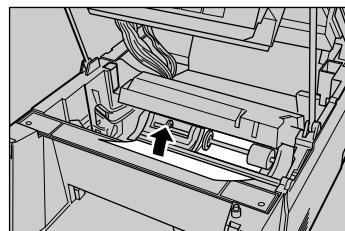
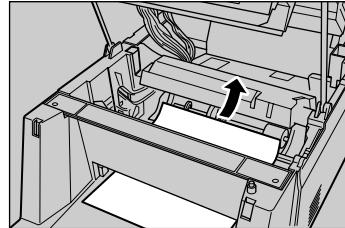
The lever releases pressure on the paper. If you do not push it back, you could damage the machine when removing paper.



4 Pull out the misfed paper in the directions indicated by the arrows in the illustrations.

 **Note**

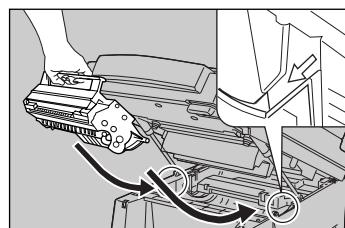
- If you are using the paper feed unit (option) and cannot clear the misfeed using this procedure, use the procedure on page 93 instead.
- If toner gets on your hands, wash them immediately.



5 Install the toner cassette into the machine.

 **Note**

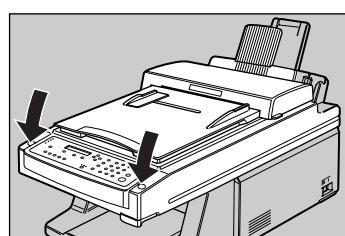
- Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.
- Keep the toner cassette horizontal to avoid spilling the toner.
- Refer to page 2 for details on how to install the toner cassette.



6 Close the top unit.

 **Note**

If "Clear Paper" is still displayed after you clear the jam, there may be paper jammed in another part of the machine. Check all areas described in this section



 **Important!**

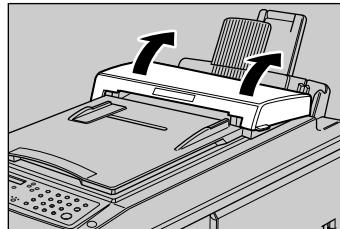
If a paper misfeed occurs during a copy job, be sure to specify the desired copy quantity again.

Clearing a Misfeed in the ADF

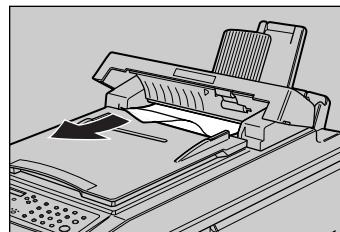
1 Open the ADF cover.

 **Note**

Be sure to open the ADF cover before pulling out the misfed original. Failure to do so can result in damage to the original.



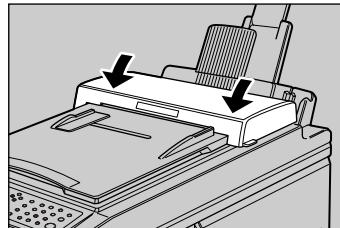
2 Pull out the misfed original.



3 Close the ADF cover, and make sure it locks securely into place.

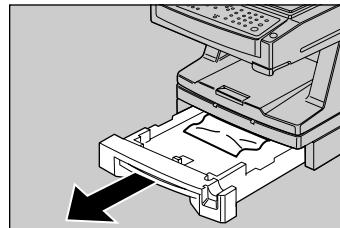
 **Important!**

If copying was in progress, be sure to specify the desired copy quantity again.

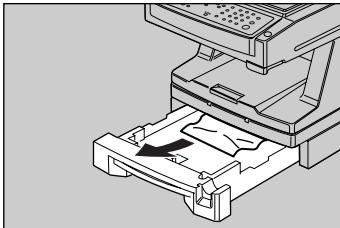


Clearing a Misfeed in the Optional Paper Feed Unit

1 Pull out the paper tray.



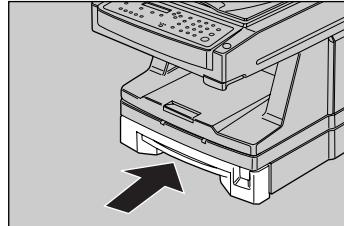
2 Pull out the misfed paper.



3 Slide the paper tray back into the paper feed unit until it locks into place.

 **Note**

For how to set paper in the optional paper feed unit, see page 19.



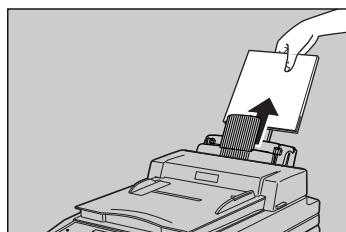
Tip

If you cannot find a remedy for unexpected printout results here, check the printer driver's online help for other useful information.

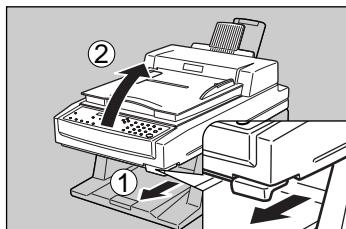
When Paper Will Not Feed

If paper has completely stopped feeding, check using the following procedure.

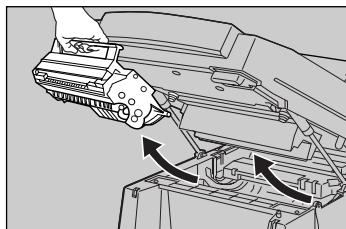
1 Remove all paper.



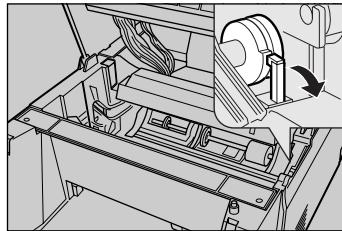
2 Pull the top release lever ① and open the top unit ②.



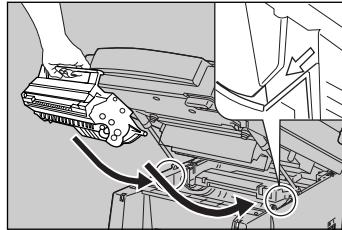
3 Pull out the toner cassette.



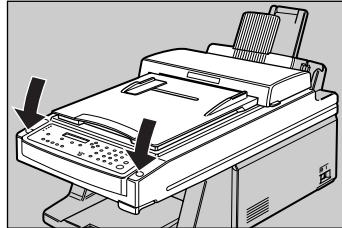
4 Pull the blue key-shaped pawl located deep inside on the right where the toner cassette was set forward.



5 Install the toner cassette into the machine.



6 Close the top unit.
When the top unit is closed, the motor will start running. When the sound of the motor stops, set paper in the original position and continue with normal operation.



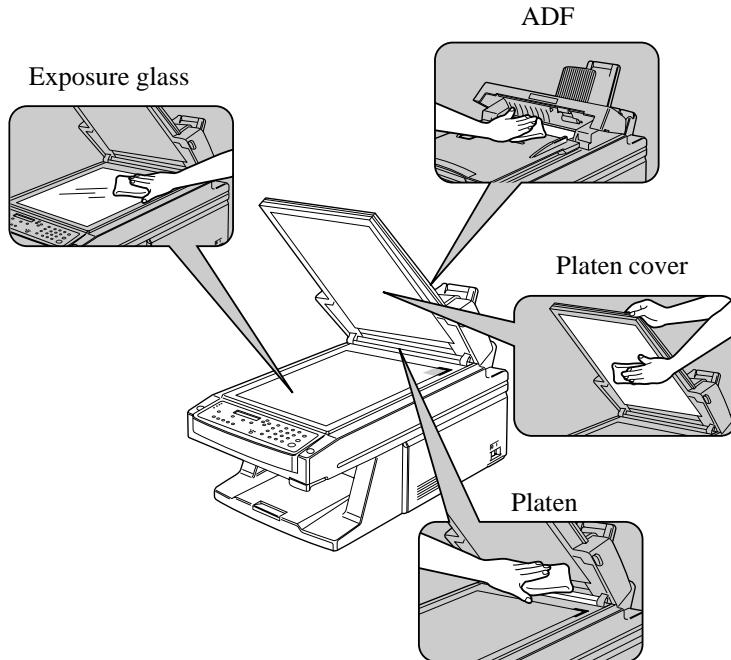
7. USER MAINTENANCE

Daily Maintenance

Clean with a damp cloth and wipe dry.



Turn off the machine before cleaning



Replacing the Toner Cassette And the Cleaning Pad

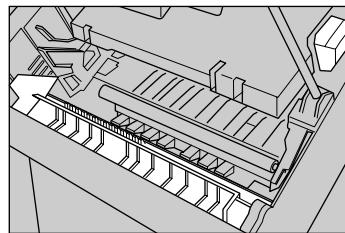
Printing on A4 size paper under the recommended temperature and humidity conditions noted in the table under “Environment” on page 1, you can expect a toner cassette to print approximately 3,000 pages when you are printing typical business letters that have text covering 5% of the total surface. The starter cassette that comes with the machine can print approximately 1,000 pages. Pages that contain graphics use more toner and shorten the life of a toner cassette.

⚠ WARNING

- 🚫 Do not incinerate used toner or toner containers. Toner dust might ignite when exposed to an open flame. Dispose of the used toner cassettes according to local regulations for plastics.
- 🚫 This machine has been tested for safety using this supplier's parts and consumables. We recommend you only use these specified supplies.

⚠ CAUTION

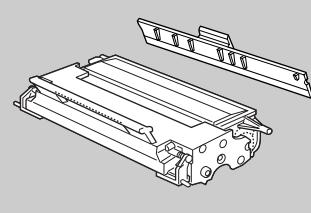
- ⚠ When replacing the toner cassette and cleaning pad, do not touch the fusing section because it could be very hot.



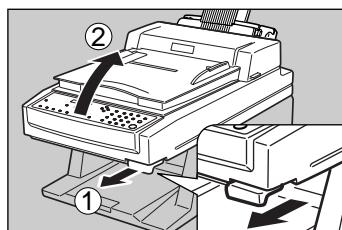
- 1 Open the box of the new toner cassette and check to make sure it contains a toner cassette and cleaning pad.

>Note

Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.

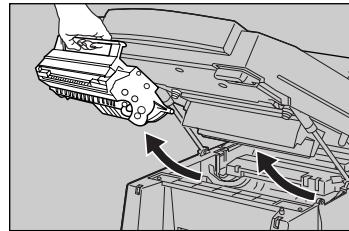


- 2 Pull the top release lever (①) and open the top unit (②).

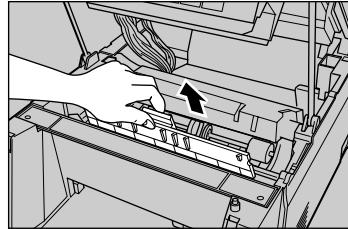
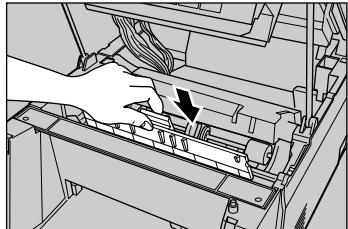


3 Hold the toner cassette by its handle and pull it out.**Note**

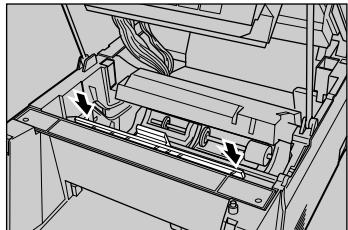
Keep the toner cassette horizontal to avoid spilling the toner.

**4** Remove the old cleaning pad.**Note**

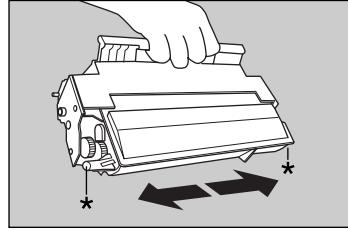
Be sure to grasp the green handle when removing the cleaning pad.

**5** Grasp the new cleaning pad by the green handle and insert it into place.**6** Press down gently but firmly on both sides of the pad to make sure that it is inserted as far as it can go.

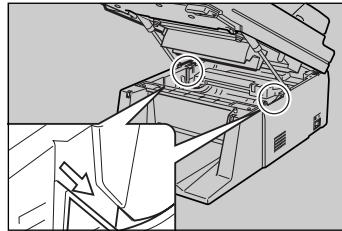
Do not forget to install the cleaning pad whenever you install a new toner cassette.

**7** Prepare the new toner cassette. Holding the toner cassette by its handle, gently shake it side to side 5 or 6 times to evenly distribute the toner inside.**Note**

Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.



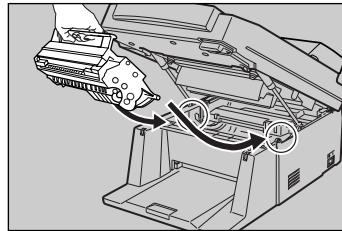
8 Look inside the machine and note the locations of the arrows that indicate the toner cassette guides on either side.



9 Make sure the plastic pins (marked with “*” in the illustration next to step above) on either side of the toner cassette slide along the guides inside the machine.



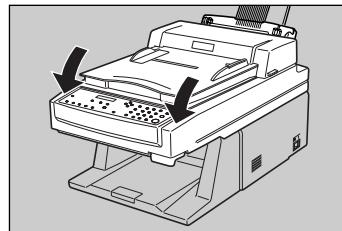
Note
Be sure to hold the toner cassette by its handle.



10 To close the top unit, press down firmly but gently on both sides of it until the top unit closes and clicks securely into place.



Note
Background gray cast is sometimes evident just after installing a new toner cassette.



Storage

Paper

Paper should always be stored properly. Improperly stored paper might result in poor image reproduction, creased copies, or paper misfeeds. Generally, avoid paper curling and absorption of moisture.

- Avoid storing paper in humid areas. In high-temperature and high-humidity, or low-temperature and low-humidity conditions, store paper in a vinyl bag.
- Do not store paper where it will be exposed to heat.
- Store on a flat surface.
- Use older stock first.
- Do not lay heavy objects on paper.
- Keep open reams of paper in the package, and store as you would unopened paper.

Toner Cassette

- Keep the toner cassette inside the packaging that it comes packed in whenever it is removed from the machine.
- Store horizontally in a cool, dark place.
- Never store a toner cassette where it will be exposed to heat.
- Do not lay heavy objects on the toner cassette.

CAUTION

Keep toner cassettes out of children's reach.

8. TECHNICAL REFERENCE

Printing the Help List

Print this list to get a quick guide to frequently used fax features.

- 1 While the machine is not performing any other operation, press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List 

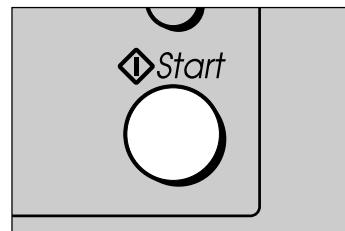
- 2 Press .

Press Start

- 3 Press  to print the Help List.



Print on A4, Letter, or Legal paper.



Customising Default Settings with the User Parameters

Changing the User Parameters

The User Parameters allow you to customise various machine settings and features to suit your requirements.

They are four User Parameter Switches numbered 00 to 03. Each switch has 8 adjustable “bits” which can set to either 0 or 1.

| | | | |
|------------------------|-----|-----------|--------------|
| Switch number → | 00: | 0000 1011 | ← bit values |
| 7654 3210 ← bit number | | | |

☞ For the meaning of each bit and how changing them affects the machine, see page 103.

Note

Take care when changing the switch values. Only change the bits whose meanings are described in this manual.

Note

Do not turn off the power while adjusting the User Parameter bit switches.

The following procedure describes how to change the User Parameters.

1 Press  ^{Help/}Function.

Prt Help List ►

2 Press Zoom  ►.

Function No.: __

3 Press  .

52 User Param. °_K

4 Press .

00 :1000 1011 °_K

5 Press   until the switch you wish to edit appears.

02 :1110 0000 °_K

E.g. press Zoom  twice to show switch 02.

6 To toggle the value of a single bit, press the number on the numeric keypad that corresponds to the number of the bit you wish to change.

E.g. press **3** to change bit 3.

02 :1110 1000 °K

7 Press **OK**. The display opposite will flash briefly on the display and then the function menu will reappear.



Note

Do not carry out any operations while “Registered” appears on the display.

Please wait

8 Do one of the following:

- Enter another function number.
- Press Help/Function to return to standby mode.

Registered

5 Select °K

User Parameter Switch Summary

The following tables summarize the User Parameter bit switches and their meanings.

SWITCH 00 (1/2)

| Bit | Explanation | Available Settings | Default | Notes |
|-----|--|------------------------------------|------------|---|
| 7 | Width scanned when faxing a document | 0: 210 mm (A4) 1: 216mm (LT/LG) | 210mm (A4) | This setting takes effect from the next power on. |
| 6 | Display “Original left on glass.” Warning when scanning from the ADF and an original is left on the exposure glass | 0: Yes 1: No | Yes | |
| 5 | Maximum length of document when scanning from the ADF | 0: 400mm 1: 1200mm | 400mm | This setting takes effect from the next power on. |
| 4 | Automatically print the Transmission Result Report after every successful transmission | 0: No 1: Yes | No | |

SWITCH 00 (2/2)

| Bit | Explanation | Available Settings | Default | Notes |
|-----|--|--------------------|---------|---|
| 3 | Automatically print the Journal after every 35 communications | 0: No 1: Yes | Yes | |
| 2 | Print the Unauthorized Call Report when an unregistered caller tries to send you a fax (when Authorized Reception is switched on) | 0: No 1: Yes | No | |
| 1 | Do not change this setting | | | |
| 0 | Automatically reduce received images to fit page | 0: No 1: Yes | Yes* | * This function turned off by default in some locales. If you turn this function off, some parts of the printed image may be lost. |

SWITCH 01

| Bit | Explanation | Available Settings | Default | Notes |
|-------|---|--|------------|--|
| 7 | Copy/Fax Operation mode home position. | 0: Fax 1: Copy | Copy | |
| 6 | Do not change these settings | | | |
| 5 | | | | |
| 4 | Reset the image density and resolution to the values below after sending a fax, switching to fax operation mode or on power up. | 0: No 1: Yes | Yes | These settings have no affect on the copy feature. |
| 3 & 2 | Image density home position when bit 4 above is 1. | b3 b2 0 0: Auto 0 1: Darker 1 0: Lighter | Auto | |
| 1 & 0 | Resolution home position when bit 4 above is 1. | b1 b0 0 0: Text (STD) 0 1: Text (Fine) 1 0: Photo 1 1 1: Photo 2 | Text (STD) | |

SWITCH 02

| Bit | Explanation | Available Settings | Default | Notes |
|-----|--|------------------------|---------|-------|
| 7 | Do not change these settings | | | |
| 6 | | | | |
| 5 | | | | |
| 4 | | | | |
| 3 | PCL Resolution Set the printer to 300 dpi if the designated output is not obtained when printing using a DOS application compatible with the 300 dpi PCL printer. | 0: 600dpi 1: 300dpi | 600dpi | |
| 2 | Toner Saving mode When Toner Saving is turned on, the machine prints using less toner. Use this mode if you wish to save on toner and do not mind lighter prints. | 0: Off 1: On | Off | |
| 1 | Do not change these settings | | | |
| 0 | | | | |

SWITCH 03

| Bit | Explanation | Available Settings | Default | Notes |
|-----|------------------------------|--------------------|---------|-------|
| 7 | Do not change these settings | | | |
| 6 | | | | |
| 5 | | | | |
| 4 | | | | |
| 3 | | | | |
| 2 | | | | |
| 1 | | | | |
| 0 | | | | |

Function List

| Function Number | Function Name | Page Reference |
|-----------------|--|----------------|
| 11 | Date/Time | 38 |
| 12 | Dial Mode | 34 |
| 13 | Quick Dial/Print Dial List | 54 |
| 14 | Name Dial | 59 |
| 15 | Language | 107 |
| 16 | Own name/TTI | 33 |
| 17 | Own Fax No. | 36 |
| 21 | Authorized Reception | 49 |
| 22 | Slow (4800bps) | 67 |
| 31 | Adjust Volume | 66 |
| 32 | Remote Change | 52 |
| 41 | Journal | 63 |
| 42 | Dial List | 64 |
| 51 | Page Header Summer Time RDS Mode | 68 39 68 |
| 52 | User Parameters | 102 |
| 61 | Tray Paper Size | 11 |

Selecting the Language

1 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup>.

Prt Help List

2 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> 1  5 .

15 Language

3 Press  and press  or  until the desired language appears.

4 Press .

Registered



• Do not carry out any operations while “Registered” appears on the display.
• If you do not press , the setting is not changed.

1 Set up 

5 Press  <sup>Help/
Function</sup> to return to the standby display.

Economy Mode

Economy mode is a power saving feature and is turned on by default. If no operation is performed for 5 minutes, the display becomes blank and all the indicators go out. If no operation is performed in the next 10 minutes or 235 minutes (according to the setting), the heater turns off.

| Economy mode | Operation panel turns off after | Heater turns off after |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|--|
| ON (default setting) | 5 minutes | 15 minutes (including time when operation panel is off) |
| OFF | 5 minutes | 240 minutes (including time when operation panel is off) |

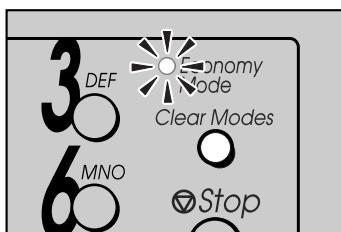
Note

- In Economy Mode, the heater turns back on in the following cases.
 - ◆ When any key on the operation panel is pressed
 - ◆ When the platen cover is opened
 - ◆ When paper is set in or removed from the upper paper tray
 - ◆ When the tray of the paper feed unit (option) is pulled out or pushed back into the machine
 - ◆ When the top unit is opened.
 - ◆ When an original is set in or removed from the ADF.
 - ◆ On initiation of fax operations, such as fax reception, lifting the headset etc.
 - ◆ On initiation of PC printing.
- When a key on the operation panel is pressed to turn the heater on, the key does not perform its normal function.
- After the heater is turned back on, the previous %, quantity, Sort settings, entered fax number, original type and various other settings are cleared.

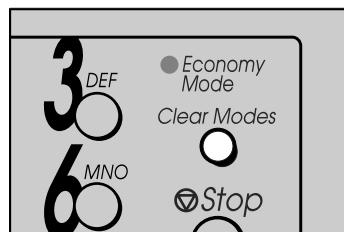
Changing the Economy Mode

Hold down the Clear modes key for approximately 1 second until the Economy mode indicator lights or goes out, as required.

Economy Mode ON



Economy Mode OFF



9. SPECIFICATIONS

General Specifications

| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--|-------|--------------------|-------|-------------------|-------|--------------------|------|-------------------|-----|-------------------------|-----|---------------------------|-------|--------------|------|--|
| Paper Capacity Upper tray plain paper (80 g/m ² : 20 lb.) 100 sheets Optional paper unit plain paper (80 g/m ² : 20 lb.) 250 sheets ADF (Auto Document Feeder) Capacity plain paper: A4, IT-LG (80 g/m ² : 20 lb) 10 sheets Output tray plain paper (80 g/m ² : 20 lb.) 50 sheets | Machine Life 30,000 sheets/5 years | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Printer Duty 6,000 sheets/1 month | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Scanner Duty 2,000 sheets/1 month | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Paper Sizes Plain paper A4 = 210 mm × 297 mm A5 = 148 mm × 210 mm Letter (IT) = 8 1/2" × 11" Legal (LG) = 8 1/2" × 14" Half Letter = 5 1/2" × 8 1/2" F4 = 8 1/4" × 13" | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Envelopes C5 = 162 mm × 229 mm C6 = 114 mm × 162 mm DL = 110 mm × 220 mm | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Other Transparencies Label paper | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Power Supply AC 220 to 240 V 50/60 Hz | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Power Consumption <table><tbody><tr><td>Max</td><td>640 W</td></tr><tr><td>Printing (Average)</td><td>230 W</td></tr><tr><td>Copying (Average)</td><td>250 W</td></tr><tr><td>Stand-by (Average)</td><td>75 W</td></tr><tr><td>PC-Scan (Average)</td><td>75W</td></tr><tr><td>Sending Faxes (Average)</td><td>75W</td></tr><tr><td>Receiving Faxes (Average)</td><td>230 W</td></tr><tr><td>Economy Mode</td><td>15 W</td></tr></tbody></table> | Max | 640 W | Printing (Average) | 230 W | Copying (Average) | 250 W | Stand-by (Average) | 75 W | PC-Scan (Average) | 75W | Sending Faxes (Average) | 75W | Receiving Faxes (Average) | 230 W | Economy Mode | 15 W | |
| Max | 640 W | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Printing (Average) | 230 W | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Copying (Average) | 250 W | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Stand-by (Average) | 75 W | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| PC-Scan (Average) | 75W | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Sending Faxes (Average) | 75W | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Receiving Faxes (Average) | 230 W | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Economy Mode | 15 W | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Operating Environment Temperature /Humidity 10°C (50°F) to 35°C (95°F) 15% to 80% | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Printing Specifications

| | |
|---|---|
| Printer Language | Resident Font |
| PCL 5e compatible | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dutch 801 SWC • Dutch 801 Italic SWC • Dutch 801 Bold SWC • Dutch 801 Bold Italic SWC • Swiss 742 SWC • Swiss 742 Italic SWC • Swiss 742 Bold SWC • Swiss 742 Bold Italic SWC • Swiss 742 Condensed SWC • Swiss 742 Condensed Italic SWC • Swiss 742 Condensed Bold SWC • Swiss 742 Condensed Bold Italic SWC • Incised 901 SWC • Incised 901 Italic SWC • Incised 901 Bold SWC • Fixed Pitch 810 Courier Roman SWC • Fixed Pitch 810 Courier Bold SWC • Fixed Pitch 810 Courier Italic SWC • Fixed Pitch 810 Courier Bold Italic SWC • Fixed Pitch 850 Letter Gothic 12 pitch/text SWC • Fixed Pitch 850 Letter Gothic Bold 12 pitch/text SWC • Fixed Pitch 850 Letter Gothic Italic 12 pitch/text SWC • Flareserif 821 SWC • Flareserif 821 Extra Bold SWC • Ribbon 131 SWC • Wingbats SWM |
| Print Resolution | |
| 600 dpi × 600 dpi | |
| 1200 dpi × 600 dpi (enhanced) | |
| Print Speed | |
| 6 ppm (pages per minute) | |
| Paper/Media Types | |
| Plain paper | |
| Envelopes | |
| Transparencies | |
| Label paper | |
| Paper Weight | |
| 60 to 90 g/m ² (16 to 24 lb) | |
| Interface | |
| IEEE 1284 | |

Scanner Specifications

| | |
|--|--|
| Configuration | Grey scale |
| Flatbed / ADF | 256 levels (8-bit) |
| Document Size | Interface |
| LG, IT, HIT, A4, A5, B5 | IEEE 1284 ECP mode |
| Optical Resolution | Compatibility |
| 300dpi | TWAIN |
| Scanning Resolution | ADF |
| 1bit | Up to 10 pages of 80g/m ² (20lb), Plain paper |
| 100 × 100, 150 × 150, 200 × 200, 300 × 300, 400 × 400, 600 × 600 dpi | Maximum scanning size |
| 8bit | 212 × 351.6 mm |
| 300 × 300 dpi | OS |
| | Windws 95/98 only |

Copying Specifications

| | |
|---|---|
| Copy Speed 6 cpm (copies per minute) | Paper Weight 60 to 90 g/m ² (16 to 24 lb) |
| Warm-up Time 30 seconds or less | Original Types Exposure glass Sheet/Book |
| First copy 17 seconds or less | ADF Up to 10 pages of 80g/m ² (20lb), Plain paper |
| Multiple Copies Up to 99 copies | Maximum Original Size Legal (LG) = 8 1/2 " × 14 " |
| Copy Reduction and Enlargement 50%, 71%, 82%, 87%, 93%, 115%, 122%, 141%, 200% | Copy Resolution 600 dpi × 600 dpi |
| Paper/Media Types Plain paper Envelopes Transparencies Label paper | |

Fax Specifications

| | |
|--|---|
| Modem Speed 14400 bps | Fax Resolution Text (Standard) :203 × 98dpi Text Fine (Detail) :203 × 196dpi |
| Protocol ITU Group 3 | Quick Dials 5 |
| Compression Method MH/MR/MMR | Name Dials 25 |

INDEX**1**

1 to 1 Copy 70

A

Additional printer 16

Auto image density 77

Automatic Document Feeder (ADF) x

Setting an original 78

Authorized reception 47

Automatic redial 45

B

Book Copy 72

Busy indicator xiii

C

Cancelled automatic redial 45

Cancelled transmission of a fax 45

Changing On/Off settings 68

Check display indicator xiii

Clearing a paper misfeed 93

Clear key xii

Cleaning pad 97

Computer port xi

Connecting a second printer

(Additional Printer) 16

Connecting to a computer 7

Connector 16

Copy operation 29

Corner guides 17, 19

D

Daily maintenance 96

Date and time 38

Density key xiii

Dial mode 34

Display xii

Document guides x

Document output tray xi

Installing 5

E

Economy mode 108

Economy mode/Clear modes key xii

Economy mode indicator xii

Enlarge key xiii

Enlargement 33

Entering numbers 30

Entering pauses 43

Entering tones 43

Envelopes 14

Error messages 86

Error report 65

Exposure glass x

F

Fax/Copy key xii

Fax mode 46

Fax operation 29

Front guide 17, 20

H

Help list 101

Help/Function xii

I

Image density 77

Installing

Document output tray 5

Software drivers 25

Toner cassette 2

Upper paper tray 6

L

Label paper 15

Language 107

Limit mark 11, 17, 19

Lines-slow (4800 bps) 67

Loading Paper 11

| | |
|--------------------------|-------------|
| Loading | |
| Plain paper | 11 |
| Small size paper | 13 |
| Other media | 15 |
| Location | 1 |
| M | |
| Metal plate | 17, 19 |
| Multiple copies | 71 |
| N | |
| Name key | xiv |
| Name Dials | |
| Deleting Name Dial | 61 |
| Dialling Name Dial | 62 |
| Storing Name Dial | 59 |
| Numeri keypad | xii |
| O | |
| OK key | xiii |
| On hook | 52 |
| On hook dial key | xiv |
| Operation Panel | x, xii, xiv |
| Original | |
| Setting (Exposure glass) | 41, 70 |
| Setting (ADF) | 40, 78 |
| Requirements (ADF) | 79 |
| Original guide | x |
| Original type select key | xiii |
| Output tray | x |
| Output tray extension | x, 6 |
| P | |
| Page header | 68 |
| Paper and other media | 10 |
| Paper select key | xiii |
| paper size | |
| Changing | 20 |
| Specifying (upper) | 13, 15 |
| Specifying (lower) | 19 |
| Paper size indicator | 17, 19 |
| Paper feed unit | 17 |
| Pause/Redial key | xiv |
| Pauses | 43 |
| PC Interface indicator | xiii |
| Photo1 | 76 |
| Photo2 | 76 |
| Platen cover | x |
| Power socket | x |
| Power switch | x |
| Printer driver | |
| Windows 95/98 | 26 |
| Windows 3.1 | 26 |
| Printer driver contents | 27 |
| Printing the dial list | 64 |
| Printing the journal | 63 |
| Power failure report | 65 |
| Q | |
| Quick Dials | |
| Clearing Quick Dial | 58 |
| Editing Quick Dial | 56 |
| Storing Quick Dial | 55 |
| Quick Dial key | xiv |
| R | |
| Receive file indicator | xiv |
| Receiving faxes | 46 |
| Reception mode key | xiv |
| Redialling a number | 44 |
| Reduce key | xiii |
| Reduction | 73 |
| Remote change | 52 |
| Replacing | |
| Toner cassette | 91 |
| Cleaning pad | 91 |
| Resolution/Photo setting | 76 |
| RDS | 68 |

S

| | |
|--|--------|
| Safety information | i |
| Scanner lock | x |
| Unlocking | 4 |
| Second (Additional) printer | xi |
| Connecting | 16 |
| Using | 28 |
| Second printer key | xv |
| Sending faxes | 40 |
| Setting up | |
| Connecting to the telephone line | 32 |
| Software drivers | 25 |
| Side guide | 17, 20 |
| SIMM cover | x |
| SIMM | 23 |
| Small size paper feed access panel | x |
| Small size paper | 13 |
| Sort | 80 |
| Sort/Memory key | xiii |
| Sounds | 66 |
| Specifications | 109 |
| Start key | xii |
| Stop key | xii |
| Storing your own fax number | 36 |
| Storage | 100 |
| Summer time | 39 |

T

| | |
|-------------------------|--------|
| TEL/LINE | xi, 32 |
| Tel mode | 46 |
| Telephone call | 50 |
| Text fine | 76 |
| Toner cassette | |
| Installing | 2 |
| Replacing | 91 |
| Tones | 44 |
| Top release lever | x |
| Top unit | x |

| | |
|----------------------------------|----|
| Transmission result report | 64 |
| Transparencies | 15 |
| Troubleshooting | 82 |
| TTI | 33 |

U

| | |
|---|----------|
| Unauthorized call report | 65 |
| Upgrading memory | 23 |
| Upper paper tray | x, 6, 11 |
| Upper try extension | xi |
| User parameter | 103 |
| Using the second (Additional) printer | 28 |

Z

| | |
|-------------------------------|------|
| Zoom key | xiii |
| Zoom (In 1% increments) | 75 |